

केंद्रीय विद्यालय संगठन क्षेत्रीय कार्यालय रायपुर

Kendriya Vidyalaya Sangathan Regional Office Raipur



Class -X

Study Material -Social Science - 2022-23

केंद्रीय विद्यालय संगठन क्षेत्रीय कार्यालय रायपुर

Kendriya Vidyalaya Sangathan Regional Office Raipur

Chief Patron



Shri Vinod kumar

Deputy Commissioner: KVS RO Raipur



Patron

Shri A K Mishra

Assistant Commissioner, KVS RO Raipur



Patron

Smt Birja Mishra

Assistant Commissioner, KVS RO Raipur

Subject Co-ordinator



Smt Prabha Minj

Principal , K V BMY Bhilai

Study Material Prepared by:-

1. Mr S C Pan (TGT SoSc) K V NO 1 Raipur Sh 1
2. Mr Rahul Khadse (TGT SoSc) K V Sukma
3. Mr Dipak Ku Keshari (TGT SoSc) K V Jashpur
4. Mr Vinod Ku Keshari (TGT SoSc) K V Raigarh

CLASS X :- SOCIAL SCIENCE SYLLABUS

Theme	Learning Objectives
Section 1: Events and Processes: 1.The Rise of Nationalism in Europe: The French Revolution and the Idea of the Nation The Making of Nationalism in Europe The Age of Revolutions: 1830-1848 The Making of Germany and Italy Visualizing the Nation Nationalism and Imperialism	Enable the learners to identify and comprehend the forms in which nationalism developed along with the formation of nation states in Europe in the post-1830 period. Establish the relationship and bring out the difference between European nationalism and anti colonial nationalisms. Understand the way the idea of nationalism emerged and led to the formation of nation states in Europe and elsewhere.
2. Nationalism in India: The First World War, Khilafat and Non - Cooperation Differing Strands within the Movement Towards Civil Disobedience The Sense of Collective Belonging	Recognize the characteristics of Indian nationalism through a case study of Non-Cooperation and Civil Disobedience Movement. Analyze the nature of the diverse social movements of the time. Familiarize with the writings and ideals of different political groups and individuals. Appreciate the ideas promoting Pan Indian belongingness.
Section 2: Livelihoods, Economies and Societies: 3. The Making of a Global World: The Pre-modern world The Nineteenth Century (1815-1914) The Inter war Economy Rebuilding a World Economy: The Post-War Era	Show that globalization has a long history and point to the shifts within the process Analyze the implication of globalization for local economies. Discuss how globalization is experienced differently by different social groups.
4. The Age of Industrialization: Before the Industrial Revolution Hand Labour and Steam Power Industrialization in the Colonies Factories Come Up The Peculiarities of Industrial Growth Market for Goods	Familiarize with the Pro- to Industrial phase and Early – factory system. Familiarize with the process of industrialization and its impact on labour class. Enable them to understand industrialization in the colonies with reference to Textile industries
Section 3: Everyday Life, Culture and Politics: 5. Print Culture and the Modern World: The First Printed Books Print Comes to Europe The Print Revolution and its Impact The Reading Mania The Nineteenth Century India and the World of Print Religious Reform and Public Debates New Forms of Publication Print and Censorship	Identify the link between print culture and the circulation of ideas. Familiarize with pictures, cartoons, extracts from propaganda literature and newspaper debates on important events and issues in the past. Understand that forms of writing have a specific history, and that they reflect historical changes within society and shape the forces of change

The Rise of Nationalism in Europe

SUMMARY

1. During the nineteenth century, nationalism emerged as a force which brought about sweeping changes in the political and mental world of Europe. The final result of these changes was the emergence of the nation-state in place of the multinational dynastic empire of Europe.
2. The first clear expression of nationalism came with the French Revolution in 1789. France was a full-fledged territorial state in 1789 under the rule of an absolute monarch. The political and constitutional changes that came in the wake of the French Revolution led to the transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of French citizens.
3. A new French flag, the tricolour, was chosen to replace the former royal standard. The Estates-General was elected by the body of active citizens and renamed the National Assembly. New hymns were composed, oaths taken and martyrs remembered, all in the name of the nation.
4. The news of the events in France reached the different cities of Europe. As a result, people in these cities began setting up Jacobin clubs. Their activities and campaigns prepared the way for the French armies which moved into Holland, Belgium, Switzerland and Italy and spread there the idea of nationalism. The cities like Brussels, Mainz, Milan and Warsaw also welcomed the French armies. They began to view the French armies as harbingers of liberty.
5. There were no nation-states in mid-eighteenth-century Europe. Germany, Italy and Switzerland were divided into several kingdoms. Eastern and central Europe was under autocratic monarchies within the territories of which lived diverse peoples. Often, they spoke different languages and belonged to different ethnic groups. The only tie binding these diverse groups together was a common allegiance to the emperor.
6. The continent of Europe was dominated by the landed aristocracy. Although it constituted a small group, it was very powerful. The majority of the population was made up of the peasantry. With industrialization, new social groups which included a working-class population and middle classes made up of industrialists, businessmen, professionals etc. came into being. However, the educated, liberal middle classes began to think of ways to abolish aristocratic privileges.
7. Ideas of national unity in early-nineteenth-century Europe were closely allied to the ideology of liberalism. For the new middle classes liberalism stood for freedom for the individual and equality of all before the law. In the economic sphere, liberalism stood for the freedom of markets and the abolition of state-imposed restrictions on the movement of goods and capital.
8. Napoleon, who ruled France for more than a decade, was defeated by the collective power of Britain, Russia, Prussia and Austria. Afterwards, the representatives of these European powers met at Vienna in 1815 and drew up the treaty of Vienna with the object of undoing most of the changes that had come about in Europe during the Napoleonic wars. The main intention was to restore the monarchies and create a new conservative order in Europe.
9. Conservative regimes set up in 1815 were autocratic. They did not tolerate criticism and dissent and imposed censorship on newspapers, books, plays and songs that reflected the ideas of liberty and freedom. Many liberal-nationalists, therefore, went underground. Secret societies in many European states began to train revolutionaries who aimed at the creation of nation-states.

10. One such revolutionary was Giuseppe Mazzini who hailed from Italy. He became a member of the secret society of the Carbonari. Afterwards he founded two more underground societies whose members were young men from Poland, France, Italy and the German states.

11. Revolutions led by the liberal-nationalists spread in many regions of Europe. The first upheaval took place in France in July 1830 as a result of which the Bourbon kings were overthrown and a constitutional monarchy with Louis Philippe as its head was installed. The July Revolution sparked an uprising in Brussels which led to Belgium breaking away from the United Kingdom of the Netherlands.

12. The growth of revolutionary nationalism in Europe gave rise to a struggle for independence amongst the Greeks. In 1832, the Treaty of Constantinople took place which finally recognized Greece as an independent nation.

13. Culture also played an important role in creating the idea of the nation. Art and poetry, stories and music helped express and shape nationalist feelings. Language too contributed a lot in the development of nationalist sentiments.

14. With an enormous increase in population in the nineteenth century Europe led to widespread poverty in town and country. In 1848, the poor people of Paris came out on the roads forcing Louis Philippe to flee. A National Assembly proclaimed a republic, granted suffrage to all adult males above 21, and guaranteed the right to work. National workshops to provide employment were set up.

15. Revolutions were also started by the educated middle classes belonging to Germany, Italy, Poland and the Austro-Hungarian Empire. They took advantage of the growing popular unrest to push their demands for the creation of a nation-state on parliamentary principles. Monarchs now began to realize that cycles of revolution and repression could only be ended by granting concessions to the liberal-nationalist revolutionaries.

16. As nationalist feelings were widespread among middle-class Germans, in 1848 they tried to unite the different regions of the German confederation into a nation-state governed by an elected parliament. Prussia took on the leadership of the movement for national unification. Its Chief Minister, Otto von Bismarck played an important role in this process. After the completion of the unification, the Prussian King, William I was proclaimed German Emperor in January 1871.

17. Like Germany, Italy too had a long history of political fragmentation During the middle of the nineteenth century, Italy was divided into seven states, of which only one, Sardinia-Piedmont was ruled by an Italian princely house. Even the Italian language had not acquired one common form.

18. Chief minister of Sardinia-Piedmont named Cavour led the movement to unify the regions of Italy.

19. Through a tactful diplomatic alliance with France engineered by him, Sardinia-Piedmont succeeded; in defeating the Austrian forces in 1859. Apart from regular troops, a large number of armed volunteers under the leadership of Giuseppe Garibaldi joined the fray. In 1860, they marched into South Italy and the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies and succeeded in driving out the Spanish rulers. In 1861, Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed king of United Italy.

20. In Britain, the formation of the nation-state was not the result of a sudden upheaval or revolution.

21. It was the result of a long-drawn-out process. The new British nation was forged through the propagation of a dominant English culture. The symbols of the New Britain – the British flag, the national anthem, the English language etc. were actively promoted.

22. Artists in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries began to represent a country as if it were a person.

23. Nations were then portrayed as female figures. The female form that was chosen to personify the nation did not stand for any particular woman in real life; rather it sought to give the abstract idea of the nation as a concrete form. Thus, the female figure became an allegory of the nation. In France, she was christened Marianne which underlined the idea of a people's nation. Similarly, Germania; became the allegory of the German nation.

24. By the last quarter of the nineteenth-century nationalism no longer retained its idealistic liberal-democratic sentiment of the first half of the century, but became a narrow creed with limited ends. During this period, nationalist groups became increasingly intolerant of each other and ever ready to go to war.

25. It was this sentiment that led Europe to disaster in 1914 when the First World War broke out. However, the 19th century also witnessed the growth of anti-imperial movements in different parts of the world.

The Rise of Nationalism in Europe Class 10 CBSE Notes Important Terms

Absolutist: The term refers to a form of monarchical government that was centralized, militarized and repressive.

Utopian: A vision of a society that is so ideal that it is unlikely to actually exist.

Plebiscite: A direct vote by which all the people of a region are asked to accept or reject a proposal.

Suffrage: The right to vote.

Conservatism: A political philosophy that stressed the importance of tradition, established institutions and customs, and preferred gradual development to quick change.

Feminist: Awareness of women's rights and interests based on the belief of the social, economic and political equality of the genders.

Ideology: System of ideas reflecting a particular social and political vision.

Ethnic: Relates to a common racial, tribal, or cultural origin or background that a community identifies with or claims.

Allegory: Expression of an abstract idea such as greed, envy, freedom, liberty through a person or a thing.

Feudalism: A social system that existed in Europe during the Middle Ages in which people worked and fought for nobles who gave them protection and the use of land in return.

Nationalism: Devotion for one's own nation's interests over those of all other nations.

Notes of History Class 10 Chapter 1 Time Period

1797: Italy invaded, beginning of Napoleonic wars

1804-15: Siberian Revolution against the Ottoman Empire

1815: Congress of Vienna

1821-29: Greek War of Independence against the Ottoman Empire

1830-31: Belgian Revolution

1830-31: Revolution in Poland and Lithuania

1846: Uprising in Greater Poland

1848: Nationalist revolts in Hungary, Italy and Germany

1859-61: Italy unified

1866-71: Germany unified

(MCQ/Very short questions)

1. Identify the correct statement with regard to ‘The Act of Union -1707’ from the following options.

- A. The British monarchy surrendered the power to English Parliament.
- B. The British parliament seized power from Ireland.
- C. The formation of the ‘United Kingdom of Great Britain’.
- D. The British nation was formed as a result of a war with Scotland and Wales.

ANS: OPTION C

2. Which of the following treaty recognized Greece as an independent nation?

- A. Treaty of Sevres
- B. Treaty of Versailles
- C. Treaty of Lausanne
- D. Treaty of Constantinople

ANS: OPTION D

3. Who among the following was the founder of ‘Young Europe’ underground secret society in Berne?

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| A. Giuseppe Garibaldi | B. Giuseppe Mazzini |
| C. Count Cavour | D. Otto von Bismarck |

ANS: OPTION B

4. Which of the following was the result of the Act of Union, 1707?

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| A. Unification of Germany | B. Unification of the kingdom of Great Britain |
| C. Unification of Italy | D. Unification of Vietnam |

ANS: OPTION C

5. Identify the correct statement with regard to the ‘Zollverein’ from the following options:
- A. It was a coalition of Prussian states formed to manage political alliances.
 - B. Its aim was to bind the Prussia politically into an association.
 - C. It was a Custom Union at the initiative of Prussia.
 - D. It helped to awaken and raise national sentiment in Europe
5. Which of the following countries were involved in the Three Wars with Prussia and ended with victory and unification of Germany?
- A. Austria, Poland and France
 - B. Austria, Denmark and France
 - C. Austria, Turkey and France
 - D. Austria, England and France

ANS: OPTION B

6. Identify the ideology under which people demanded freedom of markets in earlynineteenth-century Europe.
- A. Romanticism
 - B. Liberalism
 - C. Socialism
 - D. Rationalism

ANS: OPTION B

7. Why did Slavic nationalist struggle in the 19th century? Give one reason

ANS: The Slavic nationalist struggle in the 19th century mainly to define their identity and independence.

8. Why did France take up the idea of civilizing mission during mid- nineteenth century? Give one reason

ANS: They wanted to spread their religion and custom all over the world.

9. Why did Charles Dickens write about the terrible effects of industrialization on people’s lives and characters"? Give one reason.

ANS: To bring out the undervalued lives of the industrial workers. It was feared that if there was no control over what was printed and read then rebellious and irreligious thoughts might spread.

10. Who was Frederic Sorrieu?

Ans: A French artist

11. To which country did the artist Frederic Sorrieu belong?

Ans: France

12. Why did French artist, Frederic Sorrieu prepare a series of print based on democratic and socialist republics in 1848?

Ans: to reflect the vision of a world full of democratic and socialist republics. He visualized his dreams of democratic world in these paintings.

13. What does ‘Absolutist’ mean?

Ans: An absolutist is someone who believes that the best form of government allows one person to hold all the power. North Korea is an example of a country

14. What was the concept of a ‘modern state’?

Ans: The modern state achieved unprecedented control over social, economic, and cultural activities within its boundaries.

15. What do the ideas of ‘la Patrie’ and ‘le Citoyen’ emphasize?

Ans: fatherland and citizen

16. Which new name was given to ‘The Estates General’?

Ans: National Assembly

17. Which new social groups emerged after industrial revolution?

Ans: A working class population and middle classes made up of industrialists, businessmen and professionals.

18. What is the origin of the word ‘Liberalism’? What did it mean?

Ans: Liberalism originates from ‘liber’ means free. Liberalism stood for a representative government through parliament and the constitution.

19. Why was Zollverein formed?

Ans: to manage tariffs and economic policies within their territories.

20. Which countries met at Treaty of Vienna?

Ans: Austria, Great Britain, Prussia and Russia on 25 March 1815

21. Who hosted the Treaty of Vienna?

Ans: Austrian Chancellor Duke Metternich

22. What was the main aim of Treaty of Vienna 1815?

Ans: To undo most of the changes that had come about in Europe during the Napoleonic wars, to re-establish conservative regions in Europe.

23. Who was Giuseppe Mazzini?

Ans: A revolutionary, founder of Young Italy and Young Europe.

24. Which two underground societies were formed by Giuseppe Mazzini?

Ans: Young Italy and Young Europe

25. Who was Otto von Bismarck?

Ans: Chief Minister of Prussia

26. Who was proclaimed the King of United Italy in 1861?

Ans: Victor Emanuel II

27. What was the Allegory of Germany?

Ans: Germenia

28. Who remarked “when France sneezes the rest of Europe catches cold”.

Ans: Duke Metternich

29. Who was proclaimed German Emperor in a ceremony held at Versailles in January 1871?

Ans: Kaiser William I

30. Who was called the Bismarck of Italy?

Ans: Garibaldi

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS FOR 2 MARKS

1. Name the painting prepared by Frederic Sorrieu in 1848.

Ans: In 1848 Frederic Sorrieu prepared the painting ‘The Dream of Worldwide Democratic and Social Republics-The Pact between Nations.’

2. What is conservatism?

Ans: It is a political philosophy that stressed the importance of tradition, established institutions and customs and preferred gradual development to quick change.

3. What was the main aim of the French Revolution?

Ans: Liberate, the people of France and Europe from despotism.

4. Why Count Camillo de Cavour was remembered in history?

Ans: Chief Minister of Italy during its unification.

5. What is a nation state?

Ans: Sense of common identity, common language and shared history.

6. What is the main contribution of French Revolution to the world?

Ans: The transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of French citizens, unity, liberty and fraternity

7. What was the result of the Act of Union?

Ans: Making of Great Britain

8. What is nationalism?

Ans: the sense of collective identity, shared common culture, language and tradition.

9. What was Napoleonic code?

Ans: Reforms introduced by Napoleon in 1804, removed privileges based on birth, established equality before law and secure right to property.

10. How did 18th and 19th century artists begin personifying a nation in an allegory?

Ans: female figures became allegory of nations, Marianne in France, Germania in Germany.

Short questions (3M)

1. How had the female figures become an allegory of the nation during the 19th century in Europe?

Ans: Nations were portrayed as female figure. The female form that was chosen to personify the nation did not stand for any particular woman in real life. It gives an abstract idea of the nation in concrete form.

2. The decade of 1830 had brought great economic hardships in Europe'. Support the statement with arguments.

Ans: enormous increase in population, more jobs seekers than employment, population from rural areas migrated to cities, small producers faced competition, and peasant struggled under the feudal dues, rise of price of food crops and bad harvest.

- 3.** Describe the role of culture in shaping the feelings of nationalism in Europe from 1830 to the end of 19th century.

Ans: culture helped to express and shape nationalist feeling, shared collective heritage, criticized the glorification of reason and science, German philosophers Johann Gottfried popularized the true spirit of nation through folk song, folk poetry and folk dance.

- 4.** What were main aims of the Treaty of Vienna of 1815?

Ans: The Bourbon dynasty was restored to power and France lost the territories it had annexed.

A series of states were set up o the boundaries of France.

Prussia was given important new territories on its western frontiers, while Austria was given control of Northern Italy.

The German confederation of 39 states was left untouched.

- 5.** Explain the contribution of Otto von Bismarck in German unification.

Ans: Bismarck was the Chief Minister of Prussia, he carried out the process of German unification with the help of Prussian army and bureaucracy, the unification was done by three wars for seven years, after winning Bismarck became the chancellor of North Confederation, and the King of Prussia William I was crowned as the German Emperor.

- 6.** Explain any three causes of conflict in the ‘Balkan area’ after 1871.

Ans: Slav nationalities struggle for their identity and independence, the Balkan states were fiercely jealous of each other and wanted to gain more territory, rivalry among the European powers over trade and colonies as well as army and naval might, Balkan tension led to a series of wars and finally the First World War.

- 7.** Why was Zollverein formed?

Ans: (a) In 1834, a custom union or zollverein was formed at the initiative of Prussia.

(b) The aim of zollverein was to bind the Germans economically into a nation.

© The Union abolished the tariff barriers and reduced the number of currencies from over thirty to only two.

- 8.** What was the Act of Union, 1707?

Ans: Scotland got incorporated in Britain through this Act of Union of 1707, England could impose its influence on Scotland, The catholic clans of Scottish Highlands suffered terrible repression, they were forbidden to speak their Gaelic language, wear their national dress, many were forcibly driven out of their homeland.

- 9.** Explain any three beliefs of the conservatism that emerged after 1815.

Ans: They did not tolerate criticism and dissent, curbed activities that questioned the legitimacy of autocratic governments, censorship on media,

- 10.** Explain any five social and administrative reforms introduced by Napoleon in regions under his control.

Ans: (a) did away all privileges based on birth. Simplified administrative divisions

(b) Established equality before the law and secured the right to property.

- © Simplified administrative division, abolished the feudal system, freed peasants from serfdom and manorial dues,

Long questions (5M)

1. Describe the events of French Revolution which had influenced the people belonging to other parts of Europe.

Ans: The French revolution took place in 1789 had various impacts on Europe.

- the revolution led to the setting up of Jacobin Clubs in different cities of Europe.

- paved way for the French armies to move into Holland, Belgium, Switzerland and some parts of Italy.

- the idea of nationalism began to be carried by French armies

- rise of Napoleon, the concept of equality of law and uniform laws, liberate the people of Europe from despotic rulers

- the concept of nation states.

2. Explain the contribution of Otto von Bismarck in German unification.

Ans: Germany was united by the Prussian Chief Minister Otto Von Bismarck with the help of the Prussian Army and bureaucracy. Prussia fought three wars with Austria, Denmark and France over seven years and won. It completed the process of unification. Finally the German Empire was proclaimed and William I was crowned as the Emperor.

3. Explain the process of unification of Italy.

Ans: The Italian state of Sardinia-Piedmont played the role of uniting Italy, similar to that play by Prussia in the case of Germany. Count Camillo de Cavour the chief minister of Sardinia Piedmont led the movement to unite the separate states of 19th century Italy with the help of army and an alliance with France. The regions annexed by Giuseppe Garibaldi and his Red Shirts joined with the Northern regions to form a united Italy in 1861. The Papal states joined it in 1870.

4. Describe any five steps taken by the French revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity among the French people.

Ans: They introduced the idea of la patrie and le citoyen, concept of a united community enjoying equal rights under a constitution-new French flag to replace royal standard flag-the Estates General, elected body of active citizens, renamed the National Assembly-new hymns composed, oaths taken, martyrs commemorated-established centralized administrative system, formulated uniform law for all-adopted uniform system of weights and measures, internal custom duties were abolished-promoted French language, discouraged regional dialects...

5. Describe the process of unification of Britain.

Ans: In Britain, the formation of nation state was not the result of a sudden upheaval or revolution-it was a long drawn process.-role of ethnic groups: their cultural identities-steady growth of the English nation in case of wealth, importance and power, Act of union 1707- between Scotland and England-language and religious policies-1801 Ireland was incorporated forcibly into Britain.

Source base Question

Following the defeat of Napoleon in 1815, European governments were driven by a spirit of conservatism. Conservatives believed that established, traditional institutions of state and society – like the monarchy, the Church, social hierarchies, property and the family –should be preserved. Most conservatives, however, did not propose a return to the society of pre-revolutionary days. Rather, they

realized, from the changes initiated by Napoleon, that modernization could in fact strengthen traditional institutions like the monarchy. It could make state power more effective and stronger. A modern army, an efficient bureaucracy, a dynamic economy, the abolition of feudalism and serfdom could strengthen the autocratic monarchies of Europe. In 1815, representatives of the European powers who had collectively defeated Napoleon, met at Vienna to draw up a settlement for Europe. The Congress was hosted by the Austrian Chancellor Duke Metternich. The delegates drew up the Treaty of Vienna of 1815 with the object of undoing most of the changes that had come about in Europe during the Napoleonic wars. The Bourbon dynasty, which had been deposed during the French Revolution, was restored to power, and France lost the territories it had annexed under Napoleon. A series of states were set up on the boundaries of France to prevent French expansion in future.

1. Which of the following statements correctly describes about European conservative ideology?

- A. Preservation of beliefs introduced by Napoleon
- B. Preservation of two sects of Christianity
- C. Preservation of socialist ideology in economic sphere
- D. Preservation of traditionalist beliefs in state and society

Ans: D. Preservation of traditionalist beliefs in state and society

2. Identify the purpose to convene the Vienna of Congress in 1815 from the following options?

- A. To declare competition of German unification
- B. To restore conservative regime in Europe
- C. To declare war against France
- D. To start the process of Italian Unification

Ans: B. To restore conservative regime in Europe

3. What did conservatives focus on at the Congress of Vienna? Select the appropriate option.

- A. To re-establish peace and stability in Europe
- B. To establish socialism in Europe
- C. To introduce democracy in France
- D. To set up a new Parliament in Austria

Ans: A. To re-establish peace and stability in Europe

4. How did the Congress of Vienna ensure peace in Europe? Select the appropriate option.

- A. With the restoration of Bourbon Dynasty
- B. Austria was not given the control of Northern Italy
- C. Laying out a balance of power between all the great powers in Europe
- D. By giving power to the German confederation

Ans: C. Laying out a balance of power between all the great powers in Europe

Nationalism in India Summary

1. In India, the growth of modern nationalism is closely connected to the anti-colonial movement. People began discovering their unity in the process of their struggle with colonialism.

2. The national movement began spreading to new areas and developing new modes of struggle after the First World War in 1919. The reason was clear. People were hopeful that their hardships would end after the war was over. But that did not happen. At this stage, a new mode of struggle was necessary to initiate under the guidance of a leader.

3. Mahatma Gandhi emerged as the new leader with his idea of satyagraha. The idea of satyagraha emphasized the power of truth and the need to search for truth. A satyagrahi could win the battle through non-violence. Mahatma Gandhi believed that non-violence could unite all Indians.

4. After arriving in India from South Africa, Mahatma Gandhi successfully organised satyagraha movements at various places such as Champaran in Bihar, Kheda and Ahmedabad in Gujarat, etc. and got huge success.

5. In 1919, Gandhiji decided to launch a nationwide satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act (1919). This Act gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.

6. Rallies began to be organized in various cities against such unjust laws. Workers went on strike in railway workshops, and shops were closed down. On 13 April, 1919 the infamous Jallianwala Bagh incident took place. Thousands of innocent people were killed when General Dyer opened fire on them.

7. This ghastly action of the British angered the common mass in India. They took to the streets in towns and attacked government buildings. The government responded with brutal repression, seeking to humiliate and terrorize people.

8. Mahatma Gandhi now launched a more broad-based movement in India. This movement came to be known as the non-cooperation movement. It began in 1920. Various social groups participated in this movement, each with its own specific aspiration.

9. Thousands of students left government-controlled schools and colleges, headmasters and teachers resigned and lawyers gave up their legal practices. But the effects on noncooperation on the economic front were more dramatic. Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops picketed and foreign cloth burnt in huge bonfires.

10. The non-cooperation movement could not last for a long time. In February 1922, Mahatma Gandhi decided to withdraw this movement as he felt it was turning violent in many places and satyagrahis needed to be properly trained before they would be ready for mass struggles.

11. Within the Congress, some moderate leaders like C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru argued for a return to council politics but younger leaders like Nehru and Bose pressed for more radical mass agitation and for full independence.

12. In 1928, the Simon Commission arrived in India to look into the functioning of the constitutional system in the country (India) and suggest changes. But the commission was boycotted because it did not have a single Indian member. In an effort to win them over, the Viceroy, Lord Irwin, announced in October 1929, a vague offer of 'dominion status' for India. But this did not satisfy the Congress leaders.

13. In December 1929, under the presidency of J.L. Nehru, the Lahore Congress formalized the demand of 'Purna Swaraj' or full independence for India. It was declared that 26 January 1930, would be celebrated as the

Independence Day when people were to take a pledge to struggle for complete independence. But the celebrations could not attract much attention.

14. In 1930, Mahatma Gandhi launched the Civil Disobedience Movement when his demand to abolish the salt tax was not fulfilled. His famous salt march was accompanied by 78 of his trusted volunteers. The march was over 240 miles, from Gandhiji's ashram in Sabarmati to the Gujarati coastal town of Dandi. Thousands joined Mahatma Gandhi. On 6 April, he reached Dandi and violated the law, by manufacturing salt.

15. The movement spread far and wide. Worried by the developments, the colonial government began arresting the Congress leaders one by one. This led to violent clashes in many places. A frightened government responded with a policy of brutal repression.

16. Mahatma Gandhi called off the movement and entered into a pact with Irwin on 5 March 1931, which came to be known as Gandhi-Irwin Pact. As per this Pact Gandhiji went to London in December 1931 for the Second Round Table Conference, but the negotiations broke down and he returned disappointed.

17. Back in India, he found that a series of measures had been imposed on Indian leaders to prevent them from organizing meetings, demonstrations and boycotts with great apprehension, Gandhiji relaunched the Civil Disobedience Movement. But it lost its momentum by 1934.

18. This movement had its own limitations. Some of the Muslim political organizations in India were not enthusiastic in their response to this movement. So far dalit participation was concerned, it was also limited.

19. From the mid-1920s, relations between Hindus and Muslims began to worsen. Each community organized religious processions with militant fervor, provoking HinduMuslim communal clashes and riots in various cities. So, when the Civil Disobedience Movement was started, large sections of Muslims could not respond to the call for a united struggle.

20. Many Muslim leaders and intellectuals expressed their concern about the status of Muslims as a minority within India. They feared that the culture and identity of minorities would be lost under the domination of Hindu majority.

Nationalism in India Class 10 CBSE Notes Important Terms

Forced recruitment: A process by which the colonial state forced people to join the army.

Boycott: The refusal to deal and associate with people, or participate in activities, or buy and use things, usually a form of protest.

Picket: A form of demonstration or protest by which people block the entrance to a shop, factory, or office.

Begar: Labour that villagers were forced to contribute without any payment.

Khadi: Indian hand-spun cloth.

Satyagraha: Following the path of truth and non-violence,

Sanatan's: The conservative high-caste Hindus.

Bhangis: The sweepers.

Harijaiv: The children of God.

Time Period

1915: Mahatma Gandhi returned to India from South Africa.

1916: Mahatma Gandhi traveled to Champaran in Bihar.

1917: Mahatma Gandhi organized satyagraha to support the peasants of the Kheda district in Gujarat.

1918-19: Distressed UP peasants organized by Baba Ramchandra

April 1919: Gandhian hartal against Rowlatt Act; Jallianwala Bagh massacre

January 1921: Non-cooperation and Khilafat movement launched

February 1922: Chauri Chaura; Gandhiji withdrew Non-cooperation movement

May 1924: Alluri Sitarama Raju arrested ending a two-year armed tribal struggle

December 1929: Lahore Congress; Congress adopted the demand for 'Purna Swaraj'

1930: B.R. Ambedkar established Depressed Classes Association

March 1930: Gandhiji began Civil Disobedience Movement by breaking salt law at Dandi.

March 1931: Gandhiji ended Civil Disobedience Movement

Dec. 1931: Second Round Table Conference

1932: Civil Disobedience re-launched.

(MCQ/Very short question)

1. When did Mahatma Gandhi return to India?

A. January 1912 C. January 1913

B. January 1914 D. January 1915

Ans: D. January 1915

2. Which province did not boycott the council election?

A. Madras C. Hyderabad

B. Ahmadabad D. Lucknow

Ans: A. Madras

3. Who headed the Owdh Kisan Sabha in Awadh?

A. Subhash chandra Bose C. Bipin Chandra Pal.

B. Madan Mohan Malviya D. Jawharlal Nehru

Ans: D. Jawharlal Nehru

4. Who was the president of Muslim league in 1930?

A. Sir Muhammad Iqbal C. Muhammad Ali Jinnah

B. Shaukat Ali. D. Maulana Azad.

Ans: A. Sir Muhammad Iqbal

5. The resolution of Purna Swaraj was adopted at which congress session?

A. Bombay C. Karachi

B. Lahore. D. Madras

Ans: B. Lahore.

6. Who was known as the lion of Punjab?

A. Bal Gangadhar Tilak C. Lala lajpat Rai

B. Bipin Chandra Pal D. Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel

Ans: C. Lala lajpat Rai

7. When did Mahatma Gandhi reach in Dandi to violate the salt law?

A. On 5th April 1930 C. On 6th April 1930

B. On 6th May 1930. D. On 7th April 1930.

Ans: On 6th April 1930

8. Who organized the Swaraj party in west Bengal?

A. Bipin Chandra pal .C. Jawaharlal lal Nehru

B. Chitranjan Das and Motilal Nehru D. Subhas Chandra Bose

Ans: B. Chitranjan Das and Motilal Nehru

9. The tribal peasants of Gudem Hills is located in which state?

A. Tamil Nadu. C. Andhra Pradesh.

B. Kerala. D. Karnataka.

Ans: C. Andhra Pradesh

10. In which year the Indigo Satyagraha was organized?

11. A. 1916. B. 1917. C. 1918. D. 1919.

Ans: B. 1917

12. When was the Rowlatt Act passed?

Ans: February 1919

13. Name the British officer who was responsible for the Jallianwala Bagh?

Ans: General Dyer

14. In which Indian National Congress session the Non-Cooperation Movement was accepted?

Ans: December 1920

15. What were the reasons to calling off the Non-cooperation Movement?

Ans: Chauri Chaura incident in 1922

16. By which name Gandhiji referred Dalit?

Ans: Harijans

17. For which reason the Simon commission was boycotted?

Ans: It had no Indian Members

18. Who announced a vague offer of Dominion status for India in 1929?

- Ans: The Viceroy, Lord Irwin

18. What is meant by Begaar?

Ans: complete labour without payment

19. Who was known as 'Frontier Gandhi'?

Ans: Khan Abdul Gaffar Khan

20. During the British India how many provinces were there?

Ans: 8 provinces

21. Name the writer of the novel Anandamath.

Ans: Bankim Chandra Chatterji

22. State the slogan with which Simon Commission was greeted in 1928 in India

Ans: Simon Go Back

23. Who wrote the song 'Vande Mataram'?

Ans: Bankim Chandra Chatterji

24. Name the writer of the book 'Hind Swaraj'.

Ans: Mahatma Gandhi

25. What was the Inland Emigration Act of 1859?

Ans: The plantation workers were not permitted to leave the tea gardens without permission as per the Inland Emigration Act of 1859.

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS FOR 2 MARKS

1. What was the Rowlatt Act?
Ans: Passed 1919 by imperial legislative council, it gave the government enormous power to suppress political activities and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.
2. Why was the Khilafat Movement started?
Ans: started by Mahatma Gandhi and Ali brothers, in response to the harsh treatment given to the Caliph of the Ottoman Empire by the British.
3. What was the main reason to withdraw the Non Cooperation Movement?
Ans: the movement had turned violent in many places, the Chauri-Chaura incident in 1922 turned into a violent dash and 22 policemen were killed. Gandhiji felt satyagrahis were not ready for mass struggles.
4. Explain any two facts about the new economic situation created in India by the First World War.
Ans: Import Manchester import into India declined, Indian factories were called to supply war needs, and result new factories were set up.
5. What was the ‘inland emigration act’?
Ans: Under the Inland Emigration Act of 1859, plantation workers were not permitted or very rarely permitted to leave the tea gardens without permission.
6. Explain any two problems faced by the peasants of Awadh.
Ans: Talukdars and landlords demands high rents and a variety of other taxes from peasants, peasants had to do beggar means work without any payment.
7. Why did the nationalists in India tour villages to gather folk songs and legends?
Ans: as it was essential to preserve one’s folk tradition in order to discover his national identity and restore a sense of pride in his past.
8. Why were the Dalits ignored by the congress for a long time?
Ans: the Dalits were ignored by the congress for fear of offending the sanatanis, the conservative high caste Hindus.
9. Why was the Simon Commission boycotted?
Ans: because there were no Indian members in the Commission.
10. By whom was the first image of Bharat Mata painted?
Ans: Abnindranath Tagore, pioneer of Bengal School of Art, painted the first image of Bharat Mata.
11. Why did Non-Cooperation Movement gradually slow down in cities? Explain two reasons.
Ans: Khadi cloth was often more expensive, no alternative Indian institutions to join.

Short Questions (3M)

1. Mention the Satyagraha movements organized by Mahatma Gandhi before starting freedom movement of India.
Ans. 1) Champaran movement in Bihar, 1917
2) Kheda movement in Gujrat, 1917
3) Movement in Ahmedabad, 1918
2. What powers had been given to the Government through Rowlatt Act1919? How it caused Jallianwala Bagh incident?

Ans: Rowlatt Act had given the government enormous powers to repress political activities, permitted the detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.

3. What is the Khilafat Movement? How and by whom it was organized in India?

Ans: Started by Ali Brothers, Shaukat Ali and Muhammad Ali

To show their alliance to the spiritual head of the Ottoman Empire, Khalifa.

4. Why did Gandhiji relaunch the civil disobedience movement after the second round table conference? explain any three reasons.

Ans: The negotiations broke down, British government had begun a new cycle of repression, many politicians were put to jail, and Congress had been declared illegal.

5. Why did the Non-Cooperation Movement gradually slowdown in cities? Explain

Ans: Khadi clothe was more often expensive, poor people could not afford it, boycott of British institutions and goods posed problems.

5. Explain the idea of Satyagraha according to Gandhiji.

Ans : Satyagrah is a method of agitation and protest based on truth and non violence. It was first introduced by Mahatma Gandhi in the National Movement.

6. Explain the role of Ambedkar in uplifting the dalits or the depressed classes.

Ans: Ambedkar organised the depressed classes association to uplift the dalits, demanded separate electorates for dalits and reservation of seats in educational institutions, signed the Poona pact that give reserved seats to the depressed classes in provincial and Central legislative councils.

7. Why did Mahatma Gandhi find in “Salt” a powerful symbol that could unite the Nations? explain.

Ans: conjunct by everyone and regarded as one of the most essential item of food. Gandhiji thought if any moment could be arranged against operations which affected people from all starta, it could unite the nation.

8. Analyze the role of merchants and the industrialist in the civil disobedience movement.

Ans: Wanted protection against imports of foreign goods and a rupee sterling foreign exchange ratio that could discourage imports, they thought if colonial resections did not exist on business world, as a result trade and business world flurries without constraints.

9. Explain the effects of ‘worldwide economic depression’ on India towards late 1920s.

And: trade was affected, exports decreased, agricultural prices fell due to which farmers could not sell their produce and the British government continued to take high taxes.

Long Questions (5m)

1. How did the First World War impact India?

Ans: the British government raised taxes, custom duty and income taxes in India to finance the war expenditures, villagers and farmers were forcefully recruited in the British army, rise in prices of food and other essential things..

2. What was Non- Cooperation Movement started in 1920s? Why did Gandhiji call of the movement in 1922?

Ans: Young Muslim leaders approached Gandhiji about the possibility of a United moment against the British rule, Gandhiji saw this as an opportunity to bring Muslim under the umbrella of a unified National Movement.

At the congress session in Nagpur in December 1920 the non cooperation program was finalized and Gandhiji launched the non cooperation movement

In 1922 the Chauri Chaura incident where 22 23 policemen died due to violent clash between people and police, Gandhiji called off the moment.

3. How the civil disobedience movement did come into force in various parts of the country? Explain with examples.

Ans: With the state of the movement, foreign clothes were boycotted and liquor shop were picketed, peasants refused to pay revenue and chaukidari taxes, in the countryside rich peasants and communities of Gujarat and Uttar Pradesh became the supporters of the civil disobedience movement. Industrialist, railway workers, mine workers and women from all over India participated in civil disobedience movement.

4. Explain the major factors which promoted the sense of nationalism in the Indians?

Ans: United struggle, cultural process, common identity, painting of Bharat Mata, revival of India folklore and folk song promoting traditional culture and restore sense of pride in the past history and the culture, national leaders aroused the feelings of nationalism through their motivational speeches and political activities.

5. Explain the role of women in the civil disobedience movement.

Ans: thousands of women participated in marches, manufactured salt and picketed foreign clothes and liquor shops. Many went to jail, in urban areas women were high cast educated family and in rural areas women came from rich peasant households. But all these participations were symbolic as women did not hold any position of authority for a long time.

Sources/Case based

1. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

While the Rowlatt Satyagraha had been a widespread movement, it was still limited mostly to cities and towns. Mahatma Gandhi now felt the need to launch a more broad-based movement in India. But he was certain that no such movement could be organized without bringing the Hindus and Muslims closer together. One way of doing this, he felt, was to take up the Khilafat issue. The First World War had ended with the defeat of Ottoman Turkey. And there were rumors that a harsh peace treaty was going to be imposed on the Ottoman emperor – the spiritual head of the Islamic world (the Khalifa). To defend the Khalifa's temporal powers, a Khilafat Committee was formed in Bombay in March 1919. A young generation of Muslim leaders like the brothers Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali, began discussing with Mahatma Gandhi about the possibility of a united mass action on the issue. Gandhiji saw this as an opportunity to bring Muslims under the umbrella of a unified national movement. At the Calcutta session of the Congress in September 1920, he convinced other leaders of the need to start a non-cooperation movement in support of Khilafat as well as for Swaraj.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

(i) Which of the following was the main objective of Rowlatt Act of 1919?

(a) To curb the growing nationalist upsurge in the country

(b) To put control on radical elements.

(c) To put control on Gandhi's political activities.

(d) To stop Satyagrahis to take part in Non-Cooperation Movement.

(ii) During World War I, Ottoman Empire was the part of:

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

This sense of collective belonging came partly through the experience of united struggles. But there were also a variety of cultural processes through which nationalism captured people's imagination. History and fiction, folklore and songs, popular prints and symbols, all played a part in the making of nationalism. The identity of the nation is most often symbolized in a figure or image. This helps create an image with which people can identify the nation. It was in the twentieth century, with the growth of nationalism, that the identity of India came to be visually associated with the image of Bharat Mata. The image was first created by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay. In the 1870s he wrote 'Vande Mataram' as a hymn to the motherland. Later it was included in his novel *Anandamath* and widely sung during the Swadeshi movement in Bengal. Moved by the Swadeshi movement, Abanindranath Tagore painted his famous image of Bharat Mata. In this painting Bharat Mata is portrayed as an ascetic figure; she is calm, composed, divine and spiritual. In subsequent years, the image of Bharat Mata acquired many different forms, as it circulated in popular prints, and was painted by different artists. Devotion to this mother figure came to be seen as evidence of one's nationalism.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

- (i) Find out the real meaning of the nationalism from the following:

 - (a) To mobilize people to make a change in society.
 - (b) To develop a sense within Indians that British government is not good for them.
 - (c) To ignite the feeling that all Indians are one.
 - (d) To revive the glory which has been destroyed by colonial rulers?

(ii) Which of the following played important role to ignite feelings of nationalism?

 - (a) Anandmath
 - (b) Collection of folklore and folktale
 - (c) Image of Bharat Mata
 - (d) All of the above

(iii) The main motive behind the launching of Swadeshi Movement was:

- (a) To promote Gandhian idea of self dependency.
- (b) To oppose the arrest of nationalists by the government.
- (c) To oppose the division of Bengal into two parts.
- (d) To promote ‘Vande Mataram’ to unite Indians.

(iv) Which of the following statement is not correct about the image of Bharat Mata?

- (a) The image was drawn by several artists at different times.
- (b) Bharat Mata carries same symbols in all images.
- (c) French and German allegories inspired to draw the image of Bharat Mata.
- (d) Different artists used different symbols to show collective belongings.

Ans. (i) (c) To ignite the feeling that all Indians are one.

(ii) (d) All of the above.

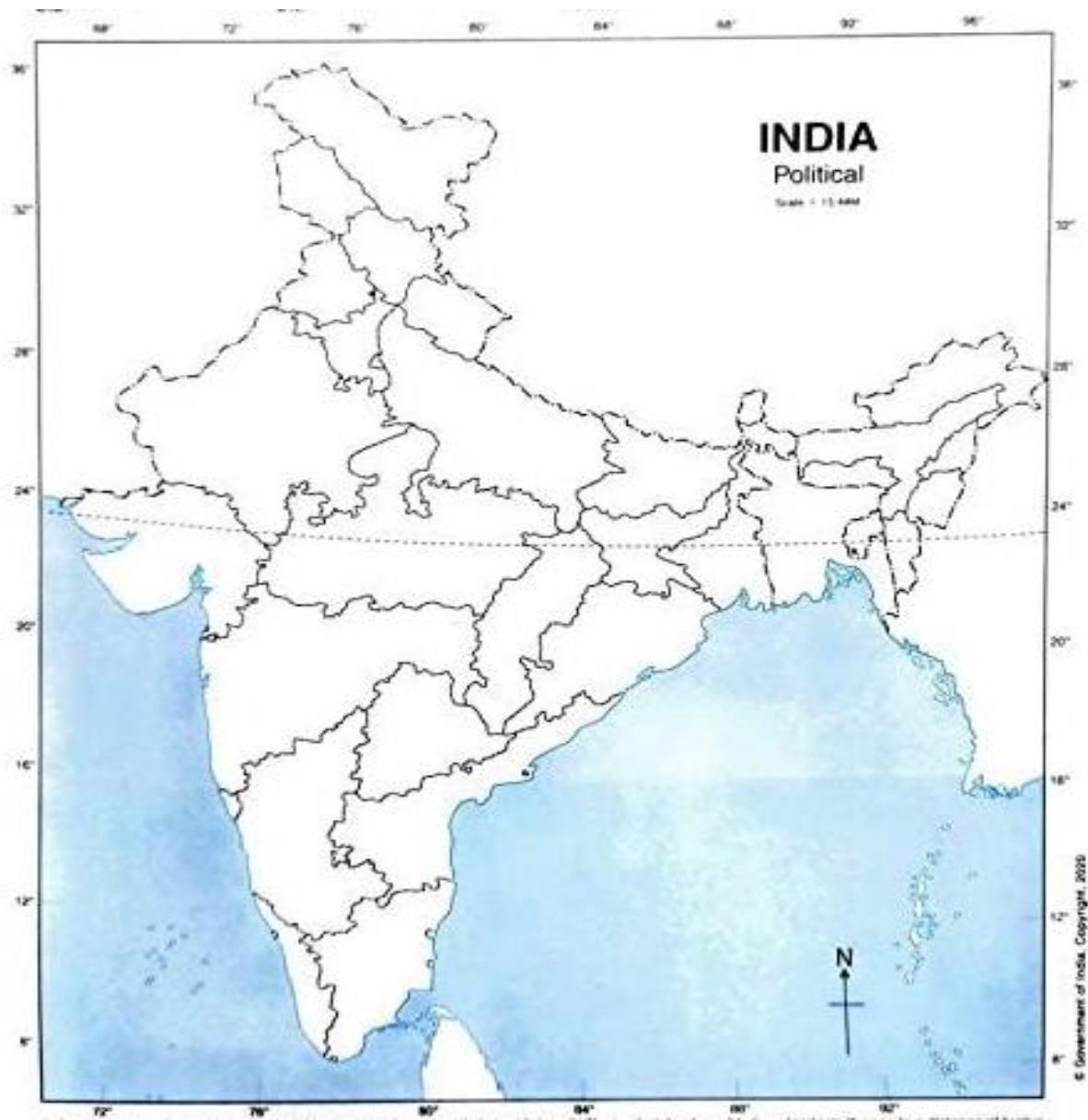
(iii) (c) To oppose the division of Bengal into two parts.

(iv) (b) Bharat Mata carries same symbols in all images.

Map Questions

Q. Locate and Label the following Places in the political map of India

- (a) Madras (b) Calcutta (c) Nagpur (d) Champaran
- (e) Kheda (f) Ahmedabad (g) Surat (h) Dhandi



The Making of a Global World (Summary)

The Pre-Modern World

The ‘globalization’ refers to an economic system that has emerged since the last 50 years .The global world has a long history comprising the trade and migration of people in search of work, the movement of capital, and much else. As we think about the dramatic and visible signs of global interconnectedness in our lives today, we need to understand the phases through which this world in which we live has emerged.

From ancient times, travelers, traders, priests and pilgrims travelled vast distances for knowledge, opportunity and spiritual fulfillment, or to escape persecution. They carried goods, money, values, skills, ideas, inventions, and even germs and diseases. As early as 3000 BCE an active coastal trade linked the Indus valley civilizations with present-day West Asia. For more than a millennia, cowries (the Hindi *cowdior* seashells, used as a form of currency) from the Maldives found their way to China and East Africa. The long-distance spread of disease-carrying germs may be traced as far back as the seventh century. By the thirteenth century it had become an unmistakable link.

Silk Routes

The silk routes are a good example of vibrant pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world. The name ‘silk routes’ points to the importance of West-bound Chinese silk cargoes along this route. Historians have identified several silk routes, overland and by sea, knitting together vast regions of Asia, and linking Asia with Europe and northern Africa. They are known to have existed since before the Christian era and thrived almost till the fifteenth century. But Chinese pottery also travelled the same route, as did textiles and spices from India and Southeast Asia. In return, precious metals – gold and silver – flowed from Europe to Asia. Trade and cultural exchange always went hand in hand. Early Christian missionaries almost certainly travelled this route to Asia, as did early Muslim preachers a few centuries later. Much before all this, Buddhism emerged from eastern India and spread in several directions through intersecting points on the silk routes.

Quest and Victory of America and movement of food crops.

Food offers many examples of long-distance cultural exchange. Traders and travelers introduced new crops to the lands they travelled. Take spaghetti and noodles. It is believed that noodles travelled west from China to become spaghetti and Arab traders took pasta to Sicily in fifth-century. Many of our common foods such as potatoes, soya, groundnuts, maize, tomatoes, chilies, sweet potatoes, and so on were not known to our ancestors until about five centuries ago. These foods were only introduced in Europe and Asia after Christopher Columbus accidentally discovered the Americas. Europeans found precious metals, particularly silver, from mines located in present day Peru and Mexico also enhanced Europe’s wealth and financed its trade with Asia.(Potosi silver mine in Bolivia) Many expeditions set off in search of El Dorado (Columbia in South America), the fabled city of gold. In mid-sixteenth century, the Portuguese and Spanish conquest and colonization of America was not just a result of superior firepower. In fact, the Spanish conquerors used the germs of smallpox that they carried on their person as biological warfare. Because of their long isolation, America’s original inhabitants had no immunity against these diseases that came from Europe. Smallpox in particular proved a deadly killer.

In the Irish Potato Famine of 1849. Hungry children started digging for potatoes in a field that has already been harvested, hoping to discover some leftovers. During the Great Irish Potato Famine (1845 to 1849), around 1,000,000 people died of starvation in Ireland, and double the number emigrated in search of work.

Migration of people from Europe:

Until the nineteenth century, poverty and hunger were common in Europe. Cities were crowded and deadly diseases were widespread. Religious conflicts were common, and religious dissenters were persecuted. Thousands therefore fled Europe for America. Here, by the eighteenth century, plantations worked by slaves captured in Africa were growing cotton and sugar for European markets. Until well into the eighteenth century, China and India were among the world’s richest countries. They were also pre-eminent in Asian trade. However, from the fifteenth century, China is said to have restricted overseas contacts and retreated into isolation. China’s reduced role and the rising importance of the Americas gradually moved the centre of world trade westwards. Europe now emerged as the centre of world trade.

Corn Laws

Under pressure from landed groups, the government restricted the import of corn. The laws allowing the government to do this were commonly known as the ‘Corn Laws’. Unhappy with high food prices, industrialists and urban dwellers forced the abolition of the Corn Laws. After the Corn Laws were scrapped, food could be imported into Britain more cheaply than it could be produced within the country. British agriculture was unable to compete with imports. Vast areas of land were now left uncultivated, and thousands of men and women were thrown out of work. They flocked to the cities or migrated overseas.

In 19th century, economists identify three types of movement or ‘flows’ within international economic exchanges. The first is the flow of trade referred largely to trade in goods (e.g., cloth or wheat). The second is the flow of labour – the migration of people in search of employment. The third is the movement of capital for short-term or long-term investments over long distances.

As food prices fell, consumption in Britain rose. From the mid nineteenth century, faster industrial growth in Britain also led to higher incomes, and therefore more food imports. Around the world – in Eastern Europe, Russia, America and Australia – lands were cleared and food production expanded to meet the British demand. It was not enough merely to clear lands for agriculture. Railways were needed to link the agricultural regions to the ports. New harbours had to be built and old ones expanded to ship the new cargoes. People had to settle on the lands to bring them under cultivation. This meant building homes and settlements. All these activities in turn required capital and labour. Capital flowed from financial centers such as London. The demand for labour in places where labour was in short supply – as in America and Australia – led to more migration. Nearly 50 million people emigrated from Europe to America and Australia in the nineteenth century. All over the world some 150 million are estimated to have left their homes, crossed oceans and vast distances over land in search of a better future.

Some of this dramatic change, though on a smaller scale, occurred closer home in west Punjab. Here the British Indian government built a network of irrigation canals to transform semi-desert wastes into fertile agricultural lands that could grow wheat and cotton for export. The Canal Colonies, as the areas irrigated by the new canals were called, were settled by peasants from other parts of Punjab. The regional specialization in the production of commodities developed, and between 1820 and 1914 world trade was estimated to have multiplied 25 to 40 times. Nearly 60 per cent of this trade comprised ‘primary products’ – that is, agricultural products such as wheat and cotton, rubber and minerals such as coal to feed British textile mills and industries.

Role of Technology

The railways, steamships, the telegraph, for example, were important inventions without which we cannot imagine the transformed nineteenth-century world. But technological advances were often the result of larger social, political and economic factors. For example, colonization stimulated new investments and improvements in transport: faster railways,

Lighter wagons and larger ships helped move food more cheaply and quickly from faraway farms to final markets. The trade in meat offers a good example of this connected process. Till the 1870s, animals were shipped live from America to Europe and then slaughtered when they arrived there. But live animals took up a lot of ship space. Many also died in voyage, fell ill, lost weight, or became unfit to eat. Meat was hence an expensive luxury beyond the reach of the European poor. High prices in turn kept demand and production down until the development of a new technology, namely, refrigerated ships, which enabled the transport of perishable foods over long distances. Now animals were slaughtered for food at the starting point – in America, Australia or New Zealand – and then transported to Europe as frozen meat. This reduced shipping costs and lowered meat prices in Europe. The poor in Europe could now consume a more varied diet. To the earlier monotony of bread and potatoes many, though not all, could now add meat (and butter and eggs) to their diet. Better living conditions promoted social peace within the country and support for imperialism abroad.

Carvings of Africa

In 1885 the big European powers met in Berlin to complete the carving up of Africa between them. Britain and France made vast additions to their overseas territories in the late nineteenth century. Belgium and Germany became new colonial powers. The US also became a colonial power in the late 1890s by taking over some colonies earlier held by Spain. Let us look at one example of the destructive impact of colonialism on the economy and livelihoods of colonized people. Sir Henry Morton Stanley was a journalist and explorer sent by the New York Herald to find Livingston, a missionary and explorer who had been in Africa for several years. Like other European and American explorers of the time, Stanley went with arms, mobilized local hunters, warriors and laborers to help him, fought with local tribes, investigated African terrains, and mapped different regions. These explorations helped the conquest of Africa. Geographical explorations were not driven by an innocent search for scientific information. They were directly linked to imperial projects.

Rinderpest or the Cattle Plague

In Africa, in the 1890s, a fast-spreading disease of cattle plague or rinderpest had a terrifying impact on people’s livelihoods and the local economy. Historically, Africa had abundant land and a relatively small population. For

centuries, land and livestock sustained African livelihoods and people rarely worked for a wage. In the late nineteenth century, Europeans were attracted to Africa due to its vast resources of land and minerals. Europeans came to Africa hoping to establish plantations and mines to produce crops and minerals for export to Europe. But there was an unexpected problem – a shortage of labour willing to work for wages. Employers used many methods to recruit and retain labour. Heavy taxes were imposed which could be paid only by working for wages on plantations and mines. Inheritance laws were changed so that peasants were displaced from land: only one member of a family was allowed to inherit land, as a result of which the others were pushed into the labour market. Mineworkers were also confined in compounds and not allowed to move about freely. Then came rinderpest, a devastating cattle disease. Rinderpest arrived in Africa in the late 1880s. It was carried by infected cattle imported from British Asia to feed the Italian soldiers invading Eritrea in East Africa. Entering Africa in the east, rinderpest moved west ‘like forest fire’, reaching Africa’s Atlantic coast in 1892. It reached the Cape (Africa’s southernmost tip) five years later. Along

the way rinderpest killed 90 per cent of the cattle. The loss of cattle destroyed African livelihoods. Planters, mine owners and colonial governments now successfully monopolized what scarce cattle resources remained, to strengthen their power and to force Africans into the labour market.

Indentured Labour Migration from India

The example of indentured labour migration from India shows faster economic growth as well as great misery, higher incomes for some and poverty for others. In the nineteenth century, hundreds of thousands of Indian and Chinese labourers went to work on plantations, in mines, and in road and railway construction projects around the world. In India, indentured labourers were hired under contracts which promised return travel to India after they had worked five years on their employer’s plantation. Most Indian indentured workers came from the present-day regions of eastern India. In the mid-nineteenth century these regions experienced many changes – cottage industries declined, land rent rose, lands were cleared for mines and plantations. All this affected the lives of the poor: they failed to pay their rents, became deeply indebted and were forced to migrate in search of work. The main destinations of Indian indentured migrants were the Caribbean islands (mainly Trinidad, Guyana and Surinam), Mauritius and Fiji. Closer home, Tamil migrants went to Ceylon and Malaya. Indentured workers were also recruited for tea plantations in Assam. Recruitment was done by agents engaged by employers and paid a small commission. Many migrants agreed to take up work hoping to escape poverty or oppression in their home villages. Agents also tempted the prospective migrants by providing false information about final destinations, modes of travel, the nature of the work, and living and working conditions. Often migrants were not even told that they were to embark on a longsea voyage. Sometimes agents even forcibly abducted less willing migrants. Nineteenth-century indenture has been described as a ‘new system of slavery’. On arrival at the plantations, labourers found conditions to be different from what they had imagined. Living and working conditions were harsh, and there were few legal rights. But workers discovered their own ways of surviving. Many of them escaped into the wilds, though if caught they faced severe punishment. Others developed new forms of individual and collective self expression, blending different cultural forms, old and new. In Trinidad the annual Muharram procession was transformed into riotous carnival called ‘Hosay’ (for Imam Hussain) in which workers of all races and religions joined. Similarly, the protest religion of Rastafarianism (made famous by the Jamaican reggae star Bob Marley) is also said to reflect social and cultural links with Indian migrants to the Caribbean. ‘Chutney music’, popular in Trinidad and Guyana, is another creative contemporary expression of the post-indenture experience. These forms of cultural fusion are part of the making of the global world, where things from different places get mixed, lose their original characteristics and become something entirely new. Most indentured workers stayed on after their contracts ended, or returned to their new homes after a short spell in India. There are large communities of people of Indian descent in these countries. Nobel Prize-winning writer V.S. Naipaul, West Indies cricketers Shivnarine Chanderpaul and Ramnaresh Sarwan. Are such names sound vaguely Indian because they are descended from indentured labour migrants from India. From the 1900s India’s nationalist leaders began opposing the system of indentured labour migration as abusive and cruel. It was abolished in 1921. Yet for a number of decades afterwards, descendants of Indian indentured workers, often thought of as ‘coolies’, remained an uneasy minority in the Caribbean islands. Some of Naipaul’s early novels capture their sense of loss and alienation.

Indian Entrepreneurs Abroad

Many Indian bankers like Shikarpuri Shroffs and Nattukottai Chettiar were amongst the many groups of bankers and traders who financed export agriculture in Central and Southeast Asia, using either their own funds or those borrowed from European banks. They had a sophisticated system to transfer of money over large distances, and even developed indigenous forms of corporate organisation. Indian traders and moneylenders also followed European colonizers into Africa. Hyderabadi Sindhi traders, however, ventured beyond European colonies. From the 1860s they established flourishing emporia at busy ports worldwide, selling local and imported curios to tourists whose numbers were beginning to swell, thanks to the development of safe and comfortable passenger vessels.

Indian Trade, Colonialism and the Global System

Historically, fine cottons produced in India were exported to Europe. With industrialization, British cotton manufacture began to expand, and industrialists pressurized the government to restrict cotton imports and protect local industries. Tariffs were imposed on cloth imports into Britain. Consequently, the inflow of fine Indian cotton began to decline. From the early nineteenth century, British manufacturers also began to seek overseas markets for their cloth. Excluded from the British market by tariff barriers, Indian textiles now faced stiff competition in other international markets. While exports of manufactures declined rapidly, export of raw materials increased equally fast. Between 1812 and 1871, the share of raw cotton exports rose from 5 per cent to 35 per cent. Indigo used for dyeing cloth was another important export for many decades. And, as you have read last year, opium shipments to China grew rapidly from the 1820s to become for a while India's single largest export. Britain grew opium in India and exported it to China and, with the money earned through this sale, it financed its tea and other imports from China. Over the nineteenth century, raw material exports from India to Britain and the rest of the world increased. But the value of British exports to India was much higher than the value of British imports from India. Thus Britain had a 'trade surpluses with India. Britain used this surplus to balance its trade deficits with other countries – that is, with countries from which Britain was importing more than it was selling to. Britain's trade surplus in India also helped pay the so-called 'home charges' that included private remittances home by British officials and traders, interest payments on India's external debt, and pensions of British officials in India.

The Inter-war Economy

The First World War (1914-18) was mainly fought in Europe. But its impact was felt around the world. Notably for our concerns in this chapter, it plunged the first half of the twentieth century into a crisis that took over three decades to overcome. During this period the world experienced widespread economic and political instability, and another catastrophic war.

3.1 Wartime Transformations

The First World War, as you know, was fought between two power blocs. On the one side were the Allies – Britain, France and Russia (later joined by the US); and on the opposite side were the Central Powers – Germany, Austria-Hungary and Ottoman Turkey. When the war began in August 1914, many governments thought it would be over by Christmas. It lasted more than four years. The First World War was a war like no other before. The fighting involved the world's leading industrial nations which now harnessed the vast powers of modern industry to inflict the greatest possible destruction on their enemies. This war was thus the first modern industrial war. It saw the use of machine guns, tanks, aircraft, chemical weapons, etc. on massive scale. These were all increasingly products of modern large scale industry. To fight the war, millions of soldiers had to be recruited from around the world and moved to the frontlines on large ships and trains. The scale of death and destruction – 9 million dead and 20 million injured – was unthinkable before the industrial age, without the use of industrial arms. Most of the killed and maimed were men of working age. These deaths and injuries reduced the able-bodied workforce in Europe. With fewer numbers within the family, household incomes declined after the war. During the war, industries were restructured to produce war-related goods. Entire societies were also reorganized for war – as men went to battle, women stepped in to undertake jobs that earlier only men were expected to do. The war led to the snapping of economic links between some of the world's largest economic powers which were now fighting each other to pay for them. So Britain borrowed large sums of money from US banks as well as the US public. Thus the war transformed the US from being an international debtor to an international creditor. In other words, at the

war's end, the US and its citizens owned more overseas assets than foreign governments and citizens owned in the US.

3.2 Post-war Recovery

Post-war economic recovery proved difficult. Britain, which was the world's leading economy in the pre-war period, in particular faced a prolonged crisis. While Britain was preoccupied with war, industries had developed in India and Japan. After the war Britain found it difficult to recapture its earlier position of dominance in the Indian market, and to compete with Japan internationally. Moreover, to finance war expenditures Britain had borrowed liberally from the US. This meant that at the end of the war Britain was burdened with huge external debts. Unemployment increased and grain prices fell due to overproduction. After the war, Eastern Europe revived its wheat production leading to glut.

The Great Depression of 1929

It signaled acute economic crisis that started during the interregnum phase (period between great wars). It began in 1929 and ended in 1936

Second World War

The Second World War broke out in 1939 just after 20 years of First World War and ended in 1945. In the aftermath of Second World War, the axis power suffered and Germany faced a merciless defeat.

Breton Woods Agreement (July 1944):

To ensure a stable economy, a framework was agreed upon at the United Nations Monetary and Financial Conference held at Breton Woods in New Hampshire, USA. It established the International Monetary Fund and IBRD (International Bank for Reconstruction and Development also called as World Bank.)

Cold War and Decolonization:

- After the end of Second World War, the world got divided into two distinct blocs influenced by USA and USSR. The western bloc was dominated by USA (Capitalist bloc) and USSR influenced the Eastern bloc (Communist Bloc).
 - From 1947 onwards, the process of decolonization continued for a long time.
 - Developing nations integrated themselves into a group called G-77 and demanded a New International Economic Order (NIEO).

(MCQ/Very short questions)

1. Which out of the following was beyond the reach of the poor in 18th century Europe?

2. Which of the following was not a destination for Indian indentured migrants?

- (a) Caribbean islands (b) Fiji (c) South Africa (d) Nigeria

3. Many expeditions set off in search of El Dorado, the fabled city of .

4. Which country passed the ‘Corn Laws’ to restrict the import of corn?

- a) France
 - b) Great Britain
 - c) Spain
 - d) USA

5. Demand for _____ led to the migration of people to America and Australia.

6. One of the oldest livestock markets in _____ was at Smithfield.

7. The loss of _____ destroyed African livelihoods.

8. The main destinations of Indian indentured migrants were the _____.

9. Most Indian indentured workers came from the present-day regions of _____

10. Migrants from _____ went to Ceylon and Malaya.

11. What is the rearing of silk worms for the production of silk fiber known as?

12. Which European country first conquered America?

13. What were Canal Colonies?

14 What was Rinderpest?

15 Which one of the following was the world's first mass produced car?

16. Why did household incomes decline after the First World War? Give two reasons

17. When was the Bretton Woods Conference convened?

18. Define trade surplus.

10. How the First World War was so horrible a war-like none other before

20. H. $\beta_1 f_1 \beta_1^{-1} \beta_1^{-1} \beta_1^{-1} \beta_1^{-1} \beta_1^{-1}$ Britton, f. 6, p. 10; $\beta_1 f_1$, G. I., p. 2.

$$S^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{Q} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}/(2M+1)$$

1. Where was El Dorado? For what was it famous?
 2. Why people migrated from Europe in new colonies?
 3. What was indentured labour system in colonial period?
 4. What were the weapons used by Spanish conquerors in America?

5. Why the famous ‘Corn law’ was scrapped?
6. Why the famous ‘silk route’ was made?
7. Why the great depression occurred between 1929-36?
8. How the British financed their trade deficit in tea with China?
9. How the European colonies settled their territorial disputes in Africa?
10. How the Rinderpest helped the European colonizers in Africa?
11. How the technology helped in the inflow of food items in Europe?
12. Why the ‘canal colonies’ were made?

Short Questions (3Mark)

1. Why were the Corn Laws scrapped? Explain any three reasons
2. Why was there a need for clearing lands in Britain during the nineteenth century? Explain any three reasons.
3. How did the change in international financial system affect the people in developing countries?
4. Why is it said that there was no other war earlier like First World War? State in three points.
5. Why did Europeans flee to America in the 19th Century? Give three reasons.
6. “The relocation of industry to low-wage countries stimulated world trade and capital flows.” Justify the statement.
7. Why did household incomes decline after the First World War? Give two reasons.
8. How did Rinderpest become instrumental in subjugating the Africans?
9. How did technology help to solve hardship of food availability throughout the world in the late-nineteenth century? Explain with example.
10. Explain the impact of First World War on the British economy.
11. Describe the Canal Colonies. Where and why were they introduced? Describe the effects of abolishing the ‘Corn Laws’.
12. Describe in brief the destruction caused during the Second World War.
13. What was the impact of technology on food availability?
14. When was the Bretton Woods Conference convened? State the main aim of the conference.

Long Questions (5 Marks)

1. Explain, giving examples, the role played by technological inventions in transforming 19th century world.
2. How did the withdrawals of US loans during the phase of the Great Depression affect the rest of the world? Explain in three points.
3. The Spanish conquest and colonization of America was decisively underway by the mid-sixteenth century.’ Explain with examples.
4. Describe the circumstances responsible for the formation of G-77.

5. "Trade and cultural exchange always went hand in hand." Explain the statement in the light of silk route.
6. Explain the three types of movements or flows within international economic exchange. Mention any one example of any one type of flow from India and one from England.
7. How did the Great Depression of 1929 affect the farmers and the middle classes in India in different ways?
8. How did the global transfer of disease in pre-modem world helped in colonization of the Americas.
9. Explain two major changes that affected the international financial system after 1970
- 10 How was the food problem solved in Britain after the scrapping of the 'Corn Laws'? Explain

Source /case-based Question

Q. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

The silk routes are a good example of vibrant pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world. The name 'silk routes' points to the importance of West-bound Chinese silk cargoes along this route. Historians have identified several silk routes, over land and by sea, knitting together vast regions of Asia, and linking Asia with Europe and Northern Africa. They are known to have existed since before the Christian era and thrived almost till the fifteenth century. But Chinese pottery also travelled the same route, as did textiles and spices from India and Southeast Asia. In return, precious metals – gold and silver – flowed from Europe to Asia. Trade and cultural exchange always went hand in hand. Early Christian missionaries almost certainly travelled this route to Asia, as did early Muslim preachers a few centuries later. Much before all this, Buddhism emerged from eastern India and spread in several directions through intersecting points on the silk routes.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

(i) Find out the incorrect statement from the following about the 'silk route':

- (a) It was a prominent trade route in ancient times.
- (b) Silk was the main trading item, that's why it was called 'silk route'.
- (c) India used this route mainly to export silk to European countries.
- (d) There were two silk routes, i.e. inland route and maritime.

(ii) Find out the incorrect statement from the following:

- (a) A route from India met in Central Asia with the main silk route.
- (b) Mainly, cotton and spices were supplied from India through this route.
- (c) Silk route was not profitable for India but to China.
- (d) Silk was costly and used by elite class in Europe.

(iii) Silk route was never used:

- (a) To spread Islam from West Asia to East Asia.
- (b) To spread Christianity from Europe to Asia.
- (c) To spread Buddhism from East Asia to India.

(d) To explore the knowledge by Chinese travelers.

(iv) Which of the following religion was first to use ‘silk route’ for expansion:

(a) Christianity (b) Buddhism (c) Islam (d) Jainism

Answer Key:

VSA/MCQ

1-B 2-D 3-D 4-B 5-C 6-A 7-A 8-D 9-D 10-C

11-Sericulture

12-Spanish

13-Areas irrigated by new canals settled by peasants from other parts of Punjab.

14-Rinderpest was a cattle plague spread in Africa in 1890s killed 90% cattles.

15- Ford car

16. Death and destruction in World war I, Loss of work force

17. 1944

18. When the value of export is more than import, it is called trade surplus.

19. Involved many countries of the world and created mass destruction of life and property.

20. Import of grains increased from colonies and price reduced.

Short Questions (2Mark)

1. El Dorado was situated in Columbia in South America. It was a famous gold mine for which Spanish launched their victory operations.

2. The population of Europe increased many times and the people migrated from Europe for the search of employment (capital) and food.

3. Indentured labour system was introduced by British to meet the requirement of labourers in colonies for the production of food crops, agricultural raw products, and mining products for British industries. Such contracted poor labourers were taken from densely populated areas like Bihar, Eastern UP, MP and some districts of Tamil Nadu. They were sent to Fiji, Mauritius, Guyana, and Trinidad & Tobago and in other parts of British colonies. They were contracted for 5 years and were treated inhumanly. Many such labourers did not return to their homes and established new mixed culture. Such system ended in 1920s after the demand for its abolition by freedom fighters.

4. Apart from fire arms Spanish conquerors used biological weapons to conquer America. Native population was unaware with fire arms and biological weapons. Spanish soldiers had already vaccinated themselves against small pox virus and they left that virus in America to kill and discourage unvaccinated Native Americans.

5. The famous ‘corn law’ was scrapped by the British government due to pressure from landless labourers and industrial workers in the cities as the price of grains had increased due to ban on import of food grains.

6. The famous ‘Silk route’ was connecting Beijing with Asia and Europe through land and maritime route. Through land Silk route Beijing was connected with eastern Mediterranean via central Asia. Maritime Silk route was connecting Beijing with Africa and Middle East countries via Malacca and Maldives. Trade and culture flourished much by this famous route.

7. After World War I there was great loss of life and properties. There was shortage of working age people. Many industrial countries like Britain had taken loan from US banks. In 1929 a panic was created in America and all lenders started recovery of their loans given in distant world. Many US banks became bankrupt due to nonpayment of loans by borrowers. That was the time of economic recession and there was deficiency of capital in the world

market. Production of grains increased but its demand decreased and price of items also decreased. This led to decrease in the world trade too.

8. British were accustomed to Chinese tea in Britain. They started production of Opium in India to finance the trade deficit in tea with China. In Malwa, Ganga-Yamuna valley they started production of opium and were sold in Nantes and other port cities of China.

9. All European colonies started fighting among themselves for conquering Africa. Many wars were fought and they made loss to their enemies by sinking their ships in sea. Lastly all these countries had a meeting in Berlin (Germany) in 1885 to resolve the issue related to carving of Africa.

10. The cattle plague Rinderpest spread in Africa and made great loss to livestock in Africa. Up to 1890s, 90% of the cattle lost which was a source of livelihood for native Africans. They lost their source of food and were compelled to work for European colonizers.

11. Invention of refrigerated ships helped in carrying more meat into the ships. Now cattle were cut and meat was packed at starting locations for long journey. Earlier cattle were being carried live into the ships and many died before reaching at destination due to deficiency of fodder and less space in the ship. New invention increased the supply of meat in Europe. Even poor people started eating meat due to its sufficient availability.

12. Canal colonies were made to increase the production of food crops too meet the demand in Europe. British selected different areas in India for the plantation and agriculture. Canal colony was established in Punjab for the production of wheat. The area was connected with canals for irrigation to increase the production.

Short Questions (3 Marks)

- 1 (a) High population increase
(b) Costly price of food items
(c) Demand from labourers and industrial workers increased to scrap corn law.
2. (a) To meet the demands for agriculture (b) Railways (c) ports
3. Britton Wood institutions like IMF and IBRD looked after the welfare of only industrial countries. The condition of newly independent countries remained same. Export of raw materials for supply to industries at very low rate did not improve their situation.
4. Involved many countries of the world
Created mass destruction of life and property.
Downfall of economy
Increased indebtedness
5. High population increase
Costly price of food items
Demand for labour.
Unemployment among agricultural labourers
6. MNCs were set up in the areas of cheap labour
No import duty in that country
Employment increases
Conversant with new technology.
7. Death and destruction in World War I,
Loss of work force due to death of many people/ soldiers
Women took over the earning jobs
8. Rinderpest was a cattle plague spread in Africa in 1890s killed 90% cattles.
Livelihoods of the people lost and were compelled to engage in the work.
9. Refrigerated ships enabled the transport of perishable foods over long distances.
10. Great loss to British economy and capital

Loss of life and property

Britain had to take debt from USA

11. Canal colonies were made in the agricultural land where canal irrigation was provided. In Punjab canal colony was made to increase the crops productions and to meet the demand of Britain. As a result production of grains increased, cheap food items, meeting the demand of Britain.

12. Death and destruction in World War II.

Economic crisis

Britain took debt from US banks

Many colonial states became independent

Formation of IMF, IBRD for the profit of industrial countries.

13. Refrigerated ships enabled the transport of perishable foods over long distances.

Live stocks were culled and packed before loading in refrigerated ships.

No loss of live stocks and money.

Supply of meat to Europe increased.

14. The Bretton Woods Conference was convened in 1944.

Formation of IMF, IBRD for the profit of industrial countries.

Fixed exchange rate was introduced.

Long Questions

1. Refrigerated ships enabled the transport of perishable foods over long distances.

Live stocks were culled and packed before loading in refrigerated ships.

No loss of live stocks and money.

Supply of meat to Europe increased.

Use of Telegraph, railways etc.

2. After World war-I production increased. In 1928 a panic was created in USA and all money lenders including US banks started recovery of their loans given to different countries of the world. That was the time of economic recession. In the period of 1929-36 we see that many US banks became bankrupt as many lenders did not pay their loans. Great depression (1929-36) affected farmers much because the price of agricultural product reduced in spite of more production. Urban population profited by getting their ration at low cost.

3. Spanish adventurers were the first to conquer America. From Mexico to Peru, Bolivia, Chile. Argentina except Brazil was conquered by Spanish conquerors like Hernandes Cortes and Pizarro. These conquerors had taken vaccination of Anthrax but local inhabitants were unaware about the disease. Maximum local people lost their life due to impact of Anthrax brought by Spanish with them. These victors exploited the local resources like Gold of El-Dorado and silver.

4. Developing nations integrated themselves into a group called G-77 and demanded a New International Economic Order (NIEO). They were victim of Bretton Woods' twins. Their resources and raw materials were valued less and there were restrictions on their goods in industrial countries. Their economic progress was very slow. Such newly independent countries formed G-77 like groups for their loans and economic activities.

5. The silk routes are a good example of vibrant pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world. The name 'silk routes' points to the importance of West-bound Chinese silk cargoes along this route. Historians have identified several silk routes, over

Land and by sea, knitting together vast regions of Asia, and linking Asia with Europe and northern Africa. They are known to have existed since before the Christian Era and thrived almost till the fifteenth century. But Chinese pottery also travelled the same route, as did textiles and spices from India and Southeast Asia. In return, precious metals – gold and silver – flowed from Europe to Asia. Trade and cultural exchange always went hand in hand. Early Christian missionaries almost certainly travelled this route to Asia, as did early Muslim preachers a few

centuries later. Much before all this, Buddhism emerged from eastern India and spread in several directions through intersecting points on the silk routes.

6. In 19th century, economists identify three types of movement or ‘flows’ within international economic exchanges. The first is the flow of trade referred largely to trade in goods (e.g., cloth or wheat). The second is the flow of labour – the migration of people in search of employment. The third is the movement of capital for short-term or long-term investments over long distances. As food prices fell, consumption in Britain rose. From the mid nineteenth century, faster industrial growth in Britain also led to higher incomes, and therefore more food imports. Around the world – in Eastern Europe, Russia, America and Australia – lands were cleared and food production expanded to meet the British demand. It was not enough merely to clear lands for agriculture. Railways were needed to link the agricultural regions to the ports. New harbours had to be built and old ones expanded to ship the new cargoes. People had to settle on the lands to bring them under cultivation. This meant building homes and settlements. All these activities in turn required capital and labour. Capital flowed from financial centers such as London. The demand for labour in places where labour was in short supply – as in America and Australia – led to more migration.

7. In 1928 a panic was created in USA and all money lenders including US banks started recovery of their loans given to different countries of the world. That was the time of economic recession. In the period of 1929-36 we see that many US banks became bankrupt as many lenders did not pay their loans. Great depression (1929-36) affected farmers in India much because the price of agricultural product reduced in spite of more production. Urban population profited by getting their ration at low cost in the cities.

8. Spanish adventurers were the first to conquer America. From Mexico to Peru, Bolivia, Chile, Argentina except Brazil was conquered by Spanish conquerors like Hernandez Cortes and Piegaro. These conquerors had taken vaccination of Anthrax but local inhabitants were unaware about the disease Maximum local people lost their life due to impact of Anthrax brought by Spanish with them. These victors exploited the local resources like Gold of El-Dorado and silver and established colonies.

9. From the mid 1970s the international financial system changed. Earlier, developing countries could turn to international institutions for loans and development assistance. But now they were forced to borrow from western commercial banks and private lending institutions. This led to periodic debt crisis in the developing world and lower incomes and increased poverty, especially in Africa and Latin America. Industrial world was also hit by unemployment that began rising from the mid-1970s and remained high until the early 1990s. MNCs also began to shift production operations into low- wage Asian countries.

10. Under pressure from landed groups, the government restricted the import of corn. The laws allowing the government to do this were commonly known as the ‘Corn Laws’. Unhappy with high food prices, industrialists and urban dwellers forced the abolition of the Corn Laws. After the Corn Laws were scrapped, food could be imported into Britain more cheaply than it could be produced within the country. British agriculture was unable to compete with imports. Vast areas of land were now left uncultivated, and thousands of men and women were thrown out of work. They flocked to the cities or migrated overseas.

Source/Case based Questions

Ans. (i) (c) India used this route mainly to export silk to European countries.

(ii) (c) Silk route was not profitable for India but to China.

(iii) (c) To spread Buddhism from East Asia to India. (

iv) (b) Buddhism

4. The Age of Industrialization (Summary)

Before the Industrial Revolution

Proto-industrialization is referred to the phase which existed even before factories began in England and Europe. There was large-scale industrial production for an international market not based on factories. In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, merchants from Europe moved to the countryside, supplying money to peasants and artisans, requesting them to produce for an international market. Merchants were restricted to expand their production within towns because rulers granted different guilds the monopoly right to produce and trade in specific products. In the countryside, poor peasants and artisans eagerly agreed so that they could remain in the countryside and continue to cultivate their small plots. The Proto-industrial system was thus part of a network of commercial exchanges controlled by merchants.

The Coming Up of the Factory

In the 1730s the earliest factories in England were set up, but only in the late eighteenth century, the number of factories multiplied. Cotton was the first symbol of the new era and its production boomed in the late nineteenth century. Richard Arkwright created the cotton mill where costly machines were set up and all the processes were brought together under one roof and management.

The Pace of Industrial Change

First: In Britain, the most dynamic industries were cotton and metals. Cotton was the leading sector in the first phase of industrialization up to the 1840s, followed by iron and steel industry. Second: The new industries found it difficult to displace traditional industries. Third: The pace of change in the ‘traditional’ industries was not set by steam-powered cotton or metal industries, but they did not remain entirely stagnant either. Fourth: technological changes occurred slowly.

James Watt improved the steam engine produced by Newcomer and patented the new engine in 1781. His industrialist friend Mathew Boulton manufactured the new model. Steam engines were not used in any of the other industries until much later in the century.

Hand Labour and Steam Power

There was no shortage of human Labour in Victorian Britain. Industrialists had no problem of labour shortage or high wage costs. Instead of machines industrialists required large capital investment. The demand for labour was seasonal in many industries. In all such industries where production fluctuated with the season, industrialists usually preferred hand Labour, employing workers for the season.

Life of the Workers

The workers’ lives were affected by the abundance of labour in the market. To get a job, workers should have existing networks of friendship and kin relations in a factory. Till the mid-nineteenth century, it was difficult for workers to find jobs. In the early nineteenth century, wages were increased. The fear of unemployment made workers hostile to the introduction of new technology. Spinning Jenny was introduced in the woollen industry. After the 1840s, building activity intensified in the cities, opening up greater opportunities for employment. Roads were widened, new railway stations came up, railway lines were extended, tunnels dug, drainage and sewers laid, rivers embanked.

Industrialization in the Colonies

The Age of Indian Textiles

In India, silk and cotton goods dominated the international market in textiles, before the age of machine industries. A variety of Indian merchants and bankers were involved in this network of export trade – financing production, carrying goods and supplying exporters. By the 1750s this network, controlled by Indian merchants, was breaking down. The European companies came into power – first securing a variety of concessions from local courts, then

the monopoly rights to trade. The shift from the old ports to the new ones was an indicator of the growth of colonial power. European companies-controlled trade through the new ports and were carried in European ships. Many old trading houses collapsed, and those who wanted to survive had to operate within a network shaped by European trading companies

What Happened to Weavers?

After the 1760s, the consolidation of the East India Company did not initially lead to a decline in textile exports from India. Before establishing political power in Bengal and Carnatic in the 1760s and 1770s, the East India Company had found it difficult to ensure a regular supply of goods for export. After the East India Company established political power, it developed a system of management and control that would eliminate competition, control costs, and ensure regular supplies of cotton and silk goods. It was established by following a series of steps.

1. By eliminating existing traders and brokers connected with the cloth trade, and establishing more direct control over the weaver.
2. By preventing Company weavers from dealing with other buyers.

The weavers were granted a loan to buy the raw materials once an order was placed. Weavers who took loans needed to hand over the cloth they produced to the gomastha. Weaving required the labour of the entire family, with children and women all engaged in different stages of the process. Earlier, supply merchants had a very close relationship with weavers, but new gomasthas were outsiders with no social link with the village.

In many places in Carnatic and Bengal, weavers set up looms in other villages where they had some family relation. In other places, weavers along with the village traders revolted, opposing the Company and its officials. Over time many weavers began refusing loans, closing down their workshops and taking to agricultural labour. By the turn of the nineteenth century, cotton weavers faced a new set of problems.

Manchester Comes to India

In 1772, Henry Patullo said that the demand for Indian textiles could never reduce since no other nation produced goods of the same quality. But, unfortunately, by the beginning of the nineteenth century, India witnessed a decline in textile exports. In the early nineteenth century, exports of British cotton goods increased dramatically. At the end of the eighteenth century, import of cotton piece-goods was restricted into India. In India cotton weavers faced two problems:

1. Their export market collapsed
2. Local market shrank and glutted with Manchester imports.

By the 1860s, weavers faced a new problem. They could not get sufficient supply of raw cotton of good quality. Even the raw cotton exports from India increased due to which the price increased. By the end of the nineteenth century, other craftspeople faced yet another problem. Factories in India began production, flooding the market with machine-goods.

Factories Come Up

In 1854, the first cotton mill in Bombay set up and went into production two years later. By 1862 four more mills were set up and around the same time jute mills came up in Bengal. The first jute mill was set up in 1855 and another one after seven years in 1862. In the 1860s, in north India, the Elgin Mill was started in Kanpur, and a year later the first cotton mill of Ahmedabad was set up. By 1874, the first spinning and weaving mill of Madras began production.

The Early Entrepreneurs

The history of trade started from the late eighteenth century when British in India began exporting opium to China and took tea from China to England. Some of the businessmen who were involved in these trades had visions of

developing industrial enterprises in India. In Bengal, Dwarkanath Tagore made his fortune in the China trade. In Bombay, Parsis like Dinshaw Petit and Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata built huge industrial empires in India. Seth Hukumchand, a Marwari businessman set up the first Indian jute mill in Calcutta in 1917. The opportunities of investments in industries opened up and many of them set up factories.

But due to colonial power, Indians were barred from trading with Europe in manufactured goods and had to export mostly raw materials and food grains – raw cotton, opium, wheat and indigo – required by the British. Three of the biggest European Managing Agencies are Bird Heiglers & Co., Andrew Yule, and Jar dine Skinner & Co. who mobilised capital, set up joint-stock companies and managed them

Where Did the Workers Come From?

As the factories started expanding, the demand for workers increased. Most of the workers came from the neighboring districts in search of work. Over 50 per cent workers in the Bombay cotton industries in 1911 came from the neighboring district of Ratnagiri, while the mills of Kanpur got most of their textile hands from the villages within the district of Kanpur. As news of employment spread, workers travelled great distances in the hope of work in the mills.

Even after the demand for workers increased, getting jobs was difficult. The numbers seeking work were always more than the jobs available. Most of the industrialists employed a jobber, which he brought from his village, to recruit new workers. Industrialists helped the jobber to settle down and provided them with money in need.

The Peculiarities of Industrial Growth

European Managing Agencies were interested in certain kinds of products such as tea and coffee. They established tea and coffee plantations and invested in mining, indigo and jute. These products are used only for export purposes. In the late nineteenth century, Indian businessmen began setting up industries. The yarn produced in Indian spinning mills was used by handloom weavers in India or exported to China. The pattern of industrialization was affected by a series of changes. When the swadeshi movement gained support, nationalists boycotted foreign cloth. From 1906, Indian yarn exports to China declined since produce from Chinese and Japanese mills flooded the Chinese market. Till the end of the First World War, industrial growth was slow. The war completely changed the whole scenario and Indian mills took advantage of the situation. They had a vast market to supply war needs: jute bags, cloth for army uniforms, tents and leather boots, horse and mule saddles and a host of other items. The industrial production boomed over the years and after the war, Manchester could never recapture its old position in the Indian market.

Small-scale Industries Predominate

Small-scale industries continued to predominate the rest of the country. Only a small proportion of the total industrial labour force worked in registered factories. The rest worked in small workshops and household units. Handicrafts production expanded in the twentieth century. In the twentieth century, handloom cloth production expanded. It happened because of technological changes as they started adopting new technology which helped them improve production without excessively pushing up costs.

Certain groups of weavers were in a better position than others to survive the competition with mill industries. Some of the weavers produced coarse cloth while others wove finer varieties. Weavers and other craftspeople who continued to expand production through the twentieth century did not necessarily prosper. They worked for long hours including all the women and children. But they were not simply remnants of past times in the age of factories. Their life and labour were integral to the process of industrialization.

Market for Goods

When new products are produced advertisements helped people to make products appear desirable and necessary. They tried to shape the minds of people and create new needs. Today we are surrounded by advertisements which appear in newspapers, magazines, hoardings, street walls, television screens. From the very beginning of the

industrial age, advertisements played a part in expanding the markets for products, and in shaping new consumer culture.

Manchester industrialists put labels on the cloth bundles, to mark the quality. When buyers saw ‘MADE IN MANCHESTER’ written in bold on the label, they were expected to feel confident about buying the cloth. Some of the labels were made with images and were beautifully crafted.

Images of Indian gods and goddesses appeared on these labels. Printing calendars were started by manufacturers to popularize their products. In these calendars, figures of gods were used to sell new products. Later, advertisements became a vehicle of the nationalist message of swadeshi.

(MCQ/Very Short Questions)

1. The person who got people from village, ensured them jobs, helped them settle in cities and provided them money in times of need was known as:

- (a) Stapler
- (b) Fuller
- (c) Gomastha
- (d) Jobber

Ans-(d) Jobber

2. Why did Manchester export to India decline after the First World War?

- (a) People were busy fighting the war.
- (b) Factories closed down due to security problem.
- (c) Factories and mills were busy producing goods to fulfill the need of army.
- (d) Export trade was restricted by the government.

Ans-(c) Factories and mills were busy producing goods to fulfill the need of army

3. Why were workers in England hostile to machines and new technology?

- (a) They did not know how to use these.
- (b) They feared that they would lose their jobs and livelihood.
- (c) The workers were too poor to buy new machines.
- (d) They were scared of machines.

Ans-(b) They feared that they would lose their jobs and livelihood.

4. Why were there frequent clashes between the gomastha and the weavers?

- (a) The weavers hated foreigners.
- (b) The gomastha forced the weavers to sell goods at a dictated price.
- (c) Gomasthas were outsiders without long term social link with the village.
- (d) None of the above.

Ans-(c) Gomasthas were outsiders without long term social link with the village.

5. From which of the following trade did the early entrepreneurs make a fortune?

- (a) Textile trade
- (b) China trade
- (c) Trade in tea
- (d) Industries

Ans-(b) China trade

6. _____ created the cotton mill.

- (a) Orville Wright (b) Richard Arkwright (c) James Watt (d) None of the above

Ans-(b) Richard Arkwright

7. James Watt patented the new engine in _____.

- (a) 1765 (b) 1581 (c) 1681 (d) 1781

Ans-(a) 1765

8. _____ products came to symbolise refinement and class.

- (a) Machine Made (b) Handmade (c) Both (a) and (b) (d) None of the above

Ans-(b) Handmade

9. Hoogly in _____ had trade links with Southeast Asian ports.

- (a) Maharashtra (b) Gujarat (c) Orissa (d) Bengal

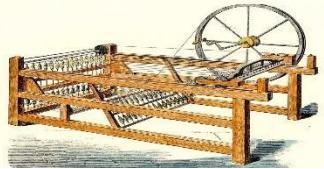
Ans-(d) Bengal

10. _____ on the Gujarat coast connected India to the Gulf and the Red Sea Ports.

- (a) Okha (b) Porbandar (c) Surat (d) Kandla

Ans-(c) Surat

11. What is the name of this machine and who invented it?



(a) Weaving machine by Charles

(b) Flying shuttle by John key

(c) Cotton Gin by Eli Whitney

(d) Spinning Jenny by James Hargreaves

Ans-d) Spinning Jenny by James Hargreaves

12. When did the earliest factories come up in England?

- (a) In 1720s (b) In 1730s (c) In 1740s (d) In 1750s

Ans. (b) In 1730s

13. Assertion: The first symbol of the new era was cotton.

Reason: In Victorian Britain, the industrialists did not want to introduce machines that got rid of human labour and required large capital investment

Ans.- (b) both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

14. Assertion: The cotton weavers of India flourished with the Manchester imports.

Reason: With the American Civil War, the cotton supplies from US to Britain decreased.

Ans-(d) Assertion is false but reason is true.

15. 114. Match the following items given in column A with those in column B.

Column A	Column B
(a) First cotton mill in Bombay	1. India
(b) Masulipatam	2. Connected India to the Gulf and Red Sea Ports;
(c) Gujarat coast	3. Coromandel coast
(d) Finer variety of coarser cotton	4. 1854

Ans- (a) 4, (b) 3, (c) 2, (d) 1

16. Complete the following table with correct information with regard to Spinning Jenny:

Spinning Jenny	Devised by	Devised year	How it work?
	(A)-?	(B)-?	This machine speeded up the spinning process and reduced labour demand.

Ans- (A) James Hargreaves, (B) 1764

17. Why the merchants and traders did turn their attention towards the countryside for production in Seventeenth and eighteenth centuries?

Ans-Production could not be expanded in the town because the urban trade and craft guilds regulated the issues in the towns strictly. Moreover, they did not allow free entry and lenient rules for outsiders

18. Why were wages low in England during eighteenth centuries?

Ans- In England during the Victorian Age, there was no shortage of human labour. Unemployed people, farmers and vagrants often moved through the cities in search of work. So, the industrialists had an ample supply of labour and no problem of high wage cost

19. Give some examples of seasonal industries

Ans:- Gasworks, breweries, book binding factories, dockyard works, repairing tasks in various other factories too

20. Why was hand labour preferred in seasonal factories?

Ans- In industries such as breweries and book binders, production was affected by the seasonal demands and changes. Hence, seasonal labours could be easily employed when the need arose. Moreover, as the supply of labour was high, it was easy to get such labourers and keep cost of production low.

21. Why the aristocrats in Victorian England demanded handmade products?

Ans- Handmade products portrayed class, royalty, high tastes and refinement. They were unique in their own designs and carefully designed and finished, so they attracted the upper elites of the society more.

22. How did urbanization help create opportunities?

Ans-Urban activities like building up of roads, laying down railway lines, construction of new railways stations as railways were expanded too, drainage and sewers laid and river embankments created opportunities where people got employment

23. Why were the women in England against Spinning Jenny?

Ans- Women feared that they might lose their livelihood and these machines would overtake their positions so they started detesting the use of spinning Jenny in the factories

24. By 1750's why the commercial networks of Indian trailers did begin to decline in India?

Ans-The European, trading companies secured huge concessions and trading privileges from various rulers and local courts that boosted their trade. After this, they secured monopoly rights to trade even. This impacted the trading activities of the Indian traders and merchants.

25. Who were Gomasthas?

Ans- Gomasthas described as an Indian agent of the English East India Company who was paid to supervise weavers and craftsmen, collect supplies and deliver finished goods to the company at fixed rates. He always examined the quality of the cloth.

26. How was the relationship between the Gomasthas and the weavers?

Ans- Britain is the first industrial nation in the world

28. Who manufactured the new model of the steam engine?

Ans- Mathew Boulton manufactured the new model of the steam engine.

29. Who was the jobber? What was his job?

Ans- The jobber was a person employed by the Indian industrialist to get new recruits. He was a person with authority and power.

30. Why did Manchester imports into India decline?

Ans- with British mills busy with war production to meet the needs of the army, Manchester imports into India declined.

Ans-The Gomasthas were paid agents of the English company who were outsiders and not from the villages. He was arrogant and often marched into the villages with sepoys to beat up the weavers and craftsmen if they were late in supplying products.

Short Questions (2Marks)

1. Name some processes involved in the production of cloth.

Ans. Carding, twisting, spinning and rolling.

2. Name some other trading companies apart from the English East India Company.

Ans. The Dutch, East India Company, the Portuguese East India Company, and the French East India Company.

3. What did the Indian merchants trade in mostly?

Ans. Raw cotton, wheat, indigo, spices and tea.

4. Name some small scale industries where small innovations helped immensely.

Ans. Food processing units, pottery, glassworks, tanning, furniture making and tools manufacturing.

5. Give some examples of seasonal industries.

Ans. Gas works, breweries, book binding factories, dockyard works, repairing tasks in various other factories too.

6. Why the Indian weavers were deprived of good cotton?

Ans. As American Civil War broke out, the cotton supplies to England from America declined. Thus, superior quality of cotton from India was exported to England, leaving the weavers in India helpless.

7. What was the problem faced by Indian weavers in the 1860s?

Ans. The Indian weavers could not get sufficient amount of good quality of cotton.

8. Why did technological changes occur slowly?

Ans. New technology was expensive and their repairing costs were very high. Thus, merchants and industrialists thought before investing in them. Moreover, not all manufacturers could guarantee efficient machines.

9. What were the roles of trade guilds?

Ans. The roles of trade guilds are enumerated as follows:

1. Trained craftsmen, maintain control over production, regulate prices.2

2. . Had the right to restrict entry of outsiders.

10. Name the two industrialists of Bombay who built huge industrial empires during nineteenth century.

Ans. Dinshaw Petit and Jamshetjee Nusserwanjee Tata.

Short Questions (3 Marks)

1. Explain what is meant by proto industrialization.

Ans. The term ‘proto’ refers to the first or nascent form of something. By the term ‘proto-industrialization’, we mean the period in which the European countries produced goods for the foreign markets on a wider scale. This phase started before the development of factories in the European countries. In the proto-industrial period, hand-made products were made for the international market.

3. What were the roles of trade guilds?

Ans. The roles of trade guilds are enumerated as follows:

1. Trained craftsmen, maintain control over production, regulate prices.

2. Enjoyed monopoly rights to produce and trade certain products.

3. Had the right to restrict entry of outsiders.

3. Why merchants from towns in Europe began to move countryside in Seventeenth and eighteenth centuries?

Ans. In the seventeenth and eighteenth century the merchants from the towns in Europe began moving to the countryside because the availability of raw materials was cheap and the labourers were also available for more production.

4. What were the advantages of cotton mill?

Ans. The advantages of cotton mill are enumerated as follows:

1. Production process was carefully supervised.

2. Quality of cloth could be controlled.

3. More amount of production in less time.

4. Labour could be easily managed.

5. What was the impact of colonization of India on the Indian traders?

Ans. As colonial control over Indian trade tightened, the space within which Indian merchants could function became limited. They were barred from trading with Europe in manufactured goods. They had

to export mostly raw materials and food grains, raw cotton, opium, wheat and indigo required by the British. They were also gradually edged out of the shipping business. The points are enumerated as follows:

1. The European companies gradually gained power — first securing a variety of concessions from local courts, then the monopoly rights to trade.
2. It resulted in a decline of the old ports of Surat and Hoogly through which local merchants had operated. Exports from these ports fell dramatically.
3. The credit that had financed the earlier trade began drying up and the local bankers slowly became bankrupt
6. Explain the features of pre-colonial trade scenario in India.

Ans. The features of pre-colonial trade scenario in India are enumerated as follows:

1. Silk and cotton goods from India dominated the international market in textiles.
2. Armenian and Persian merchants took the goods from Punjab to Afghanistan, Eastern Persia and Central Asia. Bales of fine textiles were carried and brought back via the northwest frontier, through mountain passes and across deserts.
3. A vibrant sea trade operated through the main pre-colonial ports. Surat on the Gujarat coast connected India to the Gulf and Red Sea Ports. Masulipatnam on the Coromandel Coast and Hoogly in Bengal had trade links with Southeast Asian ports.
7. Describe any three major problems faced by Indian cotton weavers in the nineteenth century.

Ans. The problems faced by the cotton weavers in India during midnineteenth century are as follows:

1. A huge decline of textile exports from India. The local markets shrank due to deluge of Manchester imports.
2. Produced by machines at lower costs, the imported cotton goods were so cheap that the hand-spun cotton materials made by Indian weavers could not easily compete with them.
3. The Indian weavers failed to achieve sufficient supply of raw cotton of good quality.
8. Why was a jobber employed? How did he misuse his power?

Ans. Industrialists usually employed a jobber to get new recruits. Very often, the jobber was an old and trusted worker. He got people from his village, ensured them jobs, helped them settle in the city and provided them money in times of crisis. Therefore, the jobber became a person with some authority and power. He began demanding money and gifts for such favour and controlling the lives of workers.

9. Write a short note on the growth of factories in colonial India.
- Ans. The first cotton mill in Bombay came up in 1854 and it went into production two years later. By 1862 four mills were at work. Around the same time jute mills came up in Bengal, the first being set up in 1855 and another one seven years later in 1862. In North India, the Elgin Mill was started in Kanpur. In the 1860s and a year later, the first cotton mill of Ahmedabad was set up. By 1874, the first spinning and weaving mill of Madras began production.
10. Why did industrial production in India boom during the World War-I phase?

Ans. Industrial production in India boom during First World War, because:

1. British mill were busy producing was material for the British army. So the Manchester imports into India declined.
2. Indian factories supply was needs such as jute bag cloths for army uniforms, etc
3. New factories were set-up and old factories run multiple shift to meet the increasing demand.
11. What were guilds? How did they make it difficult for new merchants to set business in towns of England?

Ans-Guilds were the associations of artisans or merchants who controlled the practise of their craft and trade in a particular city. They were very powerful as they were granted monopoly rights by the rulers to produce and trade in specific product. They themselves trained the people in their trade or craft. They regulated competition and restricted the entry of new people in the trade. This made it difficult for the new merchants to set up their business in towns of England.

Long Questions(5Marks)

.1. Explain any five causes of Industrial Revolution in England.

Ans. The five causes of Industrial Revolution in England are enumerated as follows:

1. Growing international markets in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries led to the demand of more products not just inside the country but in other colonies and countries as well.
2. New inventions: Series of new inventions by James Watt, James Hargreaves and Richard Arkwright contributed significantly in the growth of factories and production process hastened as well as smoothened.
3. Availability of raw material: Availability of raw material from the countryside and new freshly acquired colonies like America, India etc. made production process easier.
4. Availability of capital for investment was easily available as they had earned huge profits from trade and overseas investments.
5. Increase in demand for a diverse range of products both inside the country as well as in other countries was a significant factor. This made people invest in business and factories produced more.

2. Why did the villagers started producing commodities for the merchants in the countryside?

Ans. 1. Merchant wanted to expand their production so as to meet growing needs of the population and therefore decided to move the countryside.

2. In towns, trade guilds exercised excessive control and regulated price of the commodities. They also restricted the entry of new people into trade practises.
3. Trade guilds exercised monopoly right over production and to trade in specific products. Thus, it became difficult for new merchant to set up business in town.
4. These conditions lead merchants to look for countryside. They provide money to the peasants and artisans to produce for the international market.

3. How did the abundance of labour in the market affect the lives of the workers in Britain during nineteenth century? OR

“The process of industrialization brought with it miseries for the newly emerged class of industrial workers.” Explain.

Ans. There was abundance of labour in the market of Britain during nineteenth century compared to the work available. Which led to the problem of unemployment?

1. Seasonality of work: Most of the workers were employed in a fixed or particular season only. This resulted in unemployment for most of the time of the year
2. Low real wages: High supply of labour resulted in low wages and workers were easily replaced if any wage issue was created.
3. Poverty: As wages were low, most of the workers lived in harsh conditions of extreme poverty. They did not have enough money to feed their entire families at times.
4. Housing problem: As the number of workers kept on increasing in the cities, mostly without work, had a problem in finding healthy and hygienic conditions. Most of them lived on roads, under the bridges or in the unclean by lanes.
5. Why did some industrialists in nineteenth century Europe prefer hand labour over machines?

Ans. In the nineteenth-century Europe, some British industrialists prioritized hand labour instead of machine labour. The points are enumerated as follows:

1. The prices of new technologies and machines were exorbitantly high. Therefore, the industrialists and the producers did not use them.
 2. Machines often broke down and their repair was very expensive.
 3. Poor peasants and artisans flocked to the cities in quest for employment. Therefore, the supply of workers outweighed the demand. The workers were available at a cheap rate.
 4. Market demand of variety of designs and colour could not be satisfied by the machine-made products. The hand-made labour was effective in this regard.
6. How did the East India Company procure regular supplies of cotton and silk textiles from Indian weavers?

Ans. 1. After establishing political power in India, the East India Company tried to acquire right to cotton textile and silk goods trade. It also started to procure regular supplies of these goods from Indian weavers.

2. This could be achieved by them after taking a series of steps. First, they established their management and a direct control over the weavers by hiring their paid servants called Gomasthas.

3. Gomasthas supervised weavers, examined the quality of goods and ensured regular supplies

. 4. Second, the Company prevented weavers from dealing with their buyers by giving them ‘advances’ against purchase orders. Thus, the weavers after taking loans could not sell their cloth to any other trader and had to work under the Company’s Gomasthas.

7. How were the Indian weavers affected because of industrialization in India?

Ans. The points regarding this are stated as follows:

1. The weavers lose their chance of bargaining.

2. Leasing of land became very common. Weavers remained busy with weaving and so had to lease out their lands to others for farming.

3. Clashes with Gomasthas became a common instance. The Gomasthas often beat up the weavers; spoke arrogantly if there was

8. Why did the ports of India started declining after the arrival of East India Company?

Ans. A variety of Indian merchants and bankers were involved in the network of export trade financing production, carrying goods and supplying exporters.

1. Supply merchants linked the port towns to the inland regions. They gave advances to weavers, procured the woven cloth from weaving villages, and carried the supply to the ports. At the port, the big shippers and export merchants had brokers who negotiated the price and bought goods from the supply merchants operating inland.

2. By the 1750s this network, controlled by Indian merchants, was breaking down. The European companies gradually gained power first securing a variety of concessions from local courts, then the monopoly right to trade.

3. This resulted in a decline of the old ports of Surat and Hoogly through which local merchants had operated. Exports from these ports fell dramatically.

4. The credit that had financed the earlier trade begun drying up, and the bankers became bankrupt. Thus trading activities declined at Surat, Hoogly..

Sources Based/case study

1. Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

The earliest factories in England came up by the 1730s. But it was only in the late eighteenth century that the number of factories multiplied. The first symbol of the new era was cotton. Its production boomed in the late nineteenth century. In 1760 Britain was importing 2.5 million pounds of raw cotton to feed its cotton industry. By 1787 this import soared to 22 million pounds. This increase was linked to a number of changes within the process of production. Let us look briefly at some of these. A series of inventions in the eighteenth century increased the efficacy of each step of the production process (carding, twisting and spinning, and rolling). They enhanced the output per worker, enabling each worker to produce more, and they made the production of stronger threads and yarn possible. Then Richard Arkwright created the cotton mill. Till this time, as you have seen, cloth production was spread all over the countryside and carried out within village households. But now, the costly new machines could be purchased, set up and maintained in the mill. Within the mill all the processes were brought together under one roof and management. This allowed a more careful supervision over the production process, a watch over quality, and the regulation of labour, all of which had been difficult to do when production was in the countryside. In the early nineteenth century, factories increasingly became an intimate part of the English landscape. So visible were the imposing new mills, so magical seemed to be the power of new technology, that contemporaries were dazzled. They concentrated their attention on the mills, almost forgetting the by lanes and the workshops where production still continued. (i) When was the earliest factory in England came up?

- (i) What was the symbol of new era?
- (ii) Who created the first cotton mill in England?
- (iii) What will happen after the advent of industrialisation?
- (iv). When was a series of invention took place?

Ans-(i) (a) The earliest factories in England came up by the 1730s.

(b) The first symbol of new era was cotton.

(ii) Richard Arkwright was created the first cotton mill in England.

(iii) (a) Industrialization enhanced the output per worker, enabling each worker to produce more.

(b) They made the production of stronger threads and yarn possible.

(iv) In the early nineteenth century

2 . Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

As loans flowed in and the demand for fine textiles expanded, weavers eagerly took the advances, hoping to earn more. Many weavers had small plots of land which they had earlier cultivated along with weaving, and the produce from this took care of their family needs. Now they had to lease out the land and devote all their time to weaving. Weaving, in fact, required the labour of the entire family, with children and women all engaged in different stages of the process. Soon, however, in many weaving villages there were reports of clashes between weavers and gomasthas. Earlier supply merchants had very often lived within the weaving villages, and had a close relationship with the weavers, looking after their needs and helping them in times of crisis. The new gomasthas were outsiders, with no long-term social link with the village. They acted arrogantly, marched into villages with sepoys and peons, and punished weavers for delays in supply— often beating and flogging them. The weavers lost the space to bargain for prices and sell to different buyers: the price they received from the Company was miserably low and the loans they had accepted tied them to the company.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

- (i) Which of the following work was not performed by Gomasthas?
 - (a) To supervise weavers (b) Collect supplies
 - (c) Examine the quality of the clothes. (d) To provide loans to weavers to expand their business.
- (ii) At the starting, which was the main problem faced by Company here in India?
 - (a) Competition with other European countries (b) High cost of raw material.
 - (c) Irregular supplies of cotton and silk. (d) All of the above.
- (iii) Find out the incorrect statement about the Indian weavers:
 - (a) Before colonial government weavers were having enough to sustain their family.
 - (b) Gomasthas made their life easy by providing loans on easy conditions.
 - (c) Once weavers took loans, they were in debt trap.
 - (d) To repay loans they started work involving their family members.
- (iv) Find out the correct statement from the following:

- (a) After arrival of Britishers Bombay and Calcutta lost their glory.
- (b) Gomasthas played important role to establish trade monopoly of East India Company.
- (c) To live a luxurious life weaver started work hard with family members.
- (d) Gomasthas were paid servants to supervise weavers, collect supplies and examine the quality of cloth.

Ans. (i) (d) To provide loans to weavers to expand their business.

(ii) (d) All of the above.

(iii) (b) Gomasthas made their life easy by providing loans on easy conditions.

(iv) (d) Gomasthas were paid servants to supervise weavers, collect supplies and examine the quality of cloth

.

Print Culture and the Modern World (Summary)

The First Printed Books

China, Japan and Korea developed the earliest kind of print technology, which was a system of hand printing. Books in China were printed by rubbing paper from AD 594 and both the sides of the book were folded and stitched. China for a long time was the major producer of printed material. China started conducting civil service examinations for its bureaucrats and its textbooks were printed in vast numbers. Print was no longer confined to scholar-officials. Merchants used print while collecting their trade information. Reading became a part of leisure activity and rich women started publishing their own poetry and plays. This new reading culture attracted new technology. In the late 19th century, Western printing techniques and mechanical presses were imported.

Print in Japan

Hand-printing technology was introduced by Buddhist missionaries from China into Japan around AD 768-770. The Buddhist Diamond Sutra is the oldest Japanese book, printed in AD 868, containing six sheets of text and woodcut illustrations. Printing of visual material led to interesting publishing practices. In the late 19th century, illustrative collections of paintings depicted an elegant urban culture and libraries and bookstores were packed with hand-printed material of various types – books on women, musical instruments, etc.

Print Comes to Europe

Marco Polo returned to Europe after exploring China and along with him, he brought the knowledge of woodblock printing and soon the technology spread to other parts of Europe. Gradually, the demands of books started increasing so booksellers began exporting books to many different countries. But the production of handwritten manuscripts could not satisfy the ever-increasing demand for books. Europe widely started using woodblocks to print textiles, playing cards, and religious pictures with simple, brief texts. Johann Gutenberg developed the first-known printing press in the 1430s.

Gutenberg and the Printing Press

Gutenberg was an expert in the art of polishing stones and with this knowledge, he adapted existing technology to design his innovation. The first printed book with the new system was the Bible. With the adaption of new technology the existing art of producing books by hand was not entirely displaced. Books printed for the rich left blank space for decoration on the printed page. In the hundred years between 1450 and 1550, printing presses were set up in most countries of Europe. The shift from hand printing to mechanical printing led to the print revolution.

The Print Revolution and Its Impact

Print revolution is not only a new way of producing books it transformed the lives of people, changing their relationship to information and knowledge, and with institutions and authorities.

A New Reading Public

The cost of books was reduced due to the print revolution. Markets were flooded with books reaching out to an ever-growing readership. It created a new culture of reading. Earlier, elites are only permitted to read books and common people used to hear sacred texts readout. Before the print revolution, books were expensive. But, the transition was not as simple as books could only be read by the literate. Printers started publishing popular ballads and folk tales illustrated with pictures for those who did not read. Oral culture entered print and printed material were orally transmitted.

Religious Debates and the Fear of Print

Print introduced a new world of debate and discussion. Printed books are not welcomed by everyone and many were apprehensive of the effects that the wider circulation of books could have on people's minds. There was a fear of spreading rebellious and irreligious thoughts. In 1517, the religious reformer Martin Luther wrote Ninety Five Theses, criticising many of the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church. His textbook printed copy led to a division within the Church and to the beginning of the Protestant Reformation.

Print and Dissent

In the sixteenth century, Menocchio began to read books available in his locality. He reinterpreted the message of the Bible and formulated a view of God and Creation that enraged the Roman Catholic Church. Menocchio was hauled up twice and ultimately executed. From 1558, The Roman Church began to maintain an Index of Prohibited Books.

The Reading Mania

In most parts of Europe, literacy rates went up, through the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Schools and literacy spread in European countries due to which people wanted production of more books. Other forms of reading mainly based on entertainment began to reach ordinary readers. Books were of various sizes, serving many different purposes and interests. From the early 18th century, periodical press developed which combined information related to current affairs with entertainment. Journals and newspapers carried information related to wars, trade and developments in other places. Issac Newton discoveries were published which influenced scientifically-minded readers.

'Tremble, therefore, tyrants of the world!'

Books were considered as a means of spreading progress and enlightenment by the mid-eighteenth century. According to Louise-Sebastien Mercier, a novelist in eighteenth-century France said that 'The printing press is the most powerful engine of progress and public opinion is the force that will sweep despotism away.' Convined of the power of print in bringing enlightenment and destroying the basis of despotism, Mercier proclaimed: 'Tremble, therefore, tyrants of the world! Tremble before the virtual writer!'

Print Culture and the French Revolution

Historians argued that print culture created the conditions for the French Revolution. Three types of arguments were put forward.

1. Print popularized the ideas of the Enlightenment thinkers. Their writings provided a critical commentary on tradition, superstition and despotism. The writings of Voltaire and Rousseau were read widely; and people saw the world through new eyes, eyes that were questioning, critical and rational.

2. Print created a new culture of dialogue and debate. Within this public culture, new ideas of social revolution came into being.
3. By the 1780s there was an outpouring of literature that mocked the royalty and criticised their morality.

Print helps in spreading ideas. They accepted some ideas and rejected others and interpreted things their way. Print did not directly shape their minds, but it did open up the possibility of thinking differently.

The Nineteenth Century

Large numbers of new readers among children, women and workers were added to the mass literacy in Europe during the 19th century.

Children, Women and Workers

From the late 19th century, primary education became compulsory. In 1857, a children's press was set up in France devoted to literature for children. Traditional folks tales were gathered by Grimm Brothers in Germany. Rural folk tales acquired a new form. Women became important as readers as well as writers. Magazines were published especially dedicated for women, as were manuals teaching proper behavior and housekeeping. In the nineteenth century, lending libraries in England became instruments for educating white-collar workers, artisans and lower-middle-class people.

Further Innovations

Press came to be made out of metal by the late eighteenth century. Printing technology saw a series of further innovations by the 19th century. During that century, power-driven cylindrical press was perfected by Richard M, which was particularly used for printing newspapers. The offset was developed which was capable of printing six colours at a time. By the 20th century, electrically operated presses accelerated printing operations followed by other series of development.

1. Methods of feeding paper improved
2. The quality of plates became better
3. Automatic paper reels and photoelectric controls of the colour register were introduced

India and the World of Print

Manuscripts Before the Age of Print

India is a country rich in old tradition of handwritten manuscripts – in Sanskrit, Arabic, Persian, as well as in various vernacular languages. These handwritten manuscripts were copied on palm leaves or on handmade paper. The production of the manuscript continued well after the introduction of print. It is considered highly expensive and fragile. In Bengal, students were only taught to write due to which many became literate without ever actually reading any kinds of texts.

Print Comes to India

In the mid-sixteenth century, the first printing press came to Goa with Portuguese missionaries. Catholic priests printed the first Tamil book in 1579 at Cochin, and in 1713 the first Malayalam book was printed by them. The English press grew quite late in India even though the English East India Company began to import presses from the late seventeenth century. A weekly magazine named the Bengal Gazette was edited by James Augustus Hickey. Advertisements were published by Hickey and he also published a lot of gossip about the Company's senior officials in India. By the close of the eighteenth century, a number of newspapers and journals appeared in print.

Religious Reform and Public Debates

Religious issues became intense from the early nineteenth century. People started criticizing existing practices and campaigned for reform, while others countered the arguments of reformers. Printed tracts and newspapers spread new ideas and shaped the nature of the debate. New ideas emerged and intense controversies erupted between social and religious reformers and the Hindu orthodoxy over matters like widow immolation, monotheism, Brahmanical priesthood and idolatry. In 1821, Rammohun Roy published the Sambad Kaumudi. In 1822, two Persian newspapers published Jam-i-Jahan Nama and Shamsul Akbar. In the same year, a Gujarati newspaper, the Bombay Samachar, was established. The Deoband Seminary, founded in 1867, published thousands upon thousands of fatwas telling Muslim readers how to conduct themselves in their everyday lives and explaining the meanings of Islamic doctrines.

Print encouraged the reading of religious texts, among Hindus, especially in the vernacular languages. Religious texts reached a very wide circle of people, encouraging discussions, debates and controversies within and among different religions. Newspapers conveyed news from one place to another, creating pan-Indian identities.

New Forms of Publication

New kinds of writing were introduced as more and more people got interested in reading. In Europe, the novel, a literary form, was developed to cater to the needs of people who acquired Indian forms and styles. New literary forms entered the world of reading such as lyrics, short stories, essays about social and political matters. New visual culture took shape by the end of the nineteenth century. Cheap calendars were available in the bazaar which can be bought even by the poor to decorate the walls of their homes or places of work. These prints began shaping popular ideas about modernity and tradition, religion and politics, and society and culture. Caricatures and cartoons were being published in journals and newspapers, commenting on social and political issues by 1870s.

Women and Print

Women's reading increased enormously in middle-class homes. Schools were set up in cities for women. Journals also started carrying writings by women and explained why women should be educated. But, Conservative Hindus believed that a literate girl would be widowed and Muslims feared that educated women would be corrupted by reading Urdu romances. Social reforms and novels created a great interest in women's lives and emotions. In the early twentieth century, journals, written and edited by women, became extremely popular. In Bengal, an entire area in central Calcutta – the Battala – was devoted to the printing of popular books. By the late nineteenth century, a lot of these books were profusely illustrated with woodcuts and coloured lithographs. Pedlars took the Battala publications to homes, enabling women to read them in their leisure time.

Print and the Poor People

Cheap books were bought at markets. Public libraries were set up mostly located in cities and towns. In the late 19th century, caste discrimination started coming up in many printed tracts and essays. Factory workers lacked education to write much about their experience. In 1938, Kashibaba wrote and published ChhoteAur Bade Ka Sawal in 1938 to show the links between caste and class exploitation. In the 1930s, Bangalore cotton millworkers set up libraries to educate themselves.

Print and Censorship

Censorship was not a concern under the East India Company. The Calcutta Supreme Court passed certain regulations to control press freedom and in 1835, Governor-General Bentinck agreed to revise press laws. Thomas Macaulay formulated new rules that restored the earlier freedom. The freedom of press changed after the revolt of 1857. In 1878, the Vernacular Press Act was passed, modeled on the Irish Press Laws, which provided the government with extensive rights to censor reports and editorials in the vernacular press. Government started keeping track of the vernacular newspapers. Nationalists newspapers grew in numbers all over India. In 1907, Punjab revolutionaries were deported, Bal Gangadhar Tilak wrote with great sympathy about them in his Kesari which led to his imprisonment in 1908.

(MCQ/Very short question)

1. Who began to publish the weekly Bengal Gazette?

Ans-(b) Gangadhar Bhattachary

2. Who was James Lockington?

Ans-(a) Publisher

3. Who wrote My Childhood and My University?

- (a) Thomas Wood (b) Maxim Gorky
(c) George Eliot (d) Jane Austen

Ans-(b) Maxim Gorky

4. Which one of the following began to edit the 'Bengal Gazette' a weekly magazine?

- (a) James Augustus Hickey (b) George Eliot (c) Jane Austen (d) William Bolts

Ans-(a) James Augustus Hickey

5. Which scholar expressed a deep anxiety about printing?

- a) Martin Luther (b) Erasmus (c) Johann Gutenberg (d) None of these

Ans-:(b) Erasmus

6. Which of the following countries had the earliest kind of print technology?

- (b) China (b) Korea (c) Japan (d) All of these

Ans- (d)All of these

7. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following best signifies the above image?

- (a) Jikji of Korea (b) A Portrait of Johann Gutenberg, 1584
(c) Gutenberg Printing Press (d) Pages of Gutenberg's Bible
Ans-(a) Jikji of Korea

8. At which of the following places, a children's press was set up in 1857?

- (a) England (b) Spain (c) France (d) China

Ans-(c) France

9. Which book of Jyotiba Phule was based on the caste system?

- (a) Amar Jiban (b) Istri Dharam Vichar (c) Sacchi Kavita Yen (d) Gulamgiri

Ans-(d) Gulamgiri

10. Arrange the following in the correct sequence of old tradition of handwritten manuscripts

- (i) Vernacular languages (ii) Persian (iii) Arabic (iv) Sanskrit

Option:

- (a) iv-i ii-iii-I (b) iv-i-ii-iii (c) iv-ii-i-iii (d) iv-iii-i-ii

Ans-. (a) iv-iii-ii-i

11. Consider the following statements:

I. Novels, a new literary form, developed in Europe.

II. Novels were religious texts used by Pope and priests to spread their faith among the common people.

III. Novels contained life stories, expressing human experiences, relationships, read by all those who could read.

Choose the correct answer:

- (a) I and II (b) I and III (c) I, II and III (d) I and IV

Ans-. (b) I and III

11. Which of the following cities became the hub of the Western style-school culture printing?

- (a) Berlin (b) Shanghai (c) Paris (d) Britain

Ans-(b) Shanghai

12. Assertion: The new reading culture was accompanied by a new technology.

Reason: From hand printing there was a gradual shift to mechanical printing.

Ans-(a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

13. Assertion: The production of handwritten manuscripts could not satisfy the ever-increasing demand for books.

Reason: Chinese paper reached Europe via the silk route.

Ans-(b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion

14. Which of the following books is the oldest Japanese book, printed in 868 AD containing six sheets of text and woodcut illustrations?

- (a) Diamond Sutra (b) Harshcharita (c) Brihatsutra (d) Mrichkatika

Ans-(a) Diamond Sutra

15. What is calligraphy?

- (a) Stylized writing (b) Poetry (c) Textbooks (d) Flower arrangement

Ans-(a) Stylised writing

16. Who introduced the printing press in India?

- (a) French (b) Italian (c) Portuguese (d) None of these

Ans-(c) Portuguese

17. Printing was first developed in:

- (a) Japan (b) Portugal (c) China (d) Germany

Ans-(c) China

18. Which place (city) had the breakthrough of first printing press?

Ans-The breakthrough of first printing press took place in Strasbourg in Germany

19. Mention the technique adopted to educate white-collar workers in Europe during the 19th century.

Ans-It was the technique of lending libraries to educate whitecollarworkersinEurope during the 19th century.

20. Mention any one technique of preserving the manuscript in India.

Ans-These were preserved by pressing between the wooden covers or sewn together

21. Name the Chinese traditional book, which was folded and stitched at the side.

Ans-The traditional ‘Accordion Book’ of China was folded and stitched at the side because both the sides of the thin; porous sheets could not be printed

22.. Mention any one characteristic feature of the off-set press.

Ans-The offset press was able to print upto 6 colours at a time.

23. Why did the Roman Catholic Church impose control over publisher ‘s and book sellers?

Ans-Being troubled by influence of popular readings and questionings, the Roman Catholic Church imposed severe control over publishers and book sellers.

24. . Who wrote Gita Govinda?

Ans. Jayadeva was the author of Gita Govinda.

25. What were chapbooks?

Ans. Chapbooks were little books sold by the peddlers known as Chapmen in England in return for each penny.

26 Mention the technique adopted to educate white collar workersinEurope during the 19th century

Ans-It was the technique of lending libraries to educate whitecollarworkersinEurope during the 19th century

27. Name the first edition of the Indian religious text published in vernacular.

Ans- Ramcharitmanas of Tulsidas was the first edition of the Indian religious text published in vernacular.

28.Assertion: The new reading culture was accompanied by a new technology.

Reason: From hand printing there was a gradual shift to mechanical printing.

Ans. (a) both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

29. Assertion: As literacy and schools spread in African countries, there was a virtual reading mania.

Reason: People wanted books to read and printers produced books in ever-increasing numbers.

Ans. (d) both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

Short Questions (2 Marks)

1. What was Deoband Seminary?

Ans. The Deoband Seminary founded in 1867, published thousands upon thousands of fatwas telling Muslim readers how to conduct themselves in their everyday lives, and explaining the meanings of Islamic doctrines

2. What was woodblock printing?

Ans. It is a variant of printing where paper is rubbed against the inked surface of woodblock.

3. What is galley?

Ans. Galley is the metal frame in which types are laid and text is composed.

4. What was Inquisition?

Ans. The Inquisition was a group of institutions within the government system of the Catholic Church that aimed to combat heresy.

5. What were almanacs?

Ans. The almanacs were the annual publications that reflected on astronomical data, movements of the sun and the moon, timings of full tides and eclipses and the significance of day-to-day life of people.

6. How many Tamil texts were printed by the Dutch Protestant missionaries in 1710?

Ans. The Dutch Protestant missionaries had printed 32 Tamil texts in 1710.

7. Why did Governor General Warren Hastings persecute Hickey?

Ans. Hickey, the editor of Bengal Gazette, revealed many hidden secrets of the Company's senior officials in India. Consequently, he was persecuted by Warren Hastings.

8. Why was 'Gulamgiri' book written by Jyotiba Phule in 1871?

Ans. Jyotiba Phule wrote book 'Gulamgiri' in 1871 to link the conditions of the black slave in America with those of the lower castes people in India

9. Who was Rashsundari Debi?

Ans. Rashsundari Debi was a young married woman hailing from an orthodox background, who got herself educated in the secrecy of her kitchen. She wrote her autobiography, named 'Amar Jiban' in Bengali language

Short Questions

1. Why couldn't the production of hand written manuscripts satisfy the ever-increasing demand for books?
Give any three reasons.

Ans-(i).In India, there is rich and old tradition of handwritten manuscripts in different languages which were copied on palm leaves or on handmade papers.

(ii)These manuscripts were highly expensive and fragile.

(iii).They needed careful handling

2. Explain any three features of handwritten manuscripts before the age of print in India.

Ans- (a) In India, there is rich and old tradition of handwritten manuscripts in different languages which were copied on palm leaves or on handmade paper.

(b)These manuscripts were highly expensive, fragile and needed careful handling.

(c) These were preserved by pressing between the wooden covers or sewn together.

(d)Reading the manuscripts was not easy as they were written in different styles which limits its use.

3. Explain any three factors responsible for the invention of new printing techniques.

(i)The handwritten manuscripts production was not sufficient to meet the demand.

(ii)These manuscripts were highly expensive, fragile and needed careful handling.

(iii)It was expensive and time consuming to copy the hand written manuscripts

4. How' were magazines different from novels? Write any three differences.

Ans (i) The magazines had several stories whereas the novels had just one story.

(ii)The magazines were periodically published where as the novels were one time publication.

(iii)There might be several writers of one magazine but the novel shad only one author

5. In what three ways did the printed books at first closely resemble the written manuscripts?

Ans- (a) Initially the printed books resembled the written manuscripts in appearance.

(b)It resembled in layout as the metal letters imitated the ornamental handwritten styles and the borders were illuminated by hand.

(C)There was blank space for decoration in the books printed for the rich and the design was chosen by the buyer

6. How did the print bring the reading public and hearing public closer?

Ans-Earlier the society was divided into the oral culture and reading culture. The common people had the oral culture while only the rich people had the reading culture. The common people heard the texts collectively which were read out or recited or narrated to them.

The reading culture was only limited to the elites and they only read the books individually and silently. The reason behind this culture may be the books were expensive, produced less in numbers and also the literacy rate was very low in most of the European countries.

To solve the problem of illiteracy as a barrier in the wider reach of the printed books, the popular ballads and folk tales beautifully illustrated with pictures were published which were sung and recited in the village gatherings and the tavernsin towns.

Hence the line separating the oral culture and the reading culture started becoming blurred

7. What was Protest antre formation?

Ans- Martin Luther was a religious reformer. His wrote95 theses in the year 1517 against the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church.

This action of Martin Luther led to the division within the church and marked the beginning of the Protestant reformers.

It was basically a movement for the reformation of the Roman Catholic Church in the 16thcentury.

8. Explain any three reasons which created a large number of new readers in the nineteenth century

Ans-(a)- During this period the literacy increased which increased the number of readers among the children, women and workers.

(b)Primary education was made compulsory and hence the children became the important section of readers. The publishing industries started producing the school textbooks. In theyear 1857, a children's press was set up in France for publishing the literature for children only which published the new works along with the old fairy and folktales.

(C)Technique of lending libraries to educate white collarworkersinEurope duringthe19thcentury.

9. What were the limitations of the written manuscripts in India? Explain

Ans-(i) These manuscripts were highly expensive, fragile and needed careful handling.

(ii)Reading the manuscripts was not easy as they were written in different styles which limit its use.

(iii)It was not used in everyday life by the common people

10. Examine the role of missionaries in the growth of press in India.

Ans-(i) The Portuguese missionaries firstly brought the printing press to Goa in India in the mid-16th century.

(ii)The Jesuit priests learnt Konkani and Kanara languages in India.

(iii)Tamil texts were also printed (32 texts) and translated by the Dutch missionaries by the year 1710

11. How did the knowledge of wood block printing come to Europe? Explain.

Ans- (i) Menocchio was a miller in Italy who interpreted the message of Bible. The Roman Catholic Church was enraged due to his view of godand creation.

(ii)The Roman Catholic Church started identifying such ideas, beliefs and persons who wrote against the church and thus Menocchio was hauled up twice and finally executed.

(iii)Several restrictions were put over the publishers and the booksellers by the church and also the church ordered them to follow the Index of prohibited books from1558.

12. How did print culture affect women in the nineteenth century?

Ans- 1. Women held an important position in the history of India as prominent readers and writers.

2. The Penny magazines were particularly meant for women. These were manuals that educated women on proper decorum and housekeeping facilities.

3. When novels began to be written in the nineteenth century, women were seen as important readers.

13. Explain the effects of print culture in the religious sphere in early modern Europe.

Ans-(i) Martin Luther was a religious reformer. He wrote 95 theses in the year 1517 against the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church

(ii) Menocchio was a miller in Italy who interpreted the message of Bible. The Roman Catholic Church was enraged due to his view of godand creation.

(iii)The Roman Catholic Church started identifying such ideas, beliefs and persons who wrote against the church and thus Menocchio was hauled up twice and finally executed

14. Who invented printing press? How did he develop the printing technology?

Ans-Johann Gutenberg developed the first known printing press in 1430s at Strasbourg, Germany.

Most of his childhood was spent on a large agricultural estate where he saw wine and olive presses. He learnt polishing stones and created lead moulds.

The olive press was the model for the printing press and the moulds were used for casting the metal types for the letters of the alphabet

15. Who was Menocchio?

Ans. Menocchio was an Italian mill worker who was tried by the Inquisition for his heretical views on religion.

Long Questions

1. How did print introduce debate and discussions? Explain any three points.

Ans- (i) The print culture spread the ideas of the great thinkers like Voltaire and Rousseau. They criticized tradition, custom, superstition, despotism and the authority of church. They wanted rule of reason, questioning and rationality

- (ii) Debate and dialogue started due to the coming of the print culture which resulted in the re-evaluation of the values, norms and the institutions. This had brought the idea of social revolution.
- (iii) The moralities of the royal powers were criticized and the social order was questioned. The cartoons and the caricatures revealed the sensual pleasures of the monarchs and the hardship of the common people. Hence, the people stood against the monarchy.
- (iv). during the 19th century, people debated, interpreted and criticized the different religious beliefs like widow immolation, monotheism, Brahmanical priesthood and idolatry. Some people campaigned for the reform whereas others countered the arguments of the reformers.
- (v).The printed materials and the newspapers spread the new ideas and also shaped the nature of debate which gave opportunity to the people to participate in the public debates

2. "Printing press played a major role in shaping the Indian society of the 19th century." Analyse the statement.

Ans -(i) The Portuguese missionaries firstly brought the printing press to Goa in India in the mid-16th century.

(ii) During the 19th century, people debated, interpreted and criticized the different religious beliefs like widow immolation, monotheism, Brahmanical priesthood and idolatry. Some people campaigned for the reform whereas others countered the arguments of the reformers.

(iii) The printed materials and the newspapers spread the new ideas and also shaped the nature of debate which gave opportunity to the people to participate in the public debates.

(iv) Women's reading increased among the middle class because their lives and feelings began to be written and also the liberal husbands and fathers focused on their education.

(v) For the easy and affordable access of the printed books to even the poor people very cheap, small books were published and also the public libraries were set up

3. What was the attitude of liberal and conservative Indians towards women's

reading? How did women like Kailash bhashini Debi respond to this in their writings?

Ans-Women's reading increased among the middle class because their lives and feelings began to be written and also the liberal husbands and fathers focused on their education. The conservative Hindu families believed that the literate girl would be widowed. The conservative Muslim families thought that by reading Urdu romances their women would be corrupted. Kailash bhashini Debi from Bengal, wrote about the experiences of the women such as how they are imprisoned at home ignorance, forced work, unjust treatment at home and society etc.

4. Explain with examples the role of print culture in the bringing of French Revolution.

Ans- The print culture spread the ideas of the great thinkers like Voltaire and Rousseau. They criticized tradition, custom, superstition, despotism and the authority of church. They wanted rule of reason, questioning and rationality. Debate and dialogue started due to the coming of the print culture which resulted in the re-evaluation of the values, norms and the institutions. This had brought the idea of social revolution. The moralities of the royal powers were criticized and the social order was questioned. The cartoons and the caricatures revealed the sensual pleasures of the monarchs and the hardship of the common people. Hence, the people stood against the monarchy.

It is not true to say that the print culture was the direct cause of the French revolution. The print culture spread the ideas but people were reading different kinds of literature in which people like Voltaire and Rousseau were also exposed. The people interpreted the things in their own way as they accepted some ideas and rejected others.

5. How had the earliest printing technology developed in the world? Explain with examples.

Ans-(i) In the beginning the system of hand printing was developed in China, Japan and Korea.

(ii)The wood block printing was developed in China. In this technology the books were printed by rubbing the paper against the surface of the woodblocks.

(iii) The volume of the print increased in China due to the increase in the number of candidates in the civil services exam through which the candidates were recruited in the huge bureaucratic system.

(iv) 17th century urbanization in China also diversified the use of print in China. The scholar officials, merchants, rich women, wives and courtesans started the use of print.

(v) The western printing techniques and mechanical presses reached the outpost of China and thus Shanghai became the hub of this new print culture

6. "By the end of 19th century a new visual culture was taking shape." Explain.

Ans-(i) Along with the printed material, visual images could also be published and reproduced easily in multiple copies.

(ii) Painters like Raja Ravi Verma used print culture to produce images for mass circulation. Wood improvers began to be employed in print houses for making woodblocks.

(iii) People good at funny sketching developed cartoons and caricatures commenting on social and political issues. Some openly criticized imperial rule, western tastes and clothes which attracted large masses.

(iv) Mass production of visual images reduced the cost of production. Cheap prints and calendars were available in market and even the poor could buy to decorate the walls of their homes.

(v) The new visual culture acquired distinctively Indian form and style, as artists began to depict scenes from Hindu religious mythology.

7. How did a new reading public emerge with the printing press? Explain.

Ans-(i) With the advent of printing press, a new reading public emerged. The books became cheaper as printing technology reduced the cost of production.

(ii) As books flooded the market, readership increased and books now reached to larger number of people.

(iii) Access to books created a new reading culture. Earlier reading was restricted to the elite only—common people lived in world of word culture who heard sacred text read out to them or ballads recited or folk tales narrated.

(iv) Now a reading public came into being. But book could be read only by literate people, keeping this point of view, printer's published popular ballads and folk tales with a lot of pictures, which could be read to illiterate public. These ballads and tales could then be sung or read out to those who could not read.

(v) Thus, printed material could be orally transmitted at gatherings and taverns. Reading public and hearing public thus got intermingled

8. What was 'reading mania'?

Ans. With the rapid spread of literacy and schools in the European countries, everybody became an avid reader and the printers produced books at a wider scale.

9. How did the print media affect the women in India?

Ans- 1. Women held an important position in the history of India as prominent readers and writers.

2. The Penny magazines were particularly meant for women. These were manuals that educated women on proper decorum and housekeeping facilities.

3. When novels began to be written in the nineteenth century, women were seen as important readers. 4. Many Best-known novelists like Jane Austen, the Bronte Sisters and Mary Anne Evans (pen name George Eliot) started to define a new type of woman; as a person with strong will, manifesting the strength of personality and thinking capacities.

10. How had the Imperial State in China been the major producer of printed material for a long time? Explain with examples.

Ans- From AD 594 onwards, books in China were printed by rubbing paper — also invented there — against the inked surface of woodblocks. The imperial state in China was, for a very long time, the major producer of printed material. China possessed a huge bureaucratic system which recruited its personnel through civil service examinations. Textbooks for this examination were printed in vast numbers under the sponsorship of the imperial state. From the sixteenth century, the number of examination candidates went up and that increased the volume of print. By the seventeenth century, as urban culture bloomed in China, the uses of print diversified. Reading increasingly became a leisure activity. Women, revolutionaries, poets and even merchants used print in everyday life.

Source/Case Based Questions

Source: 01

Read the following passage and answer the questions given below it:

From the early nineteenth century, as you know, there were intense debates around religious issues. Different groups confronted the changes happening within colonial society in different ways, and offered a variety of new interpretations of the beliefs of different religions. Some criticized existing practices and campaigned for reform, while others countered the arguments of reformers. These debates were carried out in public and in print. Printed tracts and newspapers not only spread the new ideas, but they shaped the nature of the debate. A wider public could now participate in these public discussions and express their views. New ideas emerged through these clashes of opinions.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

(i) Following is not true about the 19th century religious issues in India:

(a) Differences between Hindu and Catholics were not having major issue.

(b) Hindu religion did not have any major internal issue.

(c) Some people wanted to have some changes in Hindu rituals.

(d) Both Hindu and Muslim religions were having their own internal issues.

(ii) Which of the following was not the work of print?

(a) Spreading the liberal religious ideas.

(b) People started debate and discussion after different ideas reached to them through books.

(c) Print provided them a platform to express their view.

(d) Religious leaders successfully conveyed what was written in religious books.

(iii) Who among the following is known for his efforts to remove Sati system from India?

(a) Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar

(b) Raja Ram Mohan Roy

(c) Mahatma Gandhi

(d) Jyotiba Phule

(iv) Which of the following was/were main controversy within Hindu religion in 19th century?

(a) How to establish cordial relations with Muslims.

(b) Conversion of Hindus by missionaries.

(c) Widow immolation, monotheism, idolatry.

(d) How to establish supremacy of Hindu religion over the world.

Ans. (i) (b) Hindu religion did not have any major internal issue.

(ii) (d) Religious leaders successfully conveyed what was written in religious books.

(iii) (b) Raja Ram Mohan Roy.

(iv) (c) Widow immolation, monotheism, idolatry

POWER SHARING

Story of Belgium

Belgium is a small country in Europe with a population of over 1 crore, about half the population of Haryana. Of the country's total population, 59% speaks Dutch language, 40% of people speak French and the remaining 1% speak German. Look at the map below to know the language variation of Belgium. The minority French-speaking community was rich and powerful, so they got the benefit of economic development and education. This created tensions between the Dutch-speaking and French-speaking communities during the 1950s and 1960s.



Accommodation in Belgium

In Belgium, the government handled the community difference very well. Between 1970 and 1993, Belgian leaders amended their constitution four times and came up with a new model to run the government.

Here are some of the elements of the Belgian model.

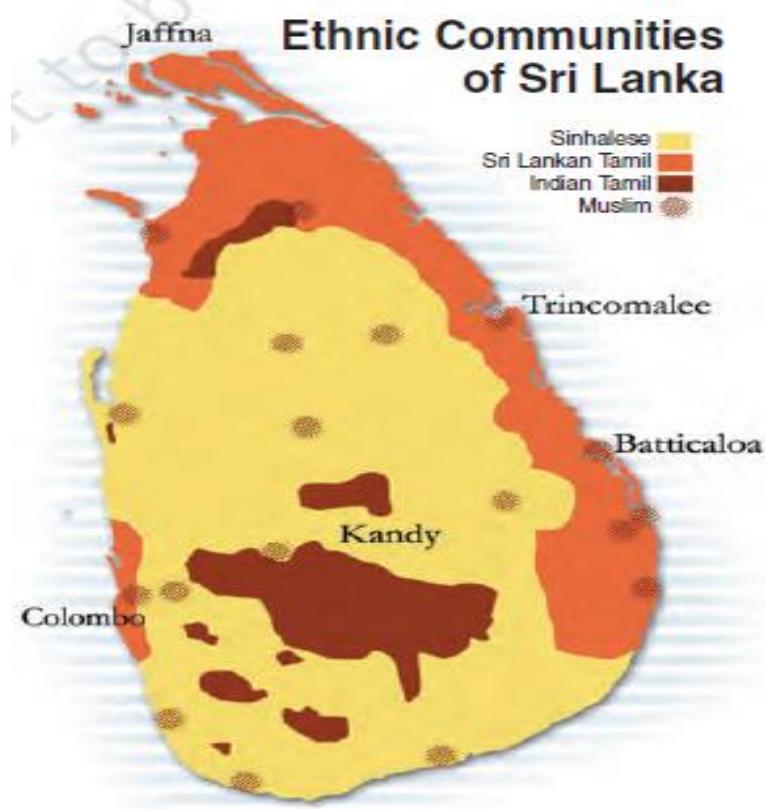
1. The Constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the Central Government. Some special laws require the support of the majority of members from each linguistic group. Thus, no single community can make decisions unilaterally.
2. The state governments are not subordinate to the Central Government.
3. Brussels has a separate government in which both communities have equal representation.
4. Apart from the Central and the State Government, there is a third kind of government. This 'community government' is elected by people belonging to one language community – Dutch, French and German-speaking – no matter where they live. This government has the power regarding cultural, educational and language-related issues.

The Belgium model was very complicated but it helped to avoid civic strife between the two major communities.

Story of Sri Lanka

Now, let's take the situation of another country, Sri Lanka. It is an island nation having a population of 2 crores, about the same as in Haryana. Sri Lanka has a diverse population. The major social groups are the Sinhala-speakers (74%) and the Tamil-speakers (18%). Among Tamils, there are two subgroups, "Sri Lankan Tamils" and "Indian Tamils".

You can see the map below to know the population distribution of different communities of Sri Lanka.



In Sri Lanka, the Sinhala community enjoyed the bigger majority and imposed its will on the entire country.

Majoritarianism in Sri Lanka

Sri Lanka emerged as an independent country in 1948. The Sinhala community was in the majority so they had formed the government. They also followed preferential policies that favoured Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs. These measures taken by the government gradually increased the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils. Sri Lankan Tamils felt that constitution and government policies denied them equal political rights, discriminated against them in getting jobs and other opportunities and ignored their interests. Due to this, the relationship between the Sinhala and Tamil communities became poor. Sri Lankan Tamils launched parties and struggles for the recognition of Tamil as an official language, for regional autonomy and equality of opportunity in securing education and jobs. But their demand was repeatedly denied by the government. The distrust between the two communities turned into widespread conflict and turned into a CIVIL WAR.

What have you learned from the Stories of Belgium and Sri Lanka?

- Both countries are democracies but they dealt differently with the concept of power sharing.
- In Belgium, the leaders have realised that the unity of the country is possible only by respecting the feelings and interests of different communities and regions. This resulted in mutually acceptable arrangements for sharing power.
- Sri Lanka shows that, if a majority community wants to force its dominance over others and refuses to share power, it can undermine the unity of the country.

Why is power sharing desirable?

You will find the answer to this question in the points below.

1. Power sharing is good because it helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups.

2. The second reason is that, a democratic rule involves sharing power with those affected by its exercise, and who have to live with its effects. People have a right to be consulted on how they are to be governed.

Let us call the first set of reasons Prudential and the second moral.

The prudential reasons stress that power sharing will bring out better outcomes, whereas the moral reasons emphasise the act of power sharing as valuable.

Form of Power Sharing

Most of you must think that Sharing power = dividing power = weakening the country. A similar thing was believed in the past. It was assumed that all the power of a government must reside in one-person or group of persons located at one place. Otherwise, it would be very difficult to make quick decisions and to enforce them. But these notions have changed with the emergence of democracy.

In modern democracies, power sharing can take many forms, as mentioned below:

1. Power is shared among different organs of government, such as the legislature, executive and judiciary. This is called horizontal distribution of power because it allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers. Such separation ensures that none of the organs can exercise unlimited power. Each organ checks the others.

This arrangement is called a system of checks and balances.

2. Power can be shared among governments at different levels – a general government for the entire country and governments at the provincial or regional level which is called federal government.

3. Power may also be shared among different social groups such as the religious and linguistic groups. „Community government“ in Belgium is a good example of this arrangement. This method is used to give minority communities a fair share in power.

4. Power sharing arrangements can also be seen in the way political parties, pressure groups and movements control or influence those in power. When two or more parties form an alliance to contest elections and if they get elected, they form a coalition government and thus share power.

OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

1. Which one of the following countries does not share its boundary with Belgium?

- (a) France (b) Netherlands (c) Sweden (d) Luxembourg

Ans : (c) Sweden

2. In Belgium, the percentage of French community is:

- (a) 54% (b) 40% (c) 30% (d) 20%

Ans : (b) 40%

3. Which language is dominantly spoken in Belgium?

- (a) Dutch (b) Spanish (c) French (d) Italian

Ans : (a) Dutch

4. Power struggle demanding separate Eelam was launched by:

- (a) Sinhalese

(b) Buddhists

(c) Tamilians

(d) none of these

Ans : (c) Tamilians

5. Which of the following is the capital city of Belgium?

(a) Bruges (b) Brussels (c) Ghent (d) Antwerp

Ans : (b) Brussels

6. Belgium shares its border with:

(a) France (b) Germany (c) Luxembourg (d) all of the above

Ans : (d) all of the above

7. Power shared among governments at different levels is also called:

(a) horizontal distribution

(b) vertical distribution

(c) slant distribution

(d) none of the above

Ans : (b) vertical distribution

9. A war-like conflict between two opposite groups in a

country is called (a) Cold war (b) Civil war (c) Ethnic war (d) None of these

Ans : (b) Civil war

10. Belgium has worked on the principles of:

(a) majoritarianism

(b) accommodation

(c) both (a) and (b)

(d) none of the above

Ans : (b) accommodation

11. Sri Lanka is an island nation, just a few kilometres from the Southern coast of

(a) Goa (b) Kerala (c) Tamil Nadu (d) Lakshadweep

Ans : (c) Tamil Nadu

12. Majoritarianist constitution was adopted by:

(a) Belgium (b) India (c) Sri Lanka (d) Pakistan

Ans : (c) Sri Lanka

13. What is the percentage of Sinhala-speaking people in

Sri Lanka? (a) 74% (b) 75% (c) 14% (d) 19%

Ans : (a) 74%

14. What is the percentage of Sri Lankan Tamils out of the total population of Sri Lanka?

(a) 10 percent (b) 19 percent (c) 13 percent (d) 25 percent

Ans : (c) 13 percent

15. Power sharing is desirable because it

(a) helps the people of different communities to celebrated their festivals.

(b) imposes the will of the majority community over others.

(c) reduces the conflict between social groups.

(d) ensures the stability of political order.

Ans : (c) reduces the conflict between social groups.

16. Intelligent sharing of power is done among

(a) Legislature and Central Government (b) Executive and Judiciary

(c) Legislature and Executive (d) Legislature, Executive and Judiciary

Ans :(d) Legislature, Executive and Judiciary

17. Division of power between higher and lower level of government is known as

(a) vertical division of power (b) horizontal distribution of power

(c) union division of power (d) community division of power

Ans :(a) vertical division of power

18. The capital city of Belgium is:

(a) Dutch (b) France (c) Brussels (d) none of the above

Ans :(c) Brussels

19. Power sharing is a good way to ensure the stability of:

(a) population (b) political order (c) both (a) and (b) (d) none of the above

Ans :(b) political order

20. When power is shared among different organs of the government it is called as

(a) horizontal distribution of power (b) community distribution of power

(c) coalition of power (d) federal distribution of power

Ans :(a) horizontal distribution of power

21. Which of the following is not the benefit of power sharing?

- (a) It upholds the spirit of democracy.
- (b) Political parties get their expected share.
- (c) It ensures political stability in the long-run.
- (d) It reduces the possibility of conflicts between social groups.

Ans :(b) Political parties get their expected share.

22. An Act of recognizing Sinhala as the official language was signed in:

- (a) 1942
- (b) 1956
- (c) 1954
- (d) 1948

Ans :(b) 1956

23. Which of the following is not the form of power sharing?

- (a) Vertical division of power
- (b) Horizontal division of power
- (c) Division of power between people
- (d) Division of power among social groups

Ans :(c) Division of power between people

24. Power struggle demanding separating Eelam was launched by:

- (a) Sinhalese
- (b) Buddhists
- (c) Tamilians
- (d) none of the above

Ans :(c) Tamilians

2. FILL IN THE BLANK

DIRECTION: Complete the following statements with appropriate word(s).

1. In Belgium, three communities are living , and

Ans :French, Dutch and German speaking

2. has started power struggle demanding separate Eelam in Sri Lanka.

Ans : Tamilians political organisation

3. was started in Sri Lanka due to distrust between the two communities.

Ans :Civil War

4. Both and share power on an equal basis at in Belgium.

Ans :Dutch, French speaking people, central government

5. In Belgium, lastly the power is shared between , and

Ans :Central, State, Community Government

3. TRUE/FALSE

DIRECTION: Read each of the following statements and write if it is true or false.

1. Power sharing increases the possibility of conflict between social groups. Ans :False

2. Sri Lanka is facing the problems because of supporting the Tamilians in the state.

Ans :True

3. Belgium has French people in majority whereas the others struggle for their rights.

Ans :False

4. Power sharing is desirable and reduces possibilities of conflict within the country.

Ans :True

5. Belgium and Sri Lanka are the two similar causes in the struggle of people.

Ans :True

6. The feeling of accommodation has led to the problem in Sri Lanka.

Ans :False

4. ASSERTION AND REASON

DIRECTION : Mark the option which is most suitable :

(a) If both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

(b) If both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

(c) If assertion is true but reason is false.

(d) If both assertion and reason are false.

1. Assertion : Tyranny of majority is highly desirable.

Reason : It helps in making the political order more stable.

Ans : (d) Both assertion and reason are false. Tyranny of majority community is oppressive for the minority community and can also ruin the majority. It is a source of dissatisfaction and tension which is a source of political instability.

2. Assertion : In Belgium, the leaders realized that the unity of the country is possible by respecting the feelings and interest of different countries.

Reason : Belgium favoured Dutch speaking community.

Ans : (d) Both assertion and reason are false. Belgians adapted a power sharing arrangement in which all the communities have equal representation. This helped in relieving tension between the different communities. Thus they did not favour any particular community. Both the assertion and reason are false.

3. Assertion : French speaking community in Belgium was rich and powerful.

Reason : Belgian Government favoured French speaking community.

Ans : (c) Assertion is true but reason is false. There was ethnic tension between French speaking and Dutch speaking communities in Belgium. For resolving, the government adopted a power sharing arrangement where all the communities got equal representation.

4. Assertion : In a democracy, everyone has voice in the shaping of public policies.

Reason : India has federal system.

Ans : (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion. In a democracy, people elect the representatives who participate in the decision making process. Due respect and proper representation is given to diverse groups in a democratic system. Hence, in democracy everyone has voice in the shaping of public policies. However the reason does not justify the assertion.

5. Assertion : Power should reside with one person and group located at one place in a democracy.

Reason : If the power is dispersed, it will not be possible to take decision quickly and enforce it.

Ans : (d) Both assertion and reason are false. In a good democratic government, due respect is given to diverse groups and views that exist in the society. Hence, political power should be distributed among citizens.

6. Assertion : Belgium and Sri Lanka both faced ethical tension among different communities.

Reason : Both the countries resolved the conflict by power sharing arrangement which gave equal representation to all the communities.

Ans : (c) Assertion is true but reason is false. Belgians adopted a power sharing model where all the communities got equal representation; this helped in solving tension between different communities. However, Sri Lanka tried to promote the supremacy of Sinhala community which eventually led to civil war. Thus the reason is false.

7. Assertion : There was a feeling of alienation among Sri Lankan Tamils.

Reason : The Sri Lankan government denied them equal political rights and discriminated against them in getting jobs and other opportunities,

Ans : (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion. An act was passed in 1956 to recognize Sinhala as an official language. The government of Sri Lanka favoured people from Sinhala community for higher education and government jobs. It led to resentment among Sri Lankan Tamils as government was not sensitive to their culture and language.

8. Assertion : Community government in Belgium is elected by one language community.

Reason : Community government helped in resolving conflict between different linguistic groups.

Ans : (a) Both assertion and reason are true and government is elected by people of one language community, i.e. French, Dutch and German speaking. Such a government has power related to culture, education and language issues. It helps in resolving conflicts between different ethical groups by safeguarding the interest of its group.

9. Assertion : Sinhala was recognized as only official language of Sri Lanka.

Reason : The government of Sri Lanka wanted to establish the supremacy of Sinhala community.

Ans : (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion. The government of Sri Lanka passed an Act in 1956 to recognize Sinhala as only official language of Sri Lanka. The government also formulated preferential policies to favour Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs. All this was done to establish supremacy of Sinhala community. Thus the reason justifies the assertion.

10. Assertion : Power Sharing is good.

Reason : It leads to ethical tension.

Ans : (c) Assertion is true but reason is false. / Power Sharing is good because it helps in reducing the chances of conflict between different social groups and ensures stability of the political system. reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

2 Mark Questions

Q1.What is „Power Sharing“?

Power sharing means the distribution of power among the organs of the government such as the legislature, executive and judiciary.

Q2.What are the languages spoken in Belgium?

Belgium is composed of four language areas: the Dutch language area, the French language area, the German language area (9 municipalities in the east of Belgium) and the bilingual Brussels-Capital area.

Q3.Where is Sri Lanka located?

Sri Lanka is an island in the Indian Ocean, located to the south of Indian Subcontinent. Sprawling over the area of 65,525 Sq. km.

Q 1.Which are the border states of Belgium ?

The border states of Belgium are Netherlands, France and Germany.

Q2.What is the meaning of ethnic ?

Ethnic means a social division based on shared culture. People belonging to the same ethnic group believe in their common descent because of similarities of physical type or of culture or both. They need not always have the same religion or nationality.

Q 3.Which languages are spoken in Belgium ? What is their percentage ?

Dutch language – 59 per cent

French language – 40 per cent

German language – 01 per cent.

Q 4.What is the percentage of French and Dutch-speaking people in the capital city of Brussels ?

French-speaking – 80 per cent

Dutch-speaking – 20 per cent.

Q 5.State one special problem in Brussels.

In Brussels the special problem was that the Dutch-speaking people constituted a majority in the country but a minority in the capital (Brussels).

Q6.Which language is spoken by majority of Sri Lanka ?

Sinhala is spoken by 74 per cent people in Sri Lanka.

Q 7. What is the percentage of Tamil-speaking people?

18 per cent people speak Tamil.

Q 8. What is majoritarianism?

Answer: Majoritarianism is a belief that the majority community should be able to rule a country in whichever way it wants, by disregarding the wishes and needs of the minority.

Q 9. When was the Act passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language in Sri Lanka?

Answer: In 1956.

Q10. What was the result of policy of majoritarianism in Sri Lanka ?

Answer: It increased the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils.

Q11. What was the object of constitutional amendments between 1970 and 1993 in Belgium?

Answer: The object was to work out an arrangement that would enable everyone to live together within the same country.

Q 12. The community government in Belgium is a good example of which form of power sharing?

Answer: Power sharing among governments at different levels.

Q13. Which is third unique form of govt, practiced in Belgium?

Or

Apart from the central and the state government, what is the other form of government in Belgium?

Answer: Apart from central and the state government there is a third kind of government viz community government elected by people belonging to one language community – Dutch, French and German-speaking – no matter where they live.

Q 14. Which type of powers does the community government of Belgium enjoy?

Answer: The community government has the power regarding cultural, educational and language related issues.

Q 15. Which are the two reasons for power sharing and mention one advantage of each ?

Answer: Prudential reason : It helps to reduce the possibility of conflicts between social groups.

Moral reason : It is good for democracies. It is the very spirit of democracy.

Q 16. Mention four types of power sharing.

Answer: Power sharing among different organs of government.

Power sharing among government at different levels.

Power sharing among different social groups.

Power sharing among political parties, pressure groups and movements.

Q 17. What is horizontal distribution of power ?

Answer: Under horizontal distribution, power is shared among different organs of government, such as legislature, executive and judiciary.

Q18. How power can be shared among governments at different levels?

Answer: Under this, there is a general government for the entire country (central government) and governments at the provincial or regional level (state government).

Q19. What are the features of sharing power among governments at different levels? State any one.

Answer: Under this power sharing, there is division of power between central and state governments.

It is vertical division of power.

Q20. Give an example of power sharing among different social groups such as the religious and linguistic groups.

Answer: Community government in Belgium is a good example of power sharing among different social groups.

Q 21. Why the system of ‘reserved constituencies’ is adopted in India ?

Answer: The system of ‘reserved constituencies’ is adopted to give space/representation in the government and administration to diverse social groups who otherwise would feel alienated from the government.

Q 22. Give an example of power sharing among different political parties in a democracy.

Answer: Some time different political parties with different ideologies form an alliance. They contest elections jointly and after winning in the elections, these parties form a coalition government. The example is present NDA government.

QUESTIONS OF 3/5 MARKS

Answers should be in about 80/100 words.

Q 1. Describe the geographical and ethnic composition of Belgium.

Answer: The geographical and ethnic composition of Belgium is given below :

(1) Geographical composition :

Belgium is a small country in Europe. It is smaller in area than the State of Haryana in India.

It has borders with Netherlands, France and Germany.

Its population is little over one crore. It is half of the population of Haryana state.

(2) Ethnic composition :

59 per cent of the population lives in the Flemish region. They speak Dutch language.

40 per cent people live in the Wallonia region. They speak French.

Remaining one per cent speak German.

Brussels is the capital of Belgium. Here, 80 per cent people speak French and 20 per cent speak Dutch.

Thus, Belgium is a country of diversities based on languages. Dutch-speaking people are in majority in the country, but a minority in the capital city of Brussels.

Q 2. What was the cause of tension between Dutch-speaking and French-speaking communities during 1950s and 1960s ?

Answer: The minority French-speaking community was relatively rich and powerful. On the other hand Dutch-speaking community got the benefit of economic development and education much later. This was the cause of tension between two communities during the 1950s and 1960s.

Q3. Describe the geographical and ethnic composition of Sri Lanka.

Answer: The geographical and ethnic composition of Sri Lanka is given below :

Geographical composition :

Sri Lanka is an island nation just a few kilometers off the southern coast of Tamil Nadu.

Its population is about 2 crore.

Ethnic composition :

The major social groups are the Sinhala-speakers (74 per cent) and Tamil-speakers (18 per cent).

Tamil-speakers are further divided into two groups – Sri Lankan Tamils and Indian Tamils.

Sri Lankan Tamils are the natives of Sri Lanka. The Indian Tamils' forefathers migrated from India as plantation workers during colonial period.

Sri Lankan Tamils live in the north and east of the country.

Most of the Sinhala-speaking people are Buddhist, while most of the Tamils are Hindus or Muslims.

There are about 7 per cent Christians, who are both Tamil and Sinhala.

Q 4.Explain the three measures taken by Sri Lanka as per the Act passed in 1956.

Or

How was majoritarianism practiced in Sri Lanka ?

Or

What were the reasons for alienation of Sri Lankan Tamils ? What were its effects ?

Or

Which policies of the Sri Lankan government have led to the feeling of alienation among Sri Lankan Tamils ?

Or

Why Sri Lankan Tamils felt alienated ?

Answer:(1) Sri Lanka emerged as an independent country in 1948. The Sinhala community was majority community. Their leaders sought to secure dominance over government. Thus the democratically elected government adopted the following majoritarian measures :

In 1956, an Act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language thus disregarding Tamil.

The governments followed preferential policies that favoured Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs.

A new constitution stipulated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism.

(2) Effects : The above measures gradually increased the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils.

They felt that none of the major political parties led by the Buddhist Sinhala leaders were sensitive to their language and culture.

They felt that the constitution and government policies denied them equal political rights.

They also felt that they were being discriminated in getting jobs and other opportunities. Thus the relations between the Sinhala and Tamil communities strained and a feeling of alienation grew among the Sri Lankan Tamils.

Q5.What were the effects of feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils ?

Answer:The effects of the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils were as mentioned below

The Sri Lankan Tamils launched parties and struggles for the recognition of Tamil as an official language.

They demanded regional autonomy.

They also demanded equality of opportunity in securing education and jobs.

Their demand for regional autonomy was repeatedly denied.

By 1980s several political organisations were formed and they demanded an independent Tamil Eelam (state) in northern and eastern parts of Sri Lanka.

The distrust and alienation turned into widespread conflict between the two communities. It soon turned into a civil war.

In the civil war, thousands of people of both the communities were killed. Many

families were forced to leave the country as refugees. Many lost their livelihoods. Thus although Sri Lanka had excellent record of economic development, education and health, but the civil war has caused a terrible setback to the social, cultural and economic life of the country.

Q 6.What are some of the basic elements of the Belgium model of power sharing ?

Or

Describe the path of accommodation adopted in Belgium. What were its consequences

Answer:The Belgian leaders recognised the existence of regional differences and cultural diversities. So they adopted a path of accommodation. Its features were as mentioned below :

Between 1970 and 1993, the constitution was amended four times so as to work out an arrangement that would enable everyone to live together within same country.

The constitution prescribes that the Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the Central Government.

Some special law's require the support of majority of members from each linguistic group. No single community not even majority community (Dutch-speaking) can make decisions unilaterally.

The State Governments are not subordinate to the Central Government. Many powers of the Central Government have been given to State Governments.

There is a separate government in Brussels, the capital of Belgium. Both the communities i.e., French-speaking and Dutch-speaking, have equal representation in the Brussels government. The French-speaking people accepted equal representation in Brussels because the Dutch-speaking community has accepted equal representation in the central government.

A third government which is called “community government” is elected by people belonging to one language community – Dutch, French and German-speaking – no matter

where they live. The community government has power regarding cultural, educational and language-related issues. The above model is complicated but it has worked so well that there is no civil strife between the two communities. There is no danger of division of the country on the linguistic basis.

Q 7.How the composition of the capital city of Brussels is different from Belgium as a country ?

Answer: In Belgium, the composition of different communities is as given below :

Dutch-speaking — 59 per cent

French-speaking — 40 per cent

German-speaking — 01 per cent

On the other hand, the composition of Brussels is as follows :

French-speaking — 80 per cent

Dutch-speaking — 20 per cent

Thus, Dutch-speaking people are in majority in the country but they are in minority in the capital city of Brussels. On the other hand, French-speaking people are in minority in the country but they are in majority in the capital city of Brussels. This composition of different communities has led to the acceptance of principle of accommodation in Belgium by them.

Q 8. What do you learn from the principles followed in Belgium and Sri Lanka i.e., majoritarianism in Sri Lanka and accommodation in Belgium ?

Answer: We learn the following lessons from the principles of majoritarianism and accommodation followed in Sri Lanka and Belgium :

In Belgium, the leaders respected the feelings and interests of all communities and were successful in maintaining the unity of the country. They recognised the existence of regional differences and cultural diversities. They took various steps such as amendments to the constitution in order to work out an arrangement that would enable everyone to live together within the same country. The arrangements such as equal number of ministers of Dutch and French-speaking people in Brussels and central govt, have worked successfully.

On the other hand in Sri Lanka, the Sinhala community tried to secure dominance over government and adopted a series of majoritarian measure. The result was alienation of Sri Lankan Tamils and civil war.

Thus it proves that the policy and path of accommodation is better than the path of majoritarianism.

Q 9. What are the different forms of power sharing in modern democracies ? Explain any two.

Answer: Different forms of power sharing are given below :

(1) Power sharing among different organs of government :

The power is shared by three organs of government i.e., legislature, executive and judiciary.

Generally, legislature enacts laws, executive executes the laws, makes policies and takes decisions,

Judiciary interprets the law and protects the rights of the people,

It is called horizontal distribution of power'because it allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers,

Such a separation ensures that none of the organs can exercise unlimited power.

Each organ checks the others and a balance of power is maintained.

For example in India, executive i.e., Council of Ministers is responsible to Lok Sabha. The Council of Ministers must enjoy the support of the majority in the Lok Sabha. If they lose confidence of the Lok Sabha, they have to

resign. Similarly judges are appointed by the executive, but they check the function of executive or laws made by the legislatures.

(2) Power sharing among governments at different levels :

There are governments at the National, State and Local levels.

Powers are divided among these governments. For example in India, there is a division of powers between Center and the States. There are three lists i.e., Union list, State list and Concurrent list. The residuary powers which have not been included in the three lists are with the Central Government, Some powers have been given to local governments under the Panchayati Raj system, Such a system is followed in countries where there federal form of government as in the USA and Belgium, Such division of powers involving higher and lower levels of government is called vertical division of power.

However, in countries where there is unitary form of government as in the Great Britain, there is no division of powers. All the powers are vested in the central or national government.

(3) Power sharing among different social groups :

Sometimes religious and linguistic groups too share power as is the case in Belgium where there is a “community government” which is elected by people belonging to one language community no matter where they live.

Such government enjoys power regarding cultural, educational and language related issues,

In India, seats are reserved for SCs and STs in assemblies and parliament. Such a system is adopted to give minority communities a fair share in power so that they are not alienated from the government as has happened in Sri Lanka.

(4) Power sharing among political parties, pressure groups and movements :

When no party gets an absolute majority in legislature, different parties come together and form a coalition government and share power in a democracy. For example, the present NDA (National Democratic Alliance) government headed by Shri Narendra Modi is a coalition government in which power is shared by different political parties that represent different ideologies and social groups.

In addition to this, different pressure groups, interest groups and movements also directly or indirectly influence the decision making process of the government. Thus there is power sharing among political parties, pressure groups and movements.

Q 10. Differentiate between horizontal and vertical power sharing in modern democracies.

Answer: The differences between horizontal and vertical power sharing in modern democracies is as mentioned below:

Horizontal Power Sharing

- (1) Power is shared among different organs of government such as the legislature, executive and judiciary.
- (2) It allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers.
- (3) It ensures that none of the organs exercise unlimited power.
- (4) Each organ checks the other. This results in a balance of power among various institutions. It is called a system of checks and balances.

Vertical Power Sharing

- (1) Power is shared among governments at different levels i.e., central, state/ provincial, regional level.
- (2) The constitution clearly lays down the powers of different levels of government as has been in Belgium/ India. It is federal division of power.
- (3) It ensures that each government works according to the constitutional powers.
- (4) It is vertical division of power as the powers are divided involving higher and lower levels of government i.e., central, state and local level.

Q11 “Both Belgium and Sri Lanka are democracies but they follow different systems of power sharing.” Support the statement by giving three points of difference.

Answer: The points of difference between systems of power sharing in Belgium and Sri Lanka are as mentioned below :

Sri Lanka Belgian

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(1) In Sri Lanka the leaders of the Sinhala community sought to secure dominance over government by virtue of their majority. The elected government adopted a series of majoritarian measures to establish Sinhala supremacy.</p> <p>(2) In 1956 an Act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language. The govt, followed preferential policies favouring Sinhala applicants for university positions and govt. jobs. A new constitution stipulated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism.</p> <p>(3) There is no such community govt, regarding cultural, educational and language related issues.</p> <p>(4) In Sri Lanka, there was the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils. They felt that the constitution and the government policies denied them equal political rights, discriminated against them in getting jobs and other opportunities and ignore</p> | <p>The Belgian leaders recognised the existence of regional differences and cultural diversities. Between 1970 and 1993 they amended their constitution four times so as to work out an arrangement that would enable everyone to live together within the same country. Constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the central govt. Many powers of the central government have been given to the state governments which are not subordinate to the central government. Brussels (capital) has a separate govt, in which both the communities have equal representation. In Belgium, the “community government” is elected by people belonging to one language community Dutch, French and German-speaking — no matter where they live. This government has the power regarding cultural, educational and language related issues.</p> <p>In Belgium there is no feeling of alienation among any of the communities because the constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the central government. Many powers of the central government have been given to state governments of the two regions of the country. Brussels has a separate government in which both the communities have equal representation.</p> |
|--|--|

Q12. .Describe basic principles o f democracy about power sharing.

Answer: They elect their representatives through direct or indirect election. Those who win and secure majority in the legislature form government at various levels i.e., national, state or local.

In democracy due respect is given to all social groups including minorities. For example in India, minorities enjoy educational and cultural rights. Reservation has been made for SCs/STs in Parliament and State Assemblies. Thus, in democracy power is shared at various levels and among various social groups.

It is based on prudence or on careful calculation of gains and losses.

SOURCE BASED QUESTION (04 Marks)

Read the source given below and Answer the questions that follow:

In modern democracies, power sharing arrangements can take many forms. Power is shared among different organs of government, such as the Legislature, Executive and Judiciary. Let us call this horizontal distribution of power because it allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers. Such a separation ensures that none of the organs can exercise unlimited power. Each organ checks the other. This results in a balance of power among various institutions in a democracy, even though ministers and government officials exercise power, they are responsible to the Parliament or State Assemblies. Similarly, although judges are appointed by the executive, they can check the functioning of executive or laws made by the legislatures. This arrangement is called a system of checks and balances. Power can be shared among government at different levels, a general government for the entire country and governments at the provincial or regional level. Such a general government for the entire country is usually called federal government. In India, we refer to it as the Central or Union Government. The governments at the provincial or regional level are called by different names in different countries. In India, we call them State Governments.

Power may also be shared among different social groups such as the religious and linguistic groups.

‘Community government’ in Belgium is a good example of this arrangement. In some countries there are constitutional and legal arrangements whereby socially weaker sections and women are represented in the legislatures and administration. Power sharing arrangements can also be seen in the way political parties, pressure groups and movements control or influence those in power. In a democracy, the citizens must have freedom to choose among various contenders for power. In contemporary democracies, this takes the form of competition among different parties.

Q.1 When power is shared among legislature, executive and judiciary in democracy it is known as....

- (a) Separation of powers
- (b) Horizontal distribution of powers
- (c) Vertical distribution of powers
- (d) None of above

Ans. Horizontal distribution of powers

Q.2 ministers and government officials exercise power and judges check the functioning of executive or laws made by the legislature, this is known as...

- (a) Separation of powers
- (b) Checks and balances
- (c) Horizontal distribution of powers
- (d) None of the above

Ans. Checks and balances

Q.3 when power is shared among different social group it is known as-

- (a) Third tier government
- (b) Special government
- (c) Community government
- (d) None of the above

Ans. Community government

Q.4 Power sharing arrangements in democracy is enjoyed by...

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| (a) Political parties | (c) Pressure groups |
| (b) Movements | (d) all of these |

Ans. All of these

FEDERALISM

Meaning of federalism

Federalism is a system of government in which power is divided between central authority and various constituent units of the country.

A federation has two levels of government. Both these levels of governments enjoy their power independent of the other.

1. One is the government for the entire country that is usually responsible for a few subjects of common national interest.

2. Governments at the level of provinces or states that look after much of the day-to-day administering of their state.

Difference between Unitary System and Federal System

Unitary System	Federal System
There is only one level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to the Central Government.	There are two or more levels (or tiers) of government.
The Central Government can pass on orders to the provincial or local government.	The Central Government cannot order the state government to do something.
The central government is supreme, and the administrative divisions exercise only powers that the central government has delegated to them. Their powers may be broadened and narrowed by the central government	State Government has powers of its own for which it is not answerable to the central government.

Key Features of Federalism

Some of the key features of federalism system are:

1. There are two or more levels (or tiers) of government.
2. Different tiers of government govern the same citizens, but each tier has its own JURISDICTION in specific matters of legislation, taxation and administration.
3. The existence and authority of each tier of government is constitutionally guaranteed.
4. The fundamental provisions of the constitution cannot be unilaterally changed by one level of government. Such changes require the consent of both the levels of government.
5. Courts have the power to interpret the constitution and the powers of different levels of government.
6. Sources of revenue for each level of government are clearly specified to ensure its financial autonomy.
7. The federal system has dual objectives:
 - i) To safeguard and promote the unity of the country
 - ii) Accommodate regional diversity.

Different Routes through Which Federations can be Formed

Two aspects are crucial for the institutions and practice of federalism: mutual trust between the government of different levels and agreement to live together. There are two kinds of routes through which federations have been formed.

1. The first route involves independent States coming together on their own to form a bigger unit. This kind of “coming together” federations is formed in the USA, Switzerland and Australia.
2. The second route is that a large country decides to divide its power between the constituent States and the national government. This kind of „holding together“ federations is followed in India, Spain and Belgium countries.

What Makes India a Federal Country?

All the features of the federal system apply to the provisions of the Indian Constitution. The Indian Constitution is a three-fold distribution of legislative powers between the Union Government and the State Governments.

The 3 lists are mentioned below:

- 1) Union List: It includes subjects of national importance such as the defence of the country, foreign affairs, banking, communications and currency. The Union Government alone can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in this list.
- 2) State List: It contains subjects of State and local importance such as police, trade, commerce, agriculture and irrigation. The State Governments alone can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in this list.
- 3) Concurrent List: It includes subjects of common interest to both the Union Government as well as the State Governments. The list includes education, forest, trade unions, marriage, adoption and succession. Both the Union as well as the State Governments can make laws on the subjects mentioned in this list. If their laws conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Government will be considered.

How is Federalism Practised?

The real success of federalism in India is attributed to its nature of democratic politics. Have a look at some of the major ways in which federalism is practised in India.

Linguistic States

The creation of linguistic States was the first and a major test for democratic politics in India. From 1947 to 2017, many old States have vanished and many new States have been created. Areas, boundaries and names of the States have been changed. Some States have been formed of the people who speak the same language. These states are known as Linguistic States.

Language Policy

A second test for Indian federation is the language policy. Hindi was identified as the official language. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution. States too have their own official languages and government work takes place in the official language of the concerned State.

Centre-State relations

Restructuring the Centre-State relations is one more way in which federalism has been strengthened in practice. If no single party gets a clear majority in the Lok Sabha, the major national parties can alliance with many parties including several regional parties to form a government at the Centre. This led to a new culture of power sharing and respect for the autonomy of State Governments.

Decentralisation in India

When power is taken away from Central and State governments and given to the local government, it is called decentralisation. The basic idea behind decentralisation is that there are a large number of problems and issues which are best settled at the local level. Local people can also directly participate in the decision making.

A major step towards decentralisation was taken in 1992.

The Constitution was amended to make the third-tier of democracy more powerful and effective. Here are the key features of 3-tier democracy:

1. It is constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
2. Seats are reserved in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for the Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and Other Backward Classes.
3. At least one-third of all positions are reserved for women.
4. State Election Commission has been created in each State to conduct panchayat and municipal elections.
5. The State governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies. The nature of sharing varies from State to State.

Panchayati Raj System

Rural local government is popularly known as Panchayati Raj. Each village, or a group of villages in some States, has a gram panchayat. This is a council consisting of several ward members, often called panch, and a president or sarpanch. They are directly elected by all the adult population living in a village or ward. Gram Panchayat is the decision-making body for the entire village.

The Panchayat works under the overall supervision of the Gram Sabha. All the voters in the village are its members. It has to meet at least twice or thrice in a year to approve the annual budget of the gram panchayat and to review the performance of the Gram Panchayat.

When Gram Panchayat are grouped together, they form a Panchayat Samiti or Block or Mandal.

The member of Panchayat Samiti representative is elected by all the Panchayat members in that area.

All the Panchayat Samitis or Mandals in a district together constitute the Zilla (district) Parishad.

Members of the Lok Sabha, MLAs of the district, and some other officials of other district-level bodies are the members of Zilla Parishad.

Municipalities

As Gram Panchayat is for Rural areas, similarly we have Municipalities for urban areas. Big cities are constituted into Municipal Corporations. Both Municipalities and Municipal Corporations are controlled by elected bodies consisting of people's representatives. The Municipal Chairperson is the political head of the Municipality. In a Municipal Corporation such an officer is called the Mayor.

1. OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

1. Belgium shifted from a unitary form of government to:

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) Democratic | (b) federal |
| (c) Authoritarian | (d) none of the above |

Ans : (b) federal

2. Which type of government does the Belgium have?

- (a) Federal
- (b) Communist
- (c) Unitary
- (d) Central

Ans : (a) Federal

3. In federalism, power is divided between various constituent units and:

- (a) central authority
- (b) states
- (c) both (a) and (b)
- (d) none of the above

Ans : (a) central authority

4. Which countries follow the unitary system of government?

- (a) Belgium, Spain and India
- (b) USA Japan and Belgium
- (c) United Arab Emirates, China and Sri Lanka
- (d) France, Germany and India

Ans : (c) USA Japan and Belgium

5. In federal system, central government cannot order the:

- (a) principal
- (b) local government
- (c) state government
- (d) none of the above

Ans : (c) state government

6. A system of government in which power is divided between a central authority and various constituent unit of the country is called

- (a) Federalism
- (b) Communal-ism
- (c) Socialism
- (d) Democracy

Ans : (a) Federalism

7. State government has powers of its own for which it is not answerable to the: (a) central government (b) judiciary

- (c) both (a) and (b)
- (d) none of the above

Ans : (b) judiciary

8. Which country is an example of coming together federation?

- (a) Belgium
- (b) USA
- (c) Sri Lanka
- (d) India

Ans : (b) USA

9. Power to interpret the constitution is with the:

- (a) courts
- (b) judiciary
- (c) state government
- (d) none of the above

Ans : (b) judiciary

10. In Unitary form of government

- (a) all the power is divided between the centre/union and the state provincial government.

- (b) all the power is with the citizens.
- (c) State Government has all the powers
- (d) power is concentrated with the Central Government.

Ans : (d) power is concentrated with the Central Government.

11. The place of Rajasthan where India conducted its nuclear tests is

- (a) Calicut (b) Pokhran
- (c) Kavaratti (d) Karaikal

Ans : (b) Pokhran

12. The coming together federation is:

- (a) India (b) Spain (c) USA (d) Australia

Ans : (c) USA

13. The first and major test for democratic politics in our country was

- (a) caste problem (b) language problem
- (c) problems related to union territories (d) creation of linguistic state

Ans : (d) creation of linguistic state

14. Indian official language is:

- (a) Hindi (b) English
- (c) Urdu (d) None of these

Ans : (a) Hindi

15. How many languages are included in the Eight Schedule of the Indian Constitution?

- (a) 15 (b) 22 (c) 25 (d) 21

Ans : (b) 22

16. Which language has status of the national language in India?

- (a) Tamil (b) Hindi (c) English (d) None of these

Ans : (d) None of these

17. The municipal corporation officers are called:

- (a) Mayors (b) MLAs (c) Sarpanch (d) none of these

Ans : (a) Mayors

18. Who can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in the Union list?

- (a) Local Government (b) State Government
- (c) Union Government (d) State and Union

Ans : (c) Union Government

19. Federations have been formed with the two kinds of:

- (a) states (b) routes (c) people (d) none of the above

Ans : (a) state

20. The state which violently demanded that the use of English for official purpose should be continued, is

- (a) Kerala (b) Karnataka (c) Tamil Nadu (d) Andhra Pradesh

Ans : (c) Tamil Nadu

21. To make India a strong federation, we need:

- (a) written constitution (b) rigid constitution
- (c) independent judiciary (d) all of the above

Ans : (d) all of the above

22. Major step towards decentralisation in India was taken up in

- (a) 1992 (b) 1993 (c) 1991 (d) 1990

Ans : (a) 1992

23. Who has special power in administering the Union Territories in India?

- (a) Central Government (b) Chief Minister (c) President (d) Governor

Ans : (a) Central Government

24. Who is the head of urban local government?

- (a) Sarpanch (b) Ward commissioner (c) Mukhiya (d) Mayor

Ans : (d) Mayor

25. When power is taken away from state governments and is given to local government, it is called

- (a) Decentralisation (b) Centralisation (c) Panchayat Samiti (d) Federalism

Ans : (a) Decentralisation

2. FILL IN THE BLANK

DIRECTION : Complete the following statements with appropriate word(s).

1. Holding together country decides to divide its power between theand

Ans : the national government, constituent states

2. First major test of democratic politics in our country was the creation of

Ans : linguistic states

3. Under the system, either there is only one level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to the central government.

Ans : Unitary

4. list includes subjects of national importance such as defence of the country, foreign affairs etc.

Ans : Union

5. The oversees the implementation of constitutional and procedures.

Ans : Judiciary

6. in India enjoys a special status. This state has its own constitution.

Ans : Jammu and Kashmir

3. TRUE/FALSE

DIRECTION : Read each of the following statements and write if it is true or false.

1. Besides Hindi, India has 21 official languages.

Ans : True

2. 1980s was the era of coalition governments.

Ans : False

3. Second test for the Indian Federation was the language policy

Ans : True

4. When the power is taken from the local and state government and given to central government, it is called decentralisation.

Ans : False

5. Decentralisation helps to build effective communication.

Ans : True

4. ASSERTION AND REASON

DIRECTION : Mark the option which is most suitable :

(a) If both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

(b) If both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

(c) If assertion is true but reason is false.

(d) If both assertion and reason are false.

1. Assertion : Belgium and Spain has ‘holding together’ federation.

Reason : A big country divides power between constituent states and national government.

Ans : (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion. The power of a large country is divided between constituent states and national government. The central government is more powerful than the states.

2. Assertion : Hindi is identified as the only official language of India.

Reason : It helped in creating supremacy of Hindi speaking people over others. Ans : (c) Assertion is true but reason is false. Hindi is identified as official language of India. However, it is spoken by only 40 per cent of

Indians. Thus, to safeguard the rights of other linguistic communities, 21 other languages were recognized as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution.

3. Assertion : It is very simple to make the changes in the basic structure of the constitution.

Reason : Both the houses have power to amend the constitution independently.

Ans : (d) Both assertion and reason are false. It is difficult to make changes in the constitution in the federal system. Any change has to be first passed through both the houses of Parliament through atleast two-third majority. Then it has to be ratified by the legislatures of atleast half of the total states. Thus both reason and assertion are false.

4. Assertion : India is a federation.

Reason : Power resides with the central authority.

Ans : (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion. India is a federal government and there is three-tier system of power sharing with central government, state government and local self government. It is a union of states and not a federation.

5. Assertion : Coalition government is formed during dearth of coal in the country.

Reason : It helps in overcoming coal crisis.

Ans : (d) Both assertion and reason are false. When no party is able to prove clear cut majority, several regional parties come together to form coalition government. It has no connection with scarcity of coal in the country.

6. Assertion : The subjects which are not included in Union List, State List and Concurrent List are considered as residuary subjects.

Reason : The subjects included that came after constitution was made and thus could not be classified.

Ans : (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion. The subjects which are not included in Union List, State List and Concurrent List are considered as Residuary subjects. It includes the subjects such as computer software that came after constitution was made. Union Government has power to legislate on these 'residuary' subjects.

7. Assertion : India has a federal system.

Reason : Under a unitary system, either there is only one level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to central government.

Ans : (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion. India has a federal government. There is a central government for the entire country and state governments for different regions. The reason is also true but does not justify the statement.

8. Assertion : Zilla Parishad Chairperson is the political head of the zilla parishad.

Reason : Mayor is the head of municipalities.

Ans : (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion. Panchayat samitis of a district together form the zilla parishad. Zilla Parishad chairperson is the political head of the zilla parishad. Municipalities are set up in towns. Mayor is the head of municipalities. The reason does not however explain the assertion.

9. Assertion : A major step towards decentralization was taken in 1992 by amending the constitution.

Reason : Constitution was amended to make the third tier of democracy more powerful and effective.

Ans : (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion. The constitution was amended in 1992 to make the third tier more powerful and effective. It includes steps like regular elections for local government bodies, reservation of seats for OBC, SC, ST and women and creation of State Election Commission. The reason thus justifies the assertion.

10. Assertion : Third-tier of government is local government.

Reason : It made democracy weak.

Ans : (c) Assertion is true but reason is false. The third tier of government is done through decentralisation. It helped in making democracy stronger by taking it to grass root level. Thus, the reason is false but assertion stands true.

QUESTIONS OF 1 MARK

Answers should not exceed 30 words.

Q1. In 1993, what change in the form of government took place in Belgium ? ”

Answer:

In 1993, Belgium shifted from a unitary to a federal form of government because the regional governments were given constitutional powers. The regional governments were no longer dependent on the central government.

Q2.What is federalism ?

Answer:

Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country.

Q3.Name any two countries in the west having federal form of government.

Answer:

USA and Canada.

Q4.What is jurisdiction ?

Answer:

Jurisdiction is the area over which someone has legal authority. The area may be defined in terms of geographical boundaries or in terms of certain kinds of subjects.

Q5. What is the unitary system of government?

Answer:

Under the unitary system, either there is only one level of government or the sub units are subordinate to the central government.

Q6. How can the fundamental provisions of the constitution be changed or amended in a federal system of government?

Answer:

The fundamental provisions of the constitution cannot be unilaterally changed by one level of government. Such changes require the consent of both the levels of government.

Q7.What other factors besides politics keep federations united?

Answer:

Mutual trust and agreement to live together are other factors that keep federations together.

Q8. What is the nature of Indian federal system?

Answer:

Indian federal system is an example of ‘holding together’ type of federation.

Q9. Give two examples of ‘coming together’ federation.

Answer:

USA, Switzerland and Australia.

Q10. State any one feature that makes India a federal country.

Answer:

The Constitution divides legislative powers between the Union Government and the State Governments. It has three lists viz Union list, State list and Concurrent list.

Q11. State any two subjects included in the Union List.

Answer:

1. Defence of the country.

2. Foreign Affairs.

Q12. Which are the subjects included in the State List ? Mention any two.

Answer:

1. Police and

2. Agriculture.

Q13. What are residuary subjects? Who can make law on these subjects?

Answer:

1. The residuary subjects are those subjects that are not included in any list.

2. The Union Government has the power to legislate on ‘residuary’ subjects.

Q14. Which government can make law on subjects included in the concurrent list ?

Answer:

Both the Union and the State Governments can make law on the subjects included in the concurrent list.

Q15. In case of any disputes about the division of powers which institution decides it ?

Answer:

In case of any dispute about the division of powers, the High Courts and the Supreme Court make a decision.

Q16. Which state of the India has its own constitution?

Answer:

Jammu and Kashmir.

Q17. Name any two Union Territories.

Answer:

Chandigarh and Lakshadweep.

Q18. What happened in Pokharan ? Where is it?

Answer:

Pokharan is the place where India conducted its nuclear tests. It is in Rajasthan.

Q19. Which states have been created to recognise differences based on culture, ethnicity or geography?

Answer:

Nagaland, Uttarakhand and Jharkhand.

Q20. State one advantage of formation of linguistic states.

Answer:

The formation of linguistic states has made the country more united. It has also made administration easier.

Q21. How many languages are recognized as scheduled languages by the Indian Constitution?

Answer:

22 languages are recognized as scheduled languages by the Constitution.

Q22. What is the status of Hindi in India?

Answer:

Hindi was identified as the official language.

Q23. What is a coalition government?

Answer:

A government formed by the coming together of at least two political parties. Usually partners in a coalition form a political alliance and adopt a common programme.

Q24. When was the report of the States Reorganization Commission was implemented ?

Answer:

1 November 1956.

Q25. What is decentralization ?

Answer:

When power is taken away from the central and state government and given to local government, it is called decentralization.

Q26. What steps have been taken to make the third tier of democracy more powerful and effective ? Mention any two.

Answer:

1. It is constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
2. An independent institution called the State Election Commission has been created in each state to conduct panchayat and municipal elections'

Q27. How many seats in the local government bodies are reserved for women ?

Answer:

At least one-third of all positions are reserved for Women.

Q28. How are rural local government in India popularly known ?

Answer:

Rural local government in India is popularly known by the name Panchayati Raj.

Q29. Who are members of the Gram Sabha in a village ?

Answer:

All the voters in the village are members of the Gram Sabha.

Q30. What is the official post for the chair person of a Municipal Corporation ?

Answer:

Mayor.

Q31.What is the approximate number of elected representatives in the panchayats and municipalities etc. ?

Answer:

About 36 lakhs.

Q32.Which problems are being faced by the local bodies ? Mention any two.

Answer:

1. Many state governments have not transferred significant powers to the local governments.
2. Adequate resources have not been provided to local bodies.

QUESTIONS OF 3/5 MARKS

Answers should be in about 80/100 words.

Q1.What are the differences between a federal form of government and a unitary one ? Explain.

Or

Analyse features of federalism.

Or

Compare and contrast the federal system of government with unitary system of government.

Or

How is federal government, different from unitary government. ?

Answer:

Two systems of government i.e., federal system and unitary system can be compared as given below :

Federal Government	Unitary Government
<p>(1) There are two or more levels of governments e.g., National, State and Local governments.</p> <p>(2) There is division of powers between different levels of governments.</p> <p>(3) State governments are not answerable to the Central or National government.</p> <p>(4) Jurisdiction of each government i.e., state and central is specified in the constitution and cannot be changed unilaterally.</p> <p>(5) Constitutional amendment cannot be made without the consent of the state governments.</p> <p>(6) Courts such as Supreme Court of India safeguards and interprets the Constitution.</p> <p>(7) Sources of revenue are divided among different levels of government.</p> <p>(8) It has two objectives – to safeguard and promote unity of the country. Secondly to accommodate regional diversity. So there should be trust and agreement to live together</p>	<p>(1) Generally, there is only one level of government. In case of sub-units, they are subordinate to the national government.</p> <p>(2) There is no division of powers. The Central or National government has all the powers.</p> <p>(3) The state governments or sub-units are answerable to the Central government.</p> <p>(4) All powers are with the Central government. There is no separate jurisdiction for the sub-units. The Central government can grant them powers and take back at any time.</p> <p>(5) The Central government alone can make constitutional amendment like an ordinary law.</p> <p>(6) Courts do not enjoy powers of safeguarding/interpreting the constitution.</p> <p>(7) Sources of revenue are controlled by the Central government.</p> <p>(8) There is no such objective as there is only one government that controls the whole country.</p>

Q2. Distinguish between ‘coming together’ and ‘holding together’ types of federations. India comes under which type of federation ?

Or

Describe different routes for formation of federations in different countries and their impact.

Answer:

(1) There are two routes that have been adopted for formation of federations in the world. The differences between the two are as mentioned below :

‘Coming together’ Federations	‘Holding together’ Federations
<p>(1) These forms of federations are formed by independent states which come together on their own to form federation.</p> <p>(2) The object is to form a bigger unit so that by pooling sovereignty and retaining identity, they can increase their security.</p> <p>(3) The examples of this type of federations are the USA, Switzerland and Australia.</p> <p>(4) All the constituent states and federal government have equal powers and are strong vis-a-vis the federal government</p>	<p>(1) Under these federations, large country decides to divide its power between the constituent States and the national government.</p> <p>(2) The object is to have a powerful central government to maintain unity in diversity. For example in India the central govt, has more powers than the states.</p> <p>(3) The examples of this type of federations are India, Spain and Belgium.</p> <p>(4) In such federations, the national or central government is powerful than the states or provinces as in India. Some states may have unequal powers or special powers. For example in India Jammu and Kashmir has its own constitution. Many provisions of the Indian constitution are not applicable to this state without the approval of the State Assembly. Special provisions exist for some other states of India as well.</p>

(2) India comes under ‘holding together’ federation.

Q3. How are legislative powers divided between Union govt, and state govts ?

Or

Examine what makes India a federal country.

Or

What are the salient features of federalism in India ?

Answer:

The salient features of federalism in India are as mentioned below :

(1) Two-three levels of government : In the beginning, the Constitution provided for a two-tier system of government e., the Union or National government and the State governments. Later, a third-tier of federalism was added in the form of Panchayats and Municipalities. These tiers enjoy separate jurisdiction.

(2) Division of legislative powers :

The Constitution clearly provided threefold distribution of legislative powers between the Union Government and the State governments as mentioned below :

1. Union list :

1. It includes subjects of national importance such as defence of the country, foreign affairs, banking, communications and currency.

2. These are included in this list because we need a uniform policy on these matters throughout the country.
 3. The Union Government alone can make laws relating to the subjects in the Union list.
2. State list :
1. This list contains subjects of state and local importance such as police, trade commerce, agriculture and irrigation.
 2. The State Governments alone can make laws relating to these subjects.
3. Concurrent list :
1. It includes subjects of common interest to both the Union Govt, as well as the State Governments, such as education, forest, trade unions, marriage, adoption and succession.
 2. Both the Union as well as the State Governments can make laws on these subjects.
 3. In case the laws conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Govt, will prevail.
4. Residuary powers :
1. These include the subjects not included in three lists or subjects like computer software that came up after the Constitution was made.
 2. The central government, can make laws on such subjects.
 3. Rigid constitution : Amendment to the Constitution is not easy. Sharing of powers or division of powers is basic to the structure of the Constitution and cannot be changed easily. The Parliament has to pass an amendment in both the Houses with at least two-thirds majority. Then it has to be ratified by the legislatures of at least half of the total States.
 4. Independent courts and interpretation of the Constitution : The judiciary plays an important role in the implementation of constitutional provisions and procedures. In case of any dispute about the division of powers, the High Courts and the Supreme Court decide the case.
 5. Independent resources : The Union and the State Governments can raise their resources by levying taxes in order to carry on the government and the responsibilities assigned to each of them.

Q4.“All the States in the Indian union do not have identical powers.” Explain.

Or

Describe special powers or provisions for some States in India.

Answer:

The Constitution of India does not grant equal powers to all States. Some States enjoy special status/powers as given below :

(1) Jammu and Kashmir :

- Under Article 370, the concurrence of the state is required for making laws in matters mentioned in the Union and Concurrent Lists.
- Jammu and Kashmir has its own Constitution,
- Again Indians who are not permanent residents of this State cannot buy land or house there,

- Amendments to the Indian Constitution under Article 368 cannot apply without the concurrence of the J & K government.

(2) North-Eastern and smaller States have been given more representation in the Rajya Sabha. North-Eastern states such as Assam, Nagaland, Arunachal Pradesh and Mizoram have a sizeable indigenous tribal population with a distinct history and culture which can be retained under Article 371.

(3) There are areas which are too small to become an independent State but which could not be merged with any of the existing States. Such areas are like Chandigarh or Lakshadweep or the Capital city of Delhi. These are known as Union Territories. These territories do not have powers of a state. The central government has special powers in running these areas.

Q5. (1) Pokharan, the place where India conducted its nuclear tests, lies in Rajasthan. Suppose the Govt, of Rajasthan was opposed to the Central Government's nuclear policy, could it prevent the Govt, of India from conducting the nuclear tests ?

(2) Suppose the Govt, of Sikkim plans to introduce new textbooks in its schools. But the Union Govt, does not like the style and content of the new textbooks. In that case, does the state govt, need to take permission from the Union Govt, before these . textbooks can be launched ?

(3) Suppose the Chief Ministers of Andhra Pradesh, Chhattisgarh and Orissa have different policies on how their state police respond to the naxalites. Can the Prime Minister of India intervene and passs an order that all Chief Ministers will have to obey.

Answer:

1. No. Defence is a subject of national importance. Nuclear tests are related to the defence of the country. So the Rajasthan government could not prevent the Govt, of India from conducting the nuclear tests.
2. Education is included in the concurrent list. Both the central and state government can make laws on this subject. According to the Constitution if the central govt, too makes a law, and if their laws conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Govt, will prevail. In this case as no law has been passed by the Central Govt., the State Govt, need not take permission from the Union Govt.
3. Police is a state subject. So the states of Andhra Pradesh, Chhattisgarh and Orissa can follow different policies. Prime Minister cannot intervene and pass orders to be obeyed by all Chief Ministers.

Q6. Explain democratic policies adopted by the Government of India which made it a successful federation.

Or

Why has federalism succeeded in India ? Which three policies adopted by India have ensured this success ?

Or

Explain how the federal experiment has been successful in the matter of formation of states in India.

Or

Describe how federalism has been in practice through creation of linguistic states.

Answer:

The success of federalism in India can be attributed to the nature of democratic politics in the country. This has ensured that the spirit of federalism, respect for diversity and desire for living together became a shared ideal for all. This has happened in various ways :

1. Linguistic States :

1. The creation of Linguistic states was the first major test for democratic politics in India.
2. In 1947 the boundaries of several states were changed on the basis of several states were changed in order to create new states.

3. Some states were created to recognize differences based on culture, ethnicity or geography. These are Nagaland, Uttarakhand and Jharkhand.
4. State Reorganization Commission (1956) : Under State Reorganisation Commission in 1956, the States were created on the basis of language. Many States vanished and new States came into existence.
5. Creation of Haryana and Punjab: Even after the State Reorganization Commission, the demand for creation of new States continued. In 1966, Haryana was created out of the State of Punjab.
6. States on the basis of culture : Some States like Nagaland, Uttarakhand and Jharkhand were created to recognize the cultural and ethnic differences.
7. Success of federalism :
 1. Although there have been some opposition to the creation of states on the basis of language etc., the experience has proved that the country became more united,
 2. It has made administration more easier in smaller states,
 3. The spirit of federalism, respect for diversity and desire for living together has become a shared ideal.

2. Language Policy : The Constitution of India did not give the status of national language to any one language. According to Constitution, the use of English for official purposes was to stop in 1965. However, many non-Hindi speaking States demanded to continue the use of English, particularly in Tamil Nadu. The leaders adopted a cautious approach to avoid a Sri Lanka type situation. It was, therefore, decided that English would continue along with Hindi for official purposes. Official Language Act provides that English would remain the official language of the country so long as non-Hindi speaking States desire. Thus, this approach has helped in avoiding confrontation with non-Hindi speaking southern states particularly Tamil Nadu. It has also strengthened the spirit of federalism.

3. Center-State Relations : The relations between Center and the States too has strengthened the federalism in India as mentioned below :

1. In the beginning : The Central Government and the State Governments were controlled by one political party e., Congress. The Central Government dominated over the State Governments.
2. After 1967 : When some opposition or different political parties came to power in the States, the relations between center and the states changed. The Central Government misused the powers under Article 356 of the Constitution and dismissed the governments led by the rival parties. This was against the spirit of federalism.

4. After 1990 :

1. Coalition government was formed at the center.
2. Regional parties became powerful in the states,
3. Since no single party was able to secure majority, different parties formed alliance such as NDA and UPA.
4. Under such arrangement, culture of power sharing and respect for autonomy of state governments spread in India,
5. The Supreme Court too made it difficult for the Central Government to dismiss the State Governments in an arbitrary manner. Thus, federal structure has been strengthened by the coming of coalition governments. Federal power sharing has become effective and center-state relations have been

strengthened. Respect for the autonomy of the states has increased. Thus all these policies have contributed towards making Indian federalism successful.

Q7. State difference between the local government before and after the constitutional amendment in 1992.

Answer:

The difference of local government in India before and after 1992 was as mentioned below :

‘Before 1992	After 1992
<p>(1) There were panchayats in villages and municipalities in urban areas but these were directly under the control of the state governments. They did not enjoy independent status.</p> <p>(2) Elections to local bodies were not held regularly.</p> <p>(3) These bodies did not have financial resources. They were dependent on states or central government which used to grant them financial aids.</p> <p>(4) There was no reservation for SC/ST/ OBGs.</p> <p>(5) There was no reservation for women.</p> <p>(6) There was no independent state commission to conduct elections.</p>	<p>(1) The state governments are required to share some powers with the local government bodies. Now local bodies got constitutional status.</p> <p>(2) It is mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies. If the state govt, dissolves the panchayat before the end of its five year term, fresh elections must be held within six months of such dissolution.</p> <p>(3) The state governments are required to share some powers with local government bodies.</p> <p>(4) Seats are reserved in the elected bodies and executive heads of these institutions for the Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and Other Backward Classes.</p> <p>(5) One-third of all positions are reserved for women.</p> <p>(6) An independent State Election Commission has been created in each state to conduct panchayat and municipal elections</p>

From above it is clear that the government tried to strengthen local governments by the 73rd and 74th amendment in 1992

Q8. Explain the major steps taken towards decentralisation for making the third-tier of government more powerful.

Answer:

The major steps taken towards decentralisation for making the third-tier of government more powerful as mentioned below :

1. In the beginning panchayats in villages and municipalities in urban areas were setup in all the states. These bodies were, however, directly under the control of state governments. Elections to these bodies were not held regularly. They did not have resources of their own. There was thus need for a drastic step that was taken in 1992. The Constitution was amended to make the third-tier of democracy more powerful and effective.
2. Main features of the provisions of the Constitutional Amendment (1992) were as mentioned below :
 1. Constitutionally mandatory to hold elections to local government bodies.

2. Reservation of seats in elected bodies and executive heads for SC/ST/OBCs.
3. Reservation of 1/3 seats for women.
4. Creation of State Election Commission to conduct election of local bodies.
5. State governments to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies. The nature of sharing varies from state to state. Thus third-tier of government has been made more powerful. Now elections are held regularly and financially these bodies have become better equipped.

Q9. Explain any five features of Panchayati Raj system in India.

Or

Differentiate between Gram Sabha and Gram Panchayat.

Or

How is rural local government known in India ? What are its different institutions ?

Answer:

- (1) Rural local government is popularly known by the name panchayati raj.
- (2) Its different institutions are as mentioned below :

1. **Panchayat:**

1. There is a panchayat in each village or group of villages.
 2. It is a council which has several ward members (panch) and a president (sarpanch).
 3. They are directly elected by all the adult population living in that ward or village.
 4. Panchayat is a decision-making body for the entire village.
 5. It works under the overall supervision of gram sabha.
 6. Gram Sabha consists of all the voters and meets twice or thrice in a year to approve the annual budget of the gram panchayat and to review its performance.
2. **Panchayat samiti or block or mandal:** A few gram panchayats are grouped together to form a panchayat samiti or block or mandal. The members of this body are elected by all the members of the panchayats in that area.
 3. **Zilla Parishad :** All the panchayat samitis or mandals in a district constitute Zilla Parishad, whose members are elected. Members of the Lok Sabha and MLAs of that district and some other officials of other district level bodies are also its members. Zilla Parishad chairperson is the political head of the Zilla Parishad.

Q10.Which are the local bodies in the urban areas ? What is their composition ?

Answer:

1. The local bodies in the urban areas are municipalities or municipal committees in towns, municipal corporations in big cities.
 - o The members of municipal committees and municipal corporations are also elected by the people.
 - o Municipal Chairperson is the political head of the municipal committee. Chairperson of Municipal Corporation is called the Mayor.

Q11. Describe the achievements of the new system of local governments. Also mention the problems that are being faced by these bodies.

Answer:

(1) Achievements : It is the largest experiment in a democracy conducted anywhere in the world. Its main achievements are as follows :

1. There are now about 36 lakh elected representatives in the panchayats and municipalities etc. all over the country.
2. Constitutional status for local government has helped to strengthen democracy in the country.
3. There is now uniformity in local bodies across the country.
4. There is a significant number of women in the local bodies.

(2) Problems : There are problems too which are as follows :

1. Elections are held regularly but for gram sabhas are not held regularly.
2. Many State governments have not transferred significant powers to the local governments.
3. Adequate resources have not been given to them. Thus, there is still a long way to achieve the ideal of self government.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTION (2MARKS)

Q1. What is Federalism?

Federalism is a system of government in which power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country.

Q2. What are the sects under „Panchayati Raj“?

Panchayati Raj system consists of: Gram Panchayat at the village level, Panchayat Samiti at the block level and Zila Parishad at the district level.

Q3. What are the functions of Municipality“?

1. Urban planning including town planning.
2. Regulation of land-use and construction of buildings.
3. Planning for economic and social development.
4. Roads and bridges.
5. Water supply for domestic, industrial and commercial purposes.

Gender, Religion and Caste (SUMMARY)

Religion – Gandhi ji said that politics must be guided by ethics drawn from religion

Communalism – Human rights groups in our country have demanded that the government take special steps to protect religious minorities.

Politics - Women's movement has argued that FAMILY LAWS of all religions discriminate against women. So they have demanded that government should change these laws.

Secular state--There is no official religion for the Indian state.

- **Caste and politics** No parliamentary constituency in the country has a clear majority of one single caste. So, every candidate and party needs to win the confidence of more than one caste and community to win elections.
- No party wins the votes of all the voters of a caste or community. When peoplesay that a caste is a 'vote bank' of one party, it usually means that a large proportion of the voters from that caste vote for that party.
- Many political parties may put up candidates from the same caste (if that caste is believed to dominate the electorate in a particular constituency).Some voters have more than one candidate from their caste while many voters have no candidate from their caste.
- The ruling party and the sitting MP or MLA frequently lose elections in our country. That could not have happened if all castes and communities were frozen in their political preferences.

KEY WORDS

Patriarchy: Literally, rule by father, this concept is used to refer to a system that values men more and gives them power over women.

Sexual division of labour: A system in which all work inside the home is either done by the women of the family, or organised by them through the domestic helpers.

Urbanisation: Shift of population from rural areas to urban areas.

Occupational mobility: Shift from one occupation to another, usually when a new generation takes up occupations other than those practiced by their ancestors.

Caste hierarchy: A ladder like formation in which all the caste groups are placed from the 'highest' to the 'lowest' castes.

FEMINIST MOVEMENT -There was agitations in different countries for the extension of voting rights to women. These agitations demanded enhancing the political and legal status of women and improving their educational and career opportunities. More radical women's movements aimed at equality in personal and family life as well. These movements are called FEMINIST movements.

ONE MARKS QUESTION

Q1. In India, the official religion of the state is :

- (a) Hinduism
- (b) Islam
- (c) Christianity
- (d) None

ANS-NONE

Q2. A system that values men more and gives them power over women is called?

- (a) Feminist
- (b) Socialist

(c) Patriarchy

(d) Communist

ANS -c) Patriarchy

Q3.In which system of elected bodies about one-third seats are reserved for women?

(a) Panchayats and Municipals

(b) Lok Sabha

(c) State Assemblies

(d) None of these

ANS-a) Panchayat and Municipals

Q4. Which of the following statement about India as a secular state is incorrect?

(a) Allows freedom to practice any religion

(b) There is no official religion

(c) Prohibits discrimination on religious grounds

(d) It reserves seats for religious minorities

ANS- It reserves seats for religious minorities

Q5.Communalism signifies an ideology which stands for regional harmony and economic equality. (True/False)

ANS-FALSE

Q6.Woman or a man who believes in equal rights and opportunities for men and women.” Select the correct option for the definition.

(a) Feminist (b) Patriarchy (c) Caste hierarchy (d) Social change

ANS- Feminist

Q7. Which leaders worked for the elimination of caste system in India?

(a) Jotiba Phule, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, Mahatma Gandhi and Periyar RamaswamiNaicker

(b) Raja Ram Mohun Roy, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar and Mahatma Gandhi

(c) Jotiba Phule, Periyar Ramaswami Naicker and Mahatma Gandhi

(d) Swami Vivekanand, Jotiba Phule and Raja Ram Mohan Roy

ANS- Jotiba Phule, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, Mahatma Gandhi and PeriyarRamaswamiNaicker

Q8.Gandhiji used to say that religion can never be separated from politics.(True/False)

ANS-TRUE

Q9.Shifting of population from rural areas to urban areas for better opportunity is called_____.

ANS-Urbanisation

Q10.Equal Wages Act' signifies;

- (a) Law that deals with family related matters.
- (b) Law provides that equal wages should be paid for equal job for both men and women.
- (c) An Act which signifies that all work inside the home is done by the women of the family.
- (d) A radical law against the discriminatory attitude and sexual division of labour.

ANS- Law provides that equal wages should be paid for equal job for both men and women.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTION(3M)

Q.1.Mention different aspects of life in which women are discriminated or disadvantaged in India.

ANS-I. Family laws of all religions discriminate against women.

II. There are reports of various kinds of harassment, exploitation and violence against women. Urban areas have become particularly unsafe for women

III. In India, the proportion of women in legislature has been very low

IV. Females are not getting equal wages.

Q.2.Define the following

Urbanisation:

Occupational mobility:

Caste hierarchy:

ANS:- Urbanisation: Shift of population from rural areas to urban areas.

Occupational mobility: Shift from one occupation to another, usually when a new generation takes up occupations other than those practiced by their ancestors.

Caste hierarchy: A ladder like formation in which all the caste groups are placed from the ‘highest’ to the ‘lowest’ castes.

Q.3. Unless women control power, their problems will not get adequate attention. One way to ensure this is to have more women as elected representatives. Do you agree?

ANS-In India, the proportion of women in legislature has been very low. For example, the percentage of elected women members in Lok Sabha has touched 14.36 per cent of its total strength for the first time in 2019. Their share in the state assemblies is less than 5 per cent. In this respect, India is among the bottom group of nations in the world (see the graph below). India is behind the averages for several developing countries of Africa and Latin America.

One way to solve this problem is to make it legally binding to have a fair proportion of women in the elected bodies. This is what the Panchayati Raj has done in India. One third of seats in local government bodies – in panchayats and municipalities – are now reserved for women. Now there are more than 10 lakh elected women representatives in rural and urban local bodies.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTION (5M)

Q.1.Elections is all about caste is not true. Explain

ANS. I. No parliamentary constituency in the country has a clear majority of one single caste. So, every candidate and party needs to win the confidence of more than one caste and community to win elections.

II. No party wins the votes of all the voters of a caste or community. When people say that a caste is a ‘vote bank’ of one party, it usually means that a large proportion of the voters from that caste vote for that party.

III. Many political parties may put up candidates from the same caste (if that caste is believed to dominate the electorate in a particular constituency). Some voters have more than one candidate from their caste while many voters have no candidate from their caste.

IV. The ruling party and the sitting MP or MLA frequently loses elections in our country. That could not have happened if all castes and communities were frozen in their political preferences.

Q.2. The makers of our Constitution were aware of this challenge. That is why they chose the model of a secular state. Explain it.

ANSWER- The makers of our Constitution were aware of this challenge. That is why they chose the model of a secular state. This choice was reflected in several constitutional provisions

I .There is no official religion for the Indian state. Unlike the status of Buddhism in SriLanka, that of Islam in Pakistan and that of Christianity in England, our Constitution does not give a special status to any religion

II. The Constitution provides to all individuals and communities freedom to profess, practice and propagate any religion, or not to follow any.

III. The Constitution prohibits discrimination on grounds of religion.

IV. At the same time, the Constitution allows the state to inter venin the matters of religion in order to ensure equality within religious communities. For example, it bans untouchability.

POLITICAL PARTIES(SUMMARY)

A Political party is a group of people who come together to contest elections and hold power in the government.

A Political party has three components

- 1) The Leaders
- 2) The Active citizens
- 3) The Followers

FUNCTIONS OF POLITICAL PARTIES

- 1) Parties contest elections
- 2) Voters choose from different policies and programs put forward by parties.
- 3) Parties play a decisive role in making laws.
- 4) Parties form and run government.
- 5) Parties that loose elections play the role of opposition to the parties in power.
- 6) Parties shape public opinion.

7) Parties provide people access to government machinery and welfare schemes implemented by government.

➤ SITUATION WITHOUT POLITICAL PARTIES

- No one will be responsible for how the country will be run.
- The government will be formed but its utility will remain uncertain.

HOW MANY PARTIES SHOULD WE HAVE?

It will depend upon the social and geographical diversity of a country.

For e.g.: - India has a multiparty system in which more than 750 parties are registered with the election commission.

ONE PARTY SYSTEM is a system in which only one party is allowed to control and run the government

e.g.: - China

TWO PARTY SYSTEM is a system in which two parties compete to run the government.

e.g.: - USA, UK

MULTI-PARTY SYSTEM is a system in which various parties come together for running the government in a coalition.

e.g.: - India

NATIONAL POLITICAL PARTIES

There are country-wide parties called national parties.

Every party in the country has to register with the election commission- called registered political parties.

A party which secure at least 6% of the total votes in an election to the legislative assembly of a state and win at least 2 seats is recognized as a State party and a party which secure at least 6% of the total votes in Lok sabha elections or Assembly election in four states and wins at least 4 seats in the lok sabha is recognized as a National party.

There are 8 national recognized parties in the country in 2020. They are

1. Indian National Congress(INC)
2. Bharatiya Janata Party(BJP)
3. Bahujan Samaj Party(BSP)
4. Communist Party of India(CPI)
5. Communist Party of India- Marxist(CPI-M)
6. National Congress Party(NCP)
7. All India Trinamool Congress(AITC)
8. National people's party(NPP)

STATE PARTIES

These are commonly referred to as regional parties. Since 1996, nearly every one of the state parties has got an opportunity to be a part of one or the other national level coalition government.

CHALLENGES TO POLITICAL PARTIES

- Lack of internal democracy
- Dynastic succession
- Money and muscle power
- No meaningful choice to the voters.

HOW CAN PARTIES BE REFORMED?

Efforts made in India to reform political parties and its leaders:

Constitution was amended to prevent defection, affidavits were implemented, political parties to hold their organisational elections and file their income tax returns.

SUGGESTIONS ARE MADE TO REFORM POLITICAL PARTIES:

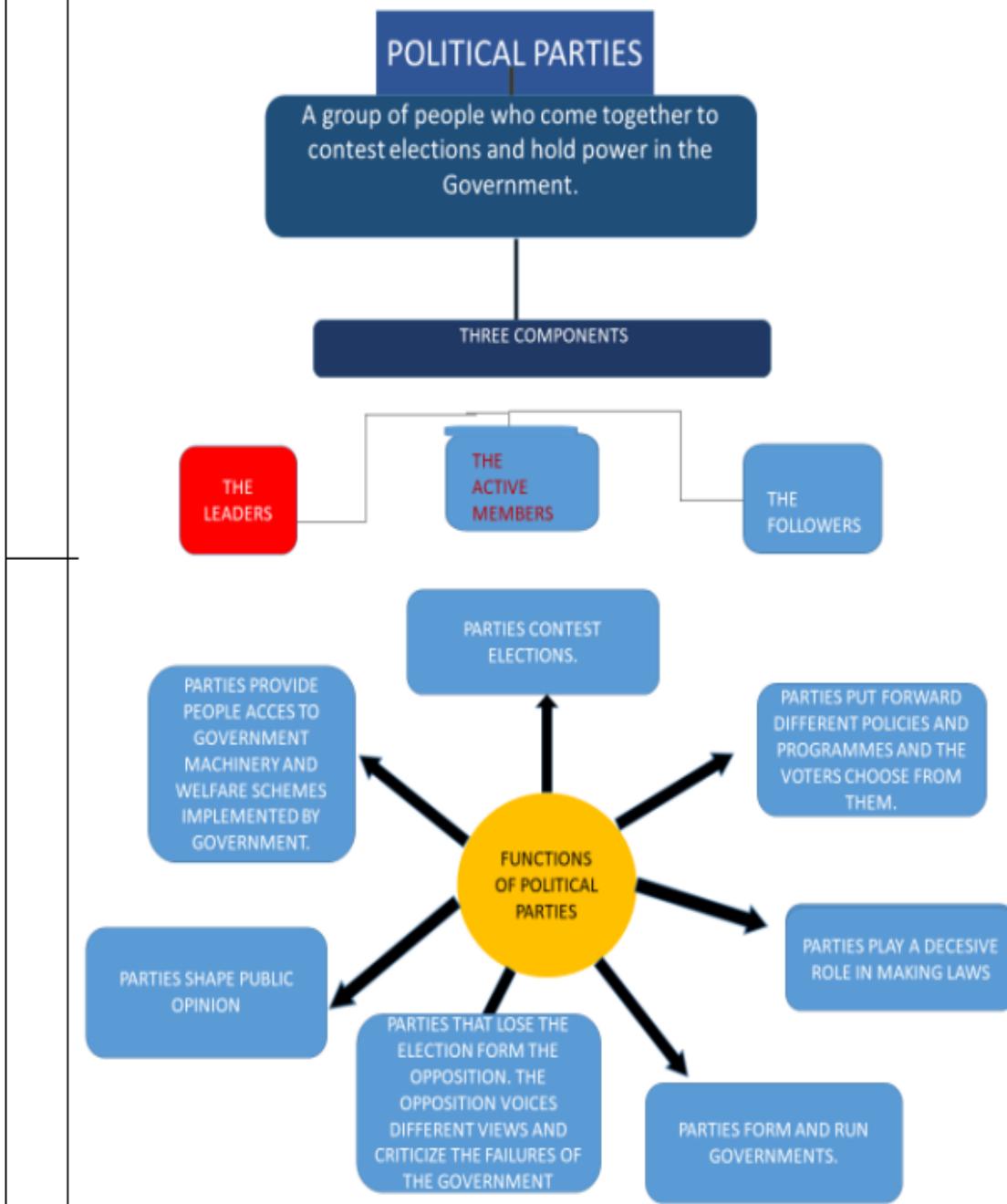
Regulation of party's internal affairs

State funding of election

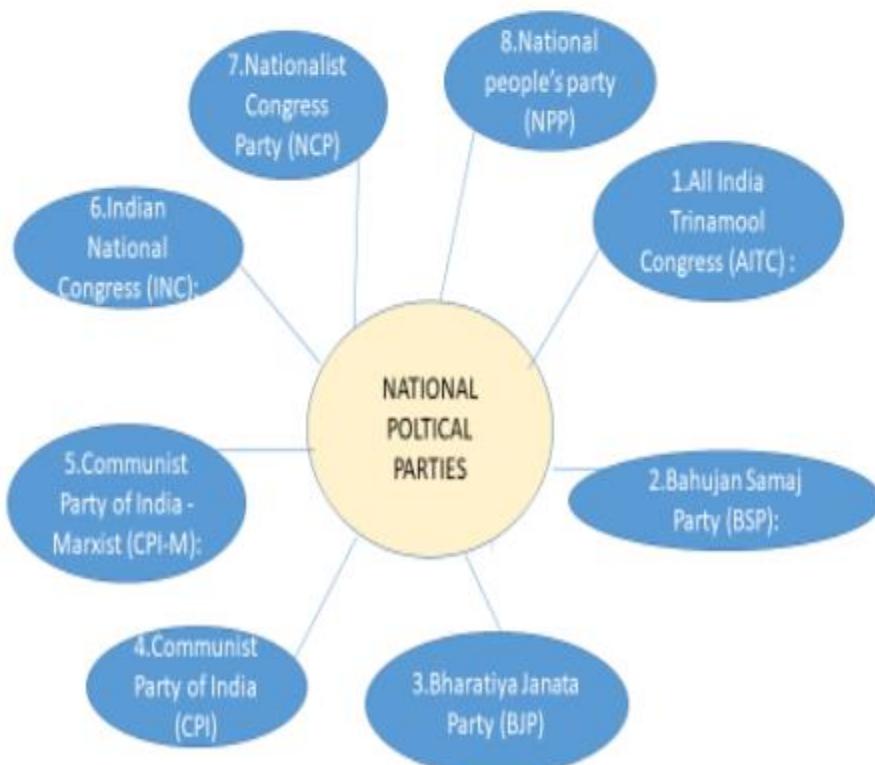
Pressure of public opinion

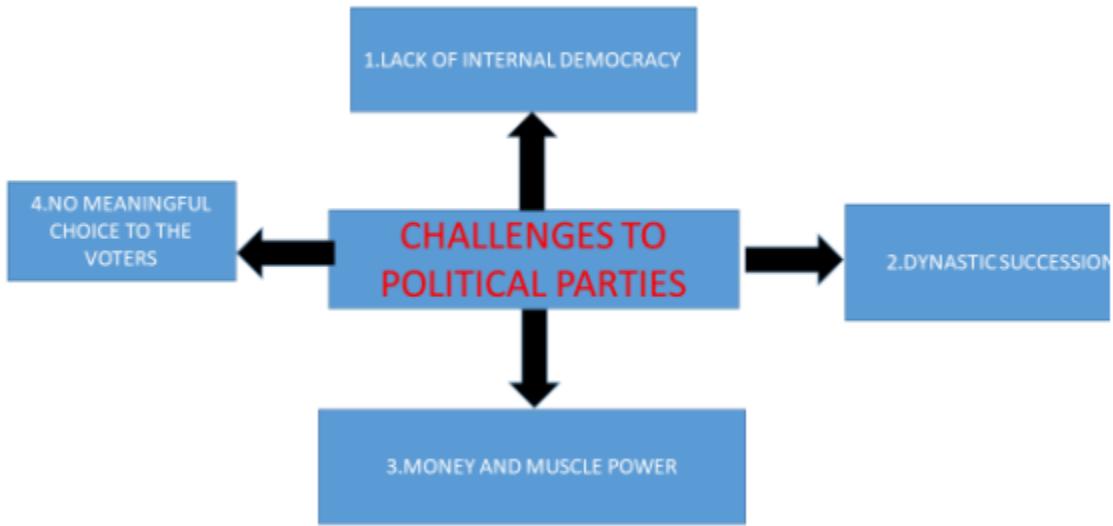
Ensure women participation

CONCEPT MAPPING



PARTY SYSTEM





MCQ TYPE QUESTIONS

1. What does the picture show?



A. Role of one party in America

B. Corporate America controls all major Institution of the country

C. The party's symbol is elephant

D. Multi-party system

2. In countries like India, _____ choose candidates for contesting elections.

A. Top party leaders

B. Members of party

C. Supporters of party

D. Government officers

3 Berlusconi was the Prime Minister of _____. His company owns TV channels, the most important publishing company, a football club (AC Milan).

- A. Italy
- B. France
- C. Poland
- D. Germany

4 Match list I with list II and select the correct answer using the Code below in the lists

List 1 List 2

- 1 Bhartiya Janata Party (BJP): a.1964
- 2 Indian National Congress (INC): b. 1980
- 3 Nationalist Congress Party (NCP) c.1885
- 4 Communist Party of India -Marxist (CPI-M) d. : 1999

- A. 1.b, 2.c, 3. d ,4. a
- B. 1.c, 2.b, 3. d ,4. a
- C. 1.c, 2.a, 3. b ,4. d
- D. 1.b, 2.c, 3. a ,4. D

5 Which of the following challenges to political party is depicted in this cartoon?

- A. Meaningful choice to the voters
- B. Dynastic succession
- C. Money and muscle power
- D. Lack of internal democracy



6 How many numbers of parties are registered with The Election Commission of India?

- A. 7100 Parties
- B. Less than 750 parties
- C. 700 parties
- D. More than 750 parties

7 What is the meaning of ‘Alliance’?

- A. Two parties together form the government.
- B. Leftist and Rightist together form the government.
- C. When state and national parties together form the government.
- D. When several parties in a multiparty system join for the purpose of contesting election and winning power

8 Which of these is a National Party?

- A. INC
- B. CPI
- C. BJP
- D. All of these

9 Match list I with list II and select the correct answer using the Code below in the lists

List 1 List II

- a. Congress party 1.National Democratic Alliance
- b. Bharatiya Janata party 2.State party
- c. Communist party of India 3.United Progressive Alliance
- d. Telugana Rashtra Samiti 4.Left Front

- A . a3, b1,c2,d4
- B . a3,b4, c1,d2
- C .a 3,b1,c4, d2
- D . a4,b3,c1,d2

10 Countries having Bi-party system:

- A India
- B UK
- C China
- D None of these

ASSERTION AND REASON

Two statements are given in the question below as Assertion (A) and Reason (R). Read the statements and choose the appropriate option.

Options

- A. Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A
- C. A is true but R is false.
- D. A is false but R is true

1 Assertion: It is mandatory for every candidate who contests election to file an AFFIDAVIT .

Reason: The Supreme Court passed an order to reduce the influence of money and criminals.

2 Assertion: Political parties are easily one of the most visible institutions in a democracy.

Reason: For most ordinary citizens, democracy is equal to political parties.

3 Assertion:- China doesn't follow One party system

Reason:- In China only the communist party is allowed to rule

4 Assertion A : Only those parties that are recognised as national parties can contest in elections for Parliament

Reason R : Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission.

5 Assertion: India has evolved a multiparty system.

Reason: It is because the social and geographical diversity in such a large country is not easily absorbed by two or even three parties

CASE BASED QUESTIONS

1 Now, it is mandatory for every candidate who contests elections to file an AFFIDAVIT giving details of his property and criminal cases pending against him. The new system has made a lot of information available to the public. But there is no system of check if the information given by the candidates is true. As yet we do not know if it has led to decline in the influence of the rich and the criminals. The Election Commission passed an order making it necessary for political parties to hold their organisational elections and file their income tax returns. The parties have started doing so but sometimes it is mere formality. It is not clear if this step has led to greater internal democracy in political parties. Besides these, many suggestions are often made to reform political parties: A law should be made to regulate the internal affairs of political parties. It should be made compulsory for political parties to maintain a register of its members, to follow its own constitution, to have an independent authority, to act as a judge

in case of party disputes, to hold open elections to the highest posts. It should be made mandatory for political parties to give a minimum number of tickets, about one-third, to women candidates. Similarly, there should be a quota for women in the decision making bodies of the party.

1. It should be made mandatory for political parties to give a minimum number of tickets, about one-third, to ---- -- candidates.

A .Dalits

B Women

C .Youths

D. All the above

2. Who appoints the Chief Election Commissioner of India?

A. Prime Minister

B Governor

C. President

D. None of these

3. There were ----- recognised national parties in the country in 2019.

A. 7

B 6

C 10

D 5

4. A signed document submitted to an officer, where a person makes a sworn statement regarding her personal information is known as-----

A Defection

B Affidavit

C Partisan

D Pledge

2 Bharatiya Janata Party (BJP): Founded in 1980 by reviving the erstwhile Bharatiya Jana Sangh, formed by Syama Prasad Mukherjee in 1951. Wants to build a strong and modern India by drawing inspiration from India's ancient culture and values; and Deendayal Upadhyaya's ideas of integral humanism and Antyodaya. Cultural nationalism (or 'Hindutva') is an important element in its conception of Indian nationhood and politics

Indian National Congress (INC): Popularly known as the Congress Party. One of the oldest parties of the world. Founded in 1885 and has experienced many splits. Played a dominant role in Indian politics at the national and state level for several decades after India's Independence. centrist party (neither rightist nor leftist) in its ideological orientation, the party espouses secularism and welfare of weaker sections and minorities .

Nationalist Congress Party (NCP): Formed in 1999 following a split in the Congress party. Espouses democracy, Gandhian secularism, equity, social justice and federalism. Wants that high offices in government be confined to natural born citizens of the country. A major party in Maharashtra and has a significant presence in Meghalaya, Manipur and Assam. A coalition partner in the state of Maharashtra in alliance with the Congress. Since 2004, a member of the United Progressive Alliance

1.Which party supports Gandhian secularism?

A. INC

B.NCP

C.CPI

D.BSP

2. ----- Political party wants to build a strong and modern India by drawing inspiration from India's ancient culture and values

A NCP

B.BJP

C.INC

D.AITC

3----- Political party espouses secularism and welfare of weaker sections and minorities

A NCP

B.BJP

C.INC

D.AITC

4. -----believes in Marxism-Leninism, secularism and democracy. Opposed to the forces of secessionism and communalism.

A NCP

B.BJP

C.INC

D.CPI

3 Democracies that follow a federal system all over the world tend to have two kinds of political parties: parties that are present in only one of the federal units and parties that are present in several or all units of the federation. This is the case in India as well. There are some countrywide parties, which are called 'national parties'. These parties have their units in various states. But by and large, all these units follow the same policies, programmes and strategy that is decided at the national level. Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission. While the Commission treats all parties equally, it offers some special facilities to large and established parties. These parties are given a unique symbol – only the official candidates of that party can use that election symbol. Parties that get this privilege and some other special facilities are 'recognised' by the Election Commission for this purpose. That is why these parties are called, 'recognised political parties'. The Election Commission has laid down detailed criteria of the proportion of votes and seats that a party must get in order to be a recognised party. A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a State and wins at least two seats is recognised as a State party. A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in Lok Sabha elections or Assembly elections in four States and wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognised as a national party.

1.A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a State and wins at least two seats is recognised as a -----

A . Multi-party

B. Two -party

C. One -party

D. None of these

2. What is the full form of UPA?

a) United progressive alliance

b) Unique public alliance

c)United public alliance

d) Unique progressive alliance

3. Countrywide parties are called -----

A State party

B Regional party

C National party

D All the above

4. Which of the following is a National party?

A. Sikkim Democratic Front

B.CPI-M

C DMK

C. Kerala Congress

4 The inspiration behind the following imaginary narrative is Shri Kishen Patnaik (1930–2004), also known as Kishenji. He was elected as a Member of Parliament from Sambalpur, Odisha in 1962. What did Kishenji mean by an alternative political formation? The question came up in a conversation between Sudha, Karuna, Shaheen and Gracy. All four women had led very powerful people's movements in different parts of the country. They were meeting in a village in Odisha, away from their day-to-day struggles, to think afresh the future of people's movements. The discussion naturally turned to Kishenji, who was regarded as a friend, political philosopher and moral guide by all the movement groups in the country. He had argued that people's movement should embrace politics openly. His argument was simple yet powerful. Movements focused on a single issue are suitable as long as we wish to achieve limited changes in a particular aspect of life. But if we wish to bring about a fundamental social transformation, or basic change even in one aspect of life, we would need a political organisation. People's movement must establish a new political formation to act as a moral force in politics. This was an urgent task, he said, because all the existing political parties had become irrelevant for social transformation. "But Kishenji never clarified what that organisation will be. He talked of an alternative political formation or a third force in politics. But did he mean a political party?" said Gracy. She felt that an old style political party was not the right instrument for social change. Sudha agreed with her. "I have thought about it several times. I agree that all the struggles that we are involved with –the struggle against displacement, against globalisation, against caste and gender oppression and for an alternative kind of development – all this is political. But the moment we form a party, all the goodwill we have earned all these years will be lost. People will think of us as no different from other politicians." "Besides", added Karuna, "we have seen that a lot can be achieved by putting pressure on the existing political parties. We tried putting up candidates in panchayat elections, but the results were not very encouraging. People respect our work, they even adore us, but when it comes to voting they go for the established political parties." Shaheen did not agree with them: "Let us be very clear. Kishenji wanted all the people's movements to

forge a new political party. Of course he wanted this party to be a different kind of a party. He was not for political alternatives, but for an alternative kind of politics.”

1. Who was Kishen Patnaik?

A Member of Legislative assembly from Sambalpur, Odisha in 1962

B Member of Parliament from Sambalpur, Odisha in 1962

C Member of legislative council from Sambalpur, Odisha in 1962

D Member of Parliament from Sambalpur, Odisha in 1982

2. Who were the main activists of this conversation?

A Sudha, Karuna, Shaheen and Mary

B Sudha, Kavya, Shaheen and Gracy

C Sudha, Karuna, Shaheen and Gracy

D Sudha, Kavery, Shaheen and Gracy

3. All four women had led very powerful people's ----- in different parts of the country

A Movements

B. Political parties

C .Clubs

E.Organizations

4. What is the full form of NDA?

A. National Department Alliance

B National Dictator Alliance

C National Democratic Alliance

D National Director Alliance

5 Other than these seven parties, most of the major parties of the country are classified by the Election Commission as ‘State parties’. These are commonly referred to as regional parties. Yet these parties need not be regional in their ideology or outlook. Some of these parties are all India parties that happen to have succeeded only in some states. Parties like the Samajwadi Party and Rashtriya Janata Dal have national level political organisation with units in several states. Some of these parties like Biju Janata Dal, Sikkim Democratic Front, Mizo National Front and Telangana Rashtra Samithi are conscious about their State identity. Over the last three decades, the number and strength of these parties has expanded. This made the Parliament of India politically more and more diverse. No one national party is able to secure on its own a majority in the Lok Sabha, until 2014. As a result, the national parties are compelled to form alliances with State parties. Since 1996, nearly every one of the State parties has got an opportunity to be a part of one or the other national level coalition government. This has contributed to the strengthening of federalism and democracy in our country.

1. Which of the following facilities is offered by the Election Commission to a recognised political party?

A. Party name

- B. Land
- C. Election funds
- D. Unique symbol

2. Biju Janata Dal is a political party of----

- A Punjab
- B Odisha
- C Bihar
- D None of these

3. When was the Rashtriya Janata Dal formed?

- A. 1998
- B. 1995
- C. 1993
- D. 1990

4. State political parties are also known as

- A. National parties
- B. Regional parties
- C. Alliance parties
- D. None of these

2 MARKS QUESTIONS

1 Why political parties are a necessary condition for a democracy?

2 What you mean by partisan?

3 What are the two ways of carrying out political reforms in a democratic country?

4 Give the reason why a multiparty system has evolved in India.

5 What do you understand by a ‘recognised party’?

6 What is defection? Why do MLAs and MPs commit defection?

7 How is dynastic succession related to lack of internal democracy in political parties?

8 Describe the Three Types of Party Systems

9 What is bi-party system?

10 “No party system is ideal for all countries and in all situations.” Justify the statement.

3 MARKS QUESTIONS

What is a multi-party system? Why has India adopted a multi-party system? Explain.

- 2 Describe the three components of a political party
- 3 Describe the various party systems existing in various countries.
- 4 Distinguish between Regional party (State) and National party
- 5 In what way is an alliance different from a coalition government?
- 6 Political parties play major role in democracy. Explain any three points to justify this statement.
- 7 What are the three main functions of the Ruling party?
- 8 What is main difference between a pressure group and a political party?
- 9 Why do political parties involve partisanship?
- 10 Dynastic successions is one of the most serious challenges before the political parties.” Analyse the statement.
- 11 Examine the role of opposition parties in a Democracy.

5 MARKS QUESTIONS

- 1 State the various functions that Political parties perform in a democracy.
- 2 What are the various challenges faced by political parties?
- 3 Lack of internal democracy within parties is a major challenge to political parties all over the world. How far do you agree with it?
- 4 Elucidate some of the recent efforts taken in our country to reform political parties and its leaders.
- 5 Name the national party which was formed under the leader ship of Kanshi Ram . Mention any four features of that party.
- 6 What is a political party? Suggest and explain any four measures to reform political parties.
- 7 ‘Modern democracies cannot exist without political parties.’ Examine the statement.
- 8 What is one-party system? What are its merits and demerits?
- 9 “Increase in the number of states or regional parties strengthened democracy in India.” Comment
- 10 “The growing role of money and muscle power is a major challenge in India.” Explain.

ANSWER KEY

MCQ

- 1 B. Corporate America controls all major Institution of the country
- 2 A. Top party leaders
- 3 A. Italy
- 4 E. 1.b, 2.c, 3. d ,4. a
- 5 C. Money and muscle power
- 6 D. More than 750 parties
- 7 D. When several parties in a multiparty system join for the purpose

of contesting election and winning power

8 D. All of these

9 C .a 3,b1,c4, d2

10 B.UK

ASSERTION AND REASON

1 A .It is Mandatory for every candidate who contests elections to file an Affidavit because the Supreme Court made it mandatory to file an Affidavit to reduce the influence of money and criminals in election.

So Both assertion and Reason are true and reason is the Correct explanation of Assertion

2 A. If you travel to remote parts of our country and speak to the less educated citizens, you could come across people who may not know anything about our Constitution or about the nature of our government. But chances are there that they would know something about our political parties .

3 D .Chine has a One party system and only Communist party is allowed to rule.

4 D .Not only National parties other parties and independent candidates also can contest for the parliament

5 A. India has evolved a multiparty system because of the social and geographical diversity of country.

CASE STUDIES

1 1.B Women

2. C. President

3 A. 7

4. B Affidavit

2 1 B.NCP

2 B.BJP

3 C.INC

4 D.CPI

3 1 D. None of these

2 A. United Progressive Alliance

3 C. National party

4 B.CPI-M

4 1 B Member of Parliament from Sambalpur, Odisha in 1962

2 C Sudha, Karuna, Shaheen and Gracy

3 A . Movements

4 C National Democratic Alliance

5 1 D .Unique symbol

2 B. Odisha

3 A.1998

4 B . Regional parties

Very Short Answer

1 Political parties bring various representatives together to form a responsible Government

2 Partisan: A person who is strongly committed to a party, group or faction. Partisanship is marked by a tendency to take a side and inability to take a balanced view on an issue

3 a). By empowering people.

b). By spreading political awareness

4 It is because the social and geographical diversity in such a large country is not easily absorbed by two or even three parties. No system is ideal for all countries and all situations.

5 A party that gets some privilege such as a unique symbol and other special facilities is called a ‘recognised’ party by the Election Commission.

6 Defection: Changing party allegiance from the party on which a person got elected (to a legislative body) to a different party MLAs and MPs do this in order to become ministers or for cash rewards.

7 When there is a lack of internal democracy in a political party it means that the power to make decisions on behalf of the party rest with one or a few individuals.

These individuals now have an unfair advantage to vest the power to make decisions in people who are close to them or their family members.

8 In some countries, only one party is allowed to control and run the government. These are called one-party systems.

In some countries, power usually changes between two main parties. Such a party system is called two-party system

If several parties compete for power, and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming to power either on their own strength or in alliance with others, we call it a multiparty system.

9 In countries, like USA and UK, power usually changes between two main parties. It is bi-party system. Several other parties exist, contest elections and win a few seats in the elections but only the two main parties have a chance to form a government

10 Parties are a necessary condition for a democracy. The rise of political parties is directly linked to the emergence of representative democracies. Party system is not something any country can choose. It evolves depending on the nature of society, its social and regional divisions, its history of politics and system of elections. Each country develops a party system that is conditioned by its special circumstances

3 MARKS

1 A system in which a number of parties compete for power, and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming to power either on their own strength or in alliance with others, is called a multiparty system. India is a multi-party system. In this system, the government is formed by various parties coming together in a coalition. When several parties in a multi-party system join hands for the purpose of

contesting elections and winning power, it is called an alliance or a front. For example, in India there were three major alliances in 2004 parliamentary elections—the National Democratic Alliance, the United Progressive Alliance and the Left Front. This system on one hand leads to political instability but at the same time, allows for a variety of interests and opinions to enjoy political representation. Each country develops a party system that is suitable for its special circumstances. India has evolved as a multi-party system because its social and geographical diversity cannot be absorbed by two or three parties. Thus, such representation strengthens democracy. Multi-party system facilitates representation of regional and geographical diversities.

2 Components of a political party are:

The leaders,

The active members

The followers.

3 1. In some countries, only one party is allowed to control and run the government. These are called ONE-PARTY systems.eg China

2. In some countries, power usually changes between two main parties. Such a party system is called TWO-PARTY system. The United States of America and the United Kingdom are examples of two-party system

3. MULTIPARTY SYSTEM(several parties) eg India

4 STATE PARTY.

A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a State and wins at least two seats is recognised as a State party.

NATIONAL PARTY .

A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in Lok Sabha elections or Assembly elections in four States and wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognised as a national party.

5 ALLIANCE

When several parties in a multi-party system join hands for the purpose of contesting elections and winning power, it is called an alliance or a front.

COALITION.

When no single party gets a clear majority in the election and the government is formed by various parties coming together, it is called a coalition.

6 . 1Parties contest elections

2 Parties put forward different policies and programmes and the voters choose from them.

3 Parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country.

4 Parties form and run governments

5 Those parties that lose in the elections play the role of opposition

6 Parties shape public opinion

7 1.Ruling parties Play a major role in making laws for the country

2. Form and run the Government

3.Recruit and train the leaders

4. make the ministers to run the government

8 A pressure group is an organized or unorganized body that seeks to promote its interests.

A political party is a body that seeks to attain political power by contesting elections

9 Partisanship is marked by a tendency to take a side and inability to take a balanced view on an issue. Parties reflect fundamental political divisions in a society. Parties are a part of the society and they involve partisanship.

10 Most political parties do not practise open and transparent procedures for their functioning. So there are very few ways for an ordinary worker to rise to the top in a party. Those who happen to be the leaders are in a position of unfair advantage as they favour people close to them or even their family members. In many parties we see a trend of dynastic succession. The top positions are always controlled by members of a particular family, which is unfair to other members of the party, and bad for democracy. This is so because people who do not have adequate experience or popular support come to occupy positions of power. More than loyalty to party principles and policies, personal loyalty to the leader becomes more important. This tendency is seen all over the world, even in older democracies.

11 Opposition parties play an important role in democracies.

1. They ensure political party in power does not misuse or abuse its power;

2. They expose the weaknesses of the ruling party;

3. They also keep a close vigil on the bills and expenditure of the government

5 MARKS

1.1.PARTIES CONTEST ELECTIONS

2 PARTIES PUT FORWARD DIFFERENT POLICIES AND PROGRAMMES AND THE

VOTERS CHOOSE FROM THEM.

3 PARTIES PLAY A DECISIVE ROLE IN MAKING LAWS FOR A COUNTRY.

4 PARTIES FORM AND RUN GOVERNMENTS

5 THOSE PARTIES THAT LOSE IN THE ELECTIONS PLAY THE ROLE OF OPPOSITION

6 PARTIES SHAPE PUBLIC OPINION.

7 PARTIES PROVIDE PEOPLE ACCESS TO GOVERNMENT MACHINERY AND WELFARE SCHEMES IMPLEMENTED BY GOVERNMENTS

2 1. LACK OF INTERNAL DEMOCRACY WITHIN PARTIES

2. DYNASTIC SUCCESSION.

3. GROWING ROLE OF MONEY AND MUSCLE POWER IN PARTIES,

4. LACK OF MEANINGFUL CHOICE TO THE VOTERS

3 The power is concentrated in one or few leaders at the top parties do not keep membership registers parties do not hold organizational meetings they do not conduct internal elections regularly ordinary members do not get sufficient information on what happens inside the party.

4 Constitution was amended to stop defection. Supreme Court passed an order to submit an affidavit giving details of candidates property details and criminal cases pending against him. The Election Commission made it mandatory for political parties to hold organisational elections and file their income tax returns. One third seats are reserved for women in local self-government

5 1. Kanshi Ram formed Bahujan Samaj (BSP) party in 1984 for the welfare of bahujan samaj which included dalits, adivasis, OBCs and religious minorities,

2. It was inspired from the ideas and teachings of Sahu Maharaj, Mahatma Phule, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar and others.

3. It has main base in UP, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Uttarakhand, Delhi and Punjab.

4. Stands for the cause of securing the interests and welfare of the dalits and oppressed people

5. It has formed government in UP several times with the help of other parties,

6 A political party is a group of people who come together to contest elections and hold power in the government. The following reforms could be suggested in order to strengthen parties so that they perform their functions well.

- Regulation of party's internal affairs: A law should be made to regulate the internal affairs of political parties. It should be made compulsory for political parties to maintain a register of their members, to follow their own constitution, to have an independent authority, etc.

- State funding: There should be state funding of elections. The government should give money to parties to support their election expenses to avoid corruption.

- Pressure of public opinion: Political parties can be reformed if people put pressure on them. This can be done through petitions, propaganda and agitations. Pressure groups and media play an important role in it.

- Ensure women participation: It should be made mandatory for all political parties to allot one-third of the tickets to women to ensure their decisive voice in decision making. If the above mentioned suggestions are taken into consideration, it can be ensured that these could lead to some improvement in the working of the political parties.

7 In a democratic set-up, political parties are required because without political parties:

- Every candidate in the elections will be independent. No promises could be made and the utility of the government formed will remain uncertain.

- No one will be responsible for running the country.

- Elected representatives will only be accountable to their constituency

- There will be no agency to gather and present different views on various issues to the government.

- No one will be responsible for bringing various representatives together so as to form a responsible government. No mechanism to support the government, make policies and justify or oppose them

8 In some countries only one-party is allowed to control and run the government. These are called one-party system. For example, in China only the Communist Party is allowed to rule.

Merits:

1. It helps in the establishment of stable governments.

2. It helps in the fast development of the country as there are no conflicts among the classes.
3. The administration becomes efficient as the powers are concentrated in the hands of party leaders.
4. There is unity and discipline in the country.
5. Time is not wasted in unnecessary criticism and propaganda.

Demerits:

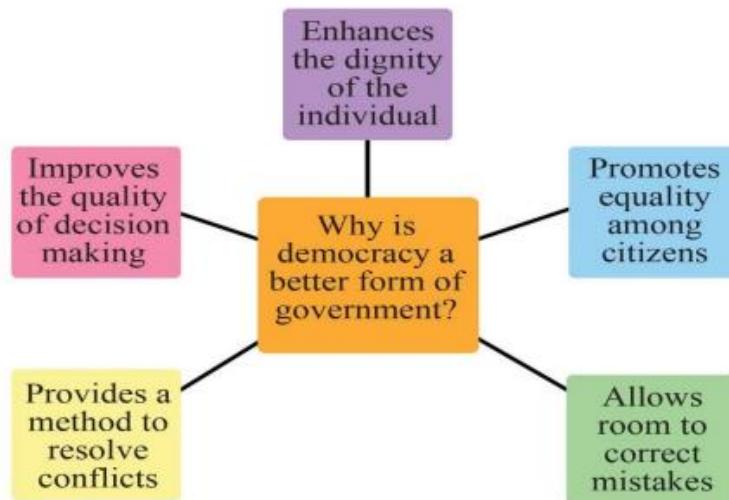
1. There is no freedom of expression. No one can speak against the party.
2. Democracy is eroded and one-party dictatorship is established.
3. There is no respect for the views of different classes and interests.
4. The administration becomes irresponsible due to lack of criticism and opposition. Political and social freedoms are crushed. This hinders the development of the personality

9 India is federal country and the powers of the Government are divided into different levels. Decentralization of power means expansion of democracy. If the number of state or regional parties is increasing it means the people of our country are becoming more aware and they are not happy with the working of existing political parties. In these days regional parties have a say in political policies as they win elections in their states. The national political parties have to take help of the regional parties to win the elections or to form the government. The rise of coalition governments broadened the concept of popular participation. It also strengthens the federal system of the democracy.

- 10 1. Since parties are focussed only on winning elections, they tend to use short-cuts to win elections.
2. They tend to nominate those candidates who have or can raise lots of money.
3. Rich people and companies who give funds to the parties tend to have influence on the policies and decisions of the party.
4. In some cases, parties support criminals who can win elections.
5. Democrats all over the world are worried about the increasing role of rich people and big companies in democratic politics

OUTCOMES OF DEMOCRACY

OUTCOMES OF DEMOCRACY				
POLITICAL OUTCOME	ECONOMIC OUTCOME		SOCIAL OUTCOME	
Accountable, Responsive and Legitimate government	Economic growth and development	Reduction of inequality and poverty	Accommodation of social diversity	Dignity and freedom of the citizens



SUMMARY

Democracy is a form of government where the leaders are elected by the people and elected leaders take major decisions. Democracy is considered to be a better form of government because it promotes equality among citizens, enhances the dignity of the individuals, improves the quality of decision making, provides a method to resolve conflicts and allows room to correct mistakes. But if we want to know the real success of a democratic government we have to examine the outcomes of democracy. These outcomes are the following:

1. POLITICAL OUTCOME

A. Accountable, responsive and legitimate government: Unlike other forms of governments, democratic governments are more accountable and responsive since they are elected by the people for a period of 4 or 5 years. In a democracy governments are chosen through regular, free and fair elections. Laws are made and executed with proper procedures and discussions. Hence it is transparent and legitimate.

2. ECONOMIC OUTCOME

A. Economic growth and development: In practice many democracies did not fulfil this expectation.

Dictatorships have slightly higher rate of economic growth than democracies in the last fifty years. But economic growth depends on various factors like the size of the population of the country, global situation, cooperation from other countries and priorities adopted by the country.

B. Reduction of inequality and poverty: Democracies are based on political equality. All individuals have one vote with one value in electing representatives. Parallel to this political equality we find growing economic inequalities too.

3. SOCIAL OUTCOME

A. Accommodation of social diversity: Democracy helps its citizens to lead a peaceful and harmonious life by accommodating various social divisions. Democracy evolves mechanisms to negotiate the differences between various communities and castes.

B. Dignity and freedom of the citizens:

Democracy stands much superior in promoting dignity and freedom of the individual. The passion for respect and freedom are the basis of democracy.

Democracy- its examination never gets over. As democracy passes one test, it produces another test. People constantly demand more benefits in a democracy.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

1 Democracy is considered as a better form of government because

- A. It ensures economic development.
- B. It guarantees economic equality
- C. It provides a method to resolve conflict.
- D. Option A and B

2 Identify the correct statement about democracy.

- A. It is free from corruption
- B. Democracy is free from social conflict.
- C. It is successful in eradicating poverty.
- D. It respects the individual dignity of citizens.

Greeting



3. The given image shows the effect of democratic politics on social differences. Which options are more appropriate in context of democracy?

- A. Democracy suppresses internal social differences.
- B. Democracies lead to peaceful and harmonious life among Citizens
- C. Democracies accommodate various social divisions
- D. Option B and C

4 A democratic government is elected by citizens and enjoys the confidence and trust of the citizens. This is known as

- A. A legitimate government,
- B. A transparent government
- C. A secular government
- D. A stable government.

5.

Table 1
Rates of economic growth for different countries (1950-2000)

Type of regimes and countries	Growth Rate
All democratic regimes	3.95
All dictatorial regimes	4.42
Poor countries under dictatorship	4.34
Poor countries under democracy	4.28

Read the given table carefully and select the correct statements from the given options:

- A. Dictatorial regimes have a slightly better record of economic growth.
- B. Democratic regimes have better economic growth.

- C. Poor countries under democracy have more economic growth.
- D. It is better to prefer dictatorship as it has better economic development.

6 Choose the correctly matched pair from the following

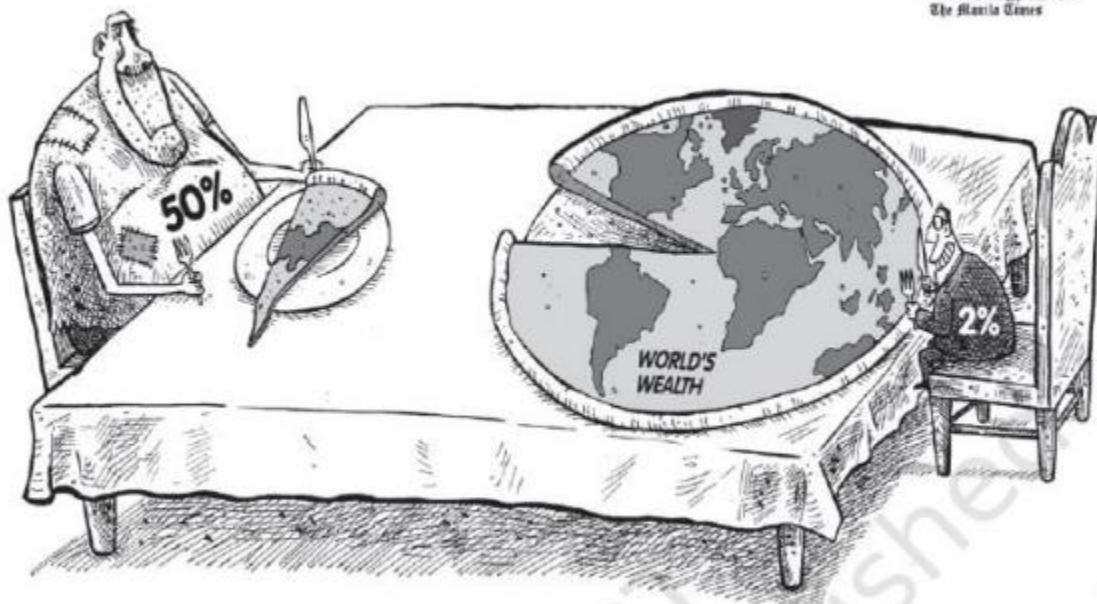
- A Pakistan Democracy is preferred over dictatorship
- B Bangladesh More than half of its population lives in poverty
- C Belgium Has failed in negotiating differences among ethnic populations
- D Sri Lanka Here majority worked with the minority to produce a harmonious social life

7 Study the given cartoon. Select the incorrect statements from the given options:

- A. Half of the people in the world are poor and they possess very less resources.
- B. People in several poor countries are now dependent on the rich countries even for food supplies.
- C. In actual life, democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities
- D. 2% of the poor people possess 50% resources of the world.

World's Wealth Owned by a Few

François S&P
www.francois-yule.com
The Berlin Games



8 'Equal treatment of women is a necessary ingredient of a democratic society. This means that:

- A. Most societies across the world are now increasingly women dominated
- B. Women are actually always treated with respect.
- C. It is now easier for women to legally wage struggle for their rights.
- D. Women are not ill-treated anywhere in the world.

9 Democracy stands much superior to any other form of government in-----

- A. Reducing economic inequalities.
- B. Removing corruption.
- C. Bringing higher rate of economic growth
- D. Promoting dignity and freedom of the individual

10 Which of these factors do not play a role in the economic development of a country?

- A. Size of the population
- B. The language of the country.
- C. Cooperation from other countries.
- D. Economic priorities adopted by the Government.

ASSERTION AND REASON TYPE QUESTIONS

11 In the questions given below, there are two statements marked as Assertion (A) and Reason (R). Read the statements and choose the correct code.

Assertion (A): Democracies are based on political equality.

Reason (R): All individuals have equal weight in electing representatives.

- A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is correct but R is wrong.
- D. A is wrong but R is correct

12 Assertion (A): Non-democratic regimes often turn a blind eye to or suppress internal social differences.

Reason (R): They accommodate various social divisions.

- A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is correct but R is wrong.
- D. A is wrong but R is correct

13 Assertion (A) Democracy transforms people from the status of a subject into that of a citizen.

Reason (R) Most individuals believe that their vote makes a difference to the way the governments run and to their own self-interest

- A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is correct but R is wrong.
- D. A is wrong but R is correct

SOURCE BASED MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

14 Read the case/source given and answer the questions that follow by choosing the correct option.

If you wanted to measure democracies on the basis of this expected outcome, you would look for the following practices and institutions: regular, free and fair elections; open public debate on major policies and legislations; and citizens' right to information about the government and its functioning. The actual performance of democracies shows a mixed record on this. Democracies have had greater success in setting up regular and free elections and in setting up conditions for open public debate. But most democracies fall short of elections that provide a fair chance to everyone and in subjecting every decision to public debate. Democratic governments do not have a very good record when it comes to sharing information with citizens.

(i) To measure democracies on the basis of expected outcomes which of the following practices and institutions would one look for?

- A. Regular, free and fair elections
- B. Open public debate on major policies
- C. Citizens' right to information about the government.
- D. All of the above.

(ii). If a government is sharing information with citizens, then we get which type of government?

- A. An unstable government
- B. A democratic government
- C. A stable government
- D. A transparent government

(iii) Which among the following outcomes do democracies have greater success?

- A. Regular and free elections
- B. Elections that provide a fair chance to everyone
- C. Sharing information with citizens.
- D. All of the above.

(iv). Which of the following statements is correct?

- A. Democratic governments are very good in sharing information with citizens.
- B. Most democracies succeeded in subjecting every decision to public debate.
- C. The actual performance of democracies shows a mixed record in outcomes of democracy.
- E. All the above.

CASE BASED QUESTION (Four Marks)

1 Read the given text and answer the given questions.

Let us think in terms of costs. Imagine a government that may take decisions very fast. But it may take decisions that are not accepted by the people and may therefore face problems. In contrast, the democratic government will take more time to follow procedures before arriving at a decision. But because it has followed procedures, its decisions may be both more acceptable to the people and more effective. So, a citizen who wants to know if a

decision was taken through the correct procedures can find this out. She has the right and the means to examine the process of decision making. This is known as transparency. This factor is often missing from non-democratic government. Therefore, when we are trying to find out the outcomes of democracy, it is right to expect democracy to produce a government that follows procedures and is accountable to the people.

(i) Why the decision taken by a democratic government is more acceptable? 1

(ii) Which factor is often missing from a non-democratic government? 1

(iii) To what extent democracy is transparent? Give reasons. 2

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS (One Mark)

16 List out any two merits of democracy.

17.

Read the data in the table given below and answer the question that follows:

Inequality of income in selected countries

Name of the Countries	% share of national income	
	Top 20 %	Bottom 20 %
South Africa	64.8	2.9
Brazil	63.0	2.6
Russia	53.7	4.4
USA	50.0	4.0
United Kingdom	45.0	6.0
Denmark	34.5	9.6
Hungary	34.4	10.0

Which two democratic countries have very high degree of inequalities?

18 Why is democracy unable to guarantee economic development?

19 What are the common features of democracy in most of the countries of the world?

20 When democracy is considered successful?

21 Why is there an overwhelming support to democracy all over the world?

22 ‘The fact that people are complaining is itself a testimony to the success of democracy’ Prove the statement by giving two valid reasons.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS (Three Marks)

23 What are the differences between democracy and dictatorship in the decision making process?

24 How do democratic governments ensure transparency? Explain any three points.

25 “Democratic government is legitimate government?” Support the statement with arguments

26 Democracy accommodates social diversities.” Support the statement with examples.

- 27 Explain any 3 ways in which democracies have been able to reduce inequality and poverty.
- 28 On the basis of which values will it be a fair expectation that democracy should produce a harmonious social life? Explain
- 29 ‘Democracy stands much superior in promoting dignity and freedom of the citizens.’ Justify the statement
- 30 Analyse any three values that make democracy better.
- 31 Most distinctive feature of democracy is that its examination never gets over.” Support the statement with appropriate arguments.
- 32 What is the basis of democracy and what are its advantages?
- LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (Five Marks)**
- 33 “Democratic system is better than any other form of government.” Support the statement with examples
- 34 How does democracy produce an accountable, responsive and legitimate government?
- 35 “In actual life, democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities.” Explain the statement giving an example.
- 36 What are the factors which are responsible for the economic development of the country? Does democracy provide guarantee of economic development?
- 37 Explain how democracies lead to peaceful and harmonious life among citizens.

ANSWER KEY

MCQ		
1	C.	
2	D.	
3	D.	
4	A.	
5	A.	
6	B.	
7	D.	
8	C.	
9	D.	
10	B.	
ASSERTION AND REASON TYPE QUESTIONS		
11	<p>A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A. Democracies are based on the principle of political equality. It provides one vote with equal value to all its adult citizen.</p>	
12	<p>B. A is correct but R is wrong. A is correct because Non democratic regimes do not appreciate social differences rather they suppress these differences. R is wrong because they do not accommodate social differences.</p>	
13	<p>A. Democracy transforms people from the status of a Subject into that of a citizen. Thus, most of the individuals believe in a democracy that their vote makes a difference to the way the governments run and their own self-interest. Hence, both A and R statements justify each other</p>	
SOURCE BASED MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS		
14	<p>(i) D. All of the above. (ii) D. A transparent government (iii) A. Regular and free elections. (iv) C. The actual performance of democracies shows a mixed record in outcomes of democracy.</p>	
15	<p>(i) Democratic governments follow procedures before arriving at a decision. 1 (ii) Transparency. 1 (iii) Democracy ensures that decision making will be based on norms and procedure. Every citizen has the right and means to examine the process of decision making. 2 (Any other two relevant points)</p>	

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS (Two Marks)

16	Promotes equality among citizens; Enhances the dignity of the individual; Improves the quality of decision-making; Provides a method to resolve conflicts; and Allows room to correct mistakes (Any two)	
17	South Africa and Brazil.	
18	Economic development depends on several factors: country's population size, global situation, The Rich Get Buff cooperation from other countries, economic priorities adopted by the country, etc.	
19	They have formal constitutions, they hold elections, they have parties and they guarantee rights of citizens.	
20	The democracy is considered successful when the rulers are elected by the people and take all major decision in favour of all people. Elections offer a free choice and opportunity to the people. Choice available to all the people is based on political equality.	
21	Because it is accountable responsive and legitimate government. Promotes equality among citizens; Enhances the dignity of the individual (Any two)	
22	It shows that people have developed awareness and the ability to expect and to look critically at power It shows the it transforms people from the status of a subject into that of a citizen.	

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (Three Marks)

23	<p>Democracy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation (ii) Decisions are acceptable to people and are more effective. (iii) A citizen has the right and the means to examine the process of decision-making. There is transparency. <p>Autocracy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Do not have to bother about majorities and/or public opinion, thus can be quick and efficient in decision-making. (ii) May take decisions not accepted by the people. (iii) Transparency is missing from a non-democratic form of government. There is no accountability of the government to the people. 	
24	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Democratic government ensures that the decision-making process is based on proper norms and procedures. (ii) Citizens have the right to examine the process of decision making. (iii) A democratic government develops mechanisms for the citizens to hold the government accountable and mechanism for citizens to take part in decision making whenever they think fit. 	

25	<p>(I) A democratic government is called legitimate government because it is people's own government.</p> <p>(b) It may be slow, less efficient and not very responsive and clean, but it is people's government.</p> <p>(c) People wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them. Democracy's ability to generate its own support makes it more legitimate. People of South Asia, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, India, Pakistan and Nepal have no doubt about the suitability of democracy for their own country.</p>	
26	<p>i Democracies develop a procedure to reduce the possibility of social differences becoming explosive or violent.</p> <p>ii No society can fully and permanently resolve conflicts among different groups. But we can certainly learn to respect these differences and can evolve a mechanism to negotiate these differences.</p> <p>iii Ability to handle social differences divisions and conflicts is thus a definite plus point of democratic regimes iv Example: Belgium - has successfully negotiated differences among its ethnic population.</p>	
27	<p>1. Democracy gives equal rights to the people; it does not discriminate on the basis of sex, religion, color, caste etc.</p> <p>3. Democracy provides equal opportunity for economic activities</p> <p>3. In order to reduce poverty and inequality democracies made efforts to promote a more transparent form of government and thus provide people with rights such as Right to Information etc.</p>	
28	<p>1) A democratic country looks into the needs and aspirations of every section of society.</p> <p>2) It is also able to handle social conflicts, divisions and differences.</p> <p>3) Accommodating the demands of the underprivileged, the backward sections of the society and the minority communities through democratic principles, helps in building a more inclusive and a harmonious society.</p> <p>(Any other relevant points)</p>	
29	<p>(i) The passion for respect and freedom are basis of democracy.</p> <p>(ii) Democracy has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunity.</p> <p>(iii) Long struggles by women have got them respect and equal treatment. In India, 1/3rd of seats have been reserved for women in local bodies.</p>	
30	<p>(i) Provides equality among citizens. (ii) Enhances the dignity of the individual. (iii) Improves the quality of decision making. (iv) Provides methods to resolve conflicts. (v) Allows to correct mistakes. (vi) Guarantees rights of citizens. (Any three points)</p>	

31	<p>(i) As people get some benefits of democracy, they ask for more.</p> <p>(ii) People always come up with more expectations from the democratic set up.</p> <p>(iii) They also have complaints against democracy. The government always has to satisfy their public by fulfilling their demands or else they get removed.</p>	
32	<p>Democracy is based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation. Deliberation and negotiation have an advantage as they ensure that the decisions taken are acceptable to all the people.</p> <p>These deliberations and negotiation may make the decision late but they provide quality decisions.</p>	
Long Answer questions (Five Marks)		
33	<p>Democratic system is better than any other form of government because of following reasons.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) It promotes equality among citizens. E.g. Rule of law (ii) It enhances the dignity of the individual. E.g. Fundamental rights. (iv) It improves the quality of decision making. E.g. Discussion and debate in various platforms (v) It provides a method to resolve conflicts. (vi) If allows room to correct mistakes. (Explain any 5 points with examples) 	
34	<p>Democracy produces an accountable government because it provides regular, free and fair elections regularly. Open discussions are held on all major issues and legislations.</p> <p>Democracy gives its citizens the right to information about the government and its functioning.</p> <p>Democracy provides a responsive government as it is formed by elected representatives of the people. These representatives discuss the problems of the society and make policies and programmes accordingly. The representatives also ensure that the programmes are implemented.</p> <p>Democracies follow a constitution, so they are legitimate. The laws of the country are applicable to everyone, even to the government members. Free and fair elections are held in democracies and the people have the power to eliminate parties they are not happy with, in the next election. (Any 5 points)</p>	
35	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) The wealth and means are accumulated in hands of a few people and their share in the total income of the country has been increasing. (ii) However, the people at the bottom of society find it difficult to meet even their basic needs of life such as food, clothing, house, education and health. Not only that, their incomes have been declining. (iii) The deprived people are a large ratio of voters and no party will like to lose their votes. 	

	<p>(iv) Yet democratically elected governments do not appear to be attentive to the cause of the poor.</p> <p>(v) Thus democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities. (Any 5 points)</p>	
36	<p>Economic development depends on several factors: country's population size, global situation, The Rich Get Buff cooperation from other countries, economic priorities adopted by the country, etc.</p> <p>Most of the countries were ruled and exploited by big powers. We cannot say that democracy is a guarantee of economic development. But we can expect democracy not to lag behind dictatorships in this respect. (Any 5 points)</p>	
37	<p>Only the Democratic government is a form of government which provides accommodation to social differences and conflicts by making everybody learn how to respect every individual's opinion as differences can never be suppressed completely.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Democracy ensures inclusion of every group including minorities and its interests in the decision making. • It reduces the probability of violence due to social differences and conflicts between different kinds of people. • It provides right to equality, equality before the law, and equal opportunities of work and prohibition of discrimination on the grounds of religion, race, caste, gender or place of birth to every citizen or individual. • It also ensures various other fundamental rights of the citizen. <p>(Any 5 points)</p>	

DEVELOPMENT

SUMMARY -

DEVELOPMENT - Development is defined as a situation in which all the aspirations of people get fulfilled
WHAT DEVELOPMENT PROMISES - (DIFFERENT PEOPLE, DIFFERENT GOALS) - Different persons can have different developmental goals. They seek things that are most important for them. What may be development for one may not be development for the other. It may even be destructive for the other.

INCOME AND OTHER GOALS- The developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about other important things in life. People desire regular work, better wages, and decent price for their crops or other products that they produce (They want more income). Besides seeking more income, people also seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security, and respect of others. (Things that are not easily measured but they mean a lot).

NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT (Development of nation)- Different persons can have different as well as conflicting notions of a country's development. While thinking about national development thinking about fair and just path for all, better way of doing things, benefit of any idea for total number of people is also important.

HOW TO COMPARE DIFFERENT COUNTRIES OR STATES –

1. Usually, we take one or more important characteristics of persons and compare them based on these characteristics.
2. For comparing countries, their income is considered to be one of the most important attributes.
3. Countries with higher income are considered more developed than others with less income.
4. The income of the country is the income of all the residents of the country. This gives us the total income of the country.
5. For comparison between countries, total income is not a useful measure because countries have different populations.
6. Hence, we compare the average income which is total income of the country divided by its total population. The average income is also called per capita income.
7. In World Development Report brought out by the World Bank, this
8. Countries with per capita income of USD 12056 per annum and above in 2017, are called rich countries and those with per capita income of USD 955 or less are called low-income countries.
9. India comes in the category of low middle-income countries because its per capita income in 2017 was just USD1820 per income.

INCOME AND OTHER CRITERIA- When we think of a nation or a region, we may, besides average income, think of other equally important attributes. If we study Table 1.3 that gives the per capita income of Haryana, Kerala and Bihar, we find that of the three, Haryana has the highest per capita. So, if per capita income were to be used as the measure of development, Haryana will be considered the most developed and Bihar the least developed state of the three but if we study table 1.4 Kerala performs well in all three categories i.e., Infant Mortality Rate, literacy rate and net attendance Ratio.

PUBLIC FACILITIES- income by itself is not a completely adequate indicator of material goods and services that citizens are able to use. for many of the important things in life the best way, also the cheapest way, is to provide these goods and services collectively. Kerala has a low Infant Mortality Rate because it has adequate provision of basic health and educational facilities. Similarly, in some states, the Public Distribution System (PDS) functions well. Health and nutritional status of people of such states is certainly likely to be better.

HUMAN DEVELOPMENT REPORT- Human Development Report published by UNDP compares countries based on the educational levels of the people, their health status and per capita income.

1. HDI stands for Human Development Index. HDI ranks in table 1.6 are out of 189 countries in all.
2. Life Expectancy at birth denotes, as the name suggests, average expected length of life of a person at the time of birth.
3. Per Capita Income is calculated in dollars for all countries so that it can be compared. It is also done in a way so that every dollar would buy the same amount of goods and services in any country.

SUSTAINABILITY OF DEVELOPMENT-

1. Since the second half of the twentieth century, a number of scientists have been warning that the present type and levels of development are not sustainable.
2. Resources are replenished by nature as in the case of crops and plants.
3. In the case of groundwater, if we use more than what is being replenished by rain then we would be overusing these resources.
4. Consequences of environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries; this issue is no longer region or nation-specific.
5. Sustainability of developments comparatively a new area of knowledge in which scientists, economists, philosophers and other social scientists are working together.

OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. Which of the following is not true about development?
 - a. Different people usually have same goals.
 - b. Different people can have different goals.
 - c. Different people can have different as well as conflicting goals.
 - d. Different people can have different as well as conflicting goals regarding national development.

Answer - a

2. Which statement does not justify the need for provision of public facilities
 - a. Income itself indicate the ability to utilize goods and services
 - b. Public facilities are provided because people need them
 - c. Providing public facilities collectively reduces costs
 - d. Income itself cannot indicate the ability to utilize goods and services

Answer- a

3. Which one of the following is not a base for preparation of Human Development Index (HDI)
 - a. Literacy rate
 - b. Life expectancy
 - c. Industrialization
 - d. Per capita income

Answer- c

4. Which of the following is the most important component for comparing different countries
 - a. Resources
 - b. Youth in population
 - c. Per capita income
 - d. Life expectancy

Answer- c

5. Which criteria is used by World Bank for classifying countries?

- a. Literacy Rate
- b. Life Expectancy
- c. Enrolment percentage
- d. Per Capita income

Answer- d

6. Kerala has low infant mortality rate because it has

- a. Low provision of basic health and educational facilities
- b. Adequate provision of basic health and educational facilities
- c. High mortality rate among elderly people
- d. None of the above

Answer- b

7. Body mass index is used to calculate

- a. Nourishment level
- b. Body growth
- c. Only a
- d. Both a and b

Answer- d

8. Assume there are five families in a country. The average per capita income of these families is Rs 10000. If the income of three families is Rs 9500, Rs 10500, Rs 10200 and Rs 9800 respectively, what is the income of the fifth family?

- a. Rs 10000
- b. Rs 10500
- c. Rs 20220
- d. Rs 5800

Answer - a

9. Which of the following is not a reason for a person which will not prevent him from joining a job which pay high salary?

- a. Job security
- b. Work environment
- c. Facilities for family
- d. Power

Answer- d

10. Which of the following is true when industrialists want more dam to get more electricity but tribals oppose it?

- a. Different persons can have different developmental goals
- b. What may be development for one may not be development for the other.
- c. For development, people look at a mix of goals.
- d. Different persons could have different as well as conflicting notions of a country's development.

Answer- b

CASE/SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS

1. Read the paragraph given below and answer the questions that follows

A vessel dumped 500 tons of liquid toxic wastes into open-air dumps in a city and in the surrounding sea. This happened in a city called Abidjan in Ivory Coast, country in Africa. The fumes from the highly toxic waste caused nausea, skin rashes, fainting, diarrhea etc. After a month seven persons were dead, twenty in hospital and twenty-six thousand treated for symptoms of poisoning. A multinational company dealing in petroleum and metals had contracted a local company of the Ivory Coast to dispose the toxic waste from its ship.

- 1.1 Which company should be held responsible for degrading health in Abidjan

- a. Multinational company
- b. Local company
- c. Only a
- d. Both a and b

Answer- d

- 1.2 Which of the following is true about the situation in Abidjan

- a. Different people have different development goals
- b. For development people look at a mix of goals
- c. What may be development for one may be destruction for other
- d. Only b

Answer- c

- 1.3 What should be the development goal for Ivory Coast

- a. Better health facilities
- b. Strict laws for waste disposal and management
- c. Only a
- d. Both a and b

Answer- d

- 1.4 Who are the people who did not benefited

- a. Owners of Multinational company
- b. Owners of Local company
- c. People of Abidjan city
- d. None of the above

Answer- c

2. Read the paragraph given below and answer the questions that follows

“Recent evidence suggests that the groundwater is under serious threat of overuse in many parts of the country. About 300 districts have reported a water level decline of over 4 meters during the past 20 years. Nearly one-third of the country is overusing their groundwater reserves. In another 25 years, 60 per cent of the country would be doing the same if the present way of using this resource continues. Groundwater overuse is particularly found in the agriculturally prosperous regions of Punjab and Western U.P., hard rock plateau areas of central and south India, some coastal areas and the rapidly growing urban settlements.”

2.1 Nearly one-third of the country is overusing their groundwater reserves. In another 25 years what percentage will be overusing their groundwater reserves?

- a. 50

- b. 40
- c. 60
- d. 20

Answer- c

2.2 Which of the following is not a region where Groundwater overuse is visible?

- a. Maharashtra
- b. Punjab
- c. Rajasthan
- d. South India

Answer- c

2.3 Which of the following reason is mentioned in paragraph for overuse of groundwater.

- a. Domestic use
- b. Industrial use
- c. Agricultural use
- d. Construction work in summer

Answer- c

2.4 About _____ districts have reported a water level decline of over _____ meters during the past 20 years.

- a. 200, 5
- b. 150, 20
- c. 25, 60
- d. 300, 4

Answer- d

3. Study the table given above and answer the questions that follows

3.1 Which state perform worst in all categories

a. **TABLE 1.4 SOME COMPARATIVE DATA ON HARYANA, KERALA AND BIHAR**

	State	Infant Mortality Rate per 1,000 live births (2017)	Literacy Rate %	Net Attendance Ratio (per 100 persons) secondary stage (age 14 and 15 years) 2013-14
			2011	
	Haryana	30	82	61
	Kerala	10	94	83
	Bihar	35	62	43

Sources : Economic Survey 2018–19, P. A160, Government of India; National Sample Survey Organisation (Report No. 575)

Explanation of some of the terms used in this table:

Infant Mortality Rate (or **IMR**) indicates the number of children that die before the age of one year as a proportion of 1000 live children born in that particular year.

Literacy Rate measures the proportion of literate population in the 7-and-above age group.

Net Attendance Ratio is the total number of children of age group 14 and 15 years attending school as a percentage of total number of children in the same age group.

Haryana

- b. Kerala
- c. Bihar

d. Both Bihar and Haryana

Answer- c

3.2 Which state perform best in all categories

- a. Haryana
- b. Kerala
- c. Bihar
- d. Both Bihar and Kerala

Answer- b

3.3 Infant mortality rate indicate

- a. Death rate of children before age of two years
- b. Birth rate of children per year
- c. Death rate of children before age of one years
- d. Death of children before age of five years

Answer- c

4. Human Development Report published by UNDP compares countries based on the educational levels of the people their health status and per capita income. Study the table given below and answer the questions that follow.

4.1 The table shows data of India and its neighbors taken from Human Development Report _____

TABLE 1.6 SOME DATA REGARDING INDIA AND ITS NEIGHBOURS FOR 2017

Country	Gross National Income (GNI) per capita (2011 PPP \$)	Life Expectancy at birth (2017)	Mean Years of Schooling of People aged 25 and above (2017)	HDI Rank in the world (2018)
Sri Lanka	11,326	75.5	10.9	76
India	6,353	68.8	6.4	130
Myanmar	5,567	66.7	4.9	148
Pakistan	5,331	66.6	5.2	150
Nepal	2,471	70.6	4.9	149
Bangladesh	3,677	72.8	5.8	136

Source : Human Development Report, 2018, United Nations Development Programme, New York

NOTES

1. HDI stands for Human Development Index. HDI ranks in above table are out of 189 countries in all.
2. Life Expectancy at birth denotes, as the name suggests, average expected length of life of a person at the time of birth.
3. Per Capita Income is calculated in dollars for all countries so that it can be compared. It is also done in a way so that every dollar would buy the same amount of goods and services in any country.

- a. 2017
- b. 2018
- c. 2016
- d. None of the above

Answer - a

4.2 In which categories

India is better than Pakistan and Myanmar?

- a. Gross National Income

b. Life Expectancy

c. Only a

d. Both a and b

Answer- d

4.3 In which categories Nepal and Bangladesh are better than India?

a. Gross National Income

b. Life Expectancy

c. Mean years of schooling

d. All three

Answer- b

4.4 Which countries are ahead of India in all three aspects?

a. Bangladesh

b. Sri Lanka

c. Only a

d. Both a and b.

Answer- b

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

1. Help Mala know which data is included to measure Human Development Report?

Answer- a. Literacy rate

b. Life expectancy

c. Per capita income

2. What Raman's BMI indicate if his age is 14 years 8 months and his BMI is 15.2?

Answer- He is undernourished

3. Help Malani to know which criteria is used to compare countries.

Answer- Per capita income

4. Do you think Mr. Ramakant should join a company which gives him high salary but no respect and safe working environment.

Answer- No, because safety and respect are also equally important.

5. Give one reason why per capita income is not a good criterion for measuring development.

Answer- Because per capita income can give wrong data in countries with high population.

6. Help Madhav get appropriate word for the following -

'Average number of years a person is expected to live at birth'?

Answer- Life expectancy

7. Give one example to show that 'Conflicting goals can also be developmental goals'.

Answer- A girl expects as much freedom and opportunity as her brother and that he also shares in the household work. Her brother may not like this.

8. Explain Yahsir why “Average income is an important criterion for development.”

Answer - (i) Average income gives us an idea what an average person is likely to get out of the total national income.

(ii) Average income is used to classify the countries into rich, poor or developing nations.

(iii) Average income is used to make economic policies.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS (3M)

Q1.What is per capita income? Mention any two limitations of per capita income as an indicator of development. (2012)

Answer:

The total income of a country divided by its total population gives the Per Capita Income. Money cannot buy all the goods and services that are needed to live well. So income by itself is not a completely adequate indicator of material goods and services that citizens are able to use. For example, money can not buy a pollution-free environment or ensure that one gets unadulterated medicines, unless one can afford to shift to a community that already has all these things.

Q2.Kerala, with lower per capita income, has a better human development ranking than Punjab. Hence, per capita income is not a useful criterion at all and should not be used to compare States. Do you agree?Discuss

Answer:

Per capita income is not a useful criterion at all to measure the human development ranking of a state. High per capita income is not the only attribute to a good quality life. Money cannot buy all the essential things required for a good life. Pollution-free atmosphere to ensure good health, protection from infectious diseases, lowering of mortality rate, promotion of literacy, etc. are essential for a good standard of living. In order to achieve these, joint efforts have to be made by all members of a community, be it rich or poor. Kerala ranks higher compared to Punjab even with a lower per capita income because—

1. mortality rate is lower
2. literacy rate is higher and
3. total number of children attending school (Classes I-V) is higher.

Q3. On the basis of which three indicators of HDI 2004 Sri Lanka has better rank than India? (2014)

Answer:

Three indicators of HDI 2004 in which Sri Lanka has better rank than India:

1. Per capita income—The per capita income of Sri Lanka in US dollars was 4,390 US dollars while that of India was 3,139 US dollars.
2. Life expectancy at birth—The life expectancy at birth for Sri Lanka was 74, higher than that of India at 64.
3. Gross enrolment ratio for three levels—Sri Lanka had Gross Enrolment ratio of 69 while that of India was 60.

Q4. ‘Conflicting goals can also be developmental goals’. Elaborate with examples. (2014)

Answer:

All persons do not have the same notion of development or progress. Each one of them seeks different things. They seek things that are most important for them, i.e., that which can fulfil their aspirations or desires. In fact at times two persons or groups of persons may seek things which are conflicting.

A girl expects as much freedom and opportunity as her brother and that he also shares in the household work. Her brother may not like this.

To get more electricity, industrialists may want more dams. But this may submerge the land and disrupt the lives of people who are displaced, such as tribals. They might resent this and may prefer small check dams or tanks to irrigate their land.

Q5. What are common developmental goals? Give any two suitable examples of common developmental goals. (2015)

Answer:

There are certain goals which are the same or common for all. These are common developmental goals. The developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about other important things in life. More income or more material goods do not always give us a good quality life.

There are other aspects such as equal treatment, freedom, security, opportunity to learn, good working conditions, pollution-free atmosphere, job security and good social life which are very important for a good quality life. Money or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. But quality of our life also depends on non-material things, for example, the role of our friends in our life which cannot be measured but mean a lot to us.

Q6. “Money cannot buy all the goods and services that one needs to live well” Do you agree with this statement?

Justify your answer with any three suitable arguments. (2015)

Answer:

Yes, I agree with the statement because money income and material goods alone are not an adequate indicator of a good quality of life. Money cannot buy all the goods and services one needs to live well.

- Money cannot buy a pollution free and clean environment with fresh air.
- It cannot protect us from infectious diseases and guarantee good health for us.
- Money cannot assure that medicines available in the market are not adulterated. To live well one needs non-material factors such as equal treatment, freedom, security, equal opportunity to learn, a pollution free environment, good and safe working conditions etc.

Q7. Apart from income, which other six things people look for as important aspects of our lives? Answer: High per capita income is not the only attribute to a good quality life. Money cannot buy all the essential things required for a good life. Pollution-free atmosphere to ensure good health, protection from infectious diseases, lowering of mortality rate, promotion of literacy, job security, good working conditions, etc. are essential for a good standard of living.

Q8. On what basis the rich and low income countries have been categorized in the world? What are the limitations of this approach? According to the World Development Report, 2006, India comes in which category? Give reason for the same. (2015, 2014)

Answer:

The World Bank uses average income or per capita income as a criterion for classifying different countries. Countries with per capita income of ₹4,53,000 per annum and above (in the year 2004) are called rich countries and those with per capita income of ₹37,000 or less are called low income countries (India comes under low income countries; the per capita income in India is ₹28,000 per annum). Those falling in between ₹37,000 – ₹4,53,000 are placed in the middle category.

Limitations of this criterion.

1. While averages are useful for comparison, they also hide disparities. Two countries may have identical average income, but one country may have equitable distribution where people are neither very rich nor very poor, while in the other country most citizens are very poor and very few are extremely rich,
2. Better income cannot ensure a good quality life. Criterion set by the World Bank has ignored certain attributes of a good life which do not depend on income or cannot be bought with money. Example, freedom, equal treatment, equal opportunities, free atmosphere, provision of unadulterated medicines, etc.

Q9. Why do people look at a mix of goals for development? Explain.

Answer:

Though income is one of the most important components of development, but there are other important goals which people look at for development—

1. People also seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security and respect.
2. Women need a safe and secure environment to take up a variety of jobs or to run businesses as entrepreneurs.
3. People seek a pollution free environment.
4. Students seek better education and equal opportunities to learn.

Long Answer Questions (LA) 5 Marks

Question 28.

Why do different persons have different notions of development? Which of the following explanations is more important and why?

(a) Because people are different.

(b) Because life situations of persons are different.

Answer:

The correct explanation is ‘Because life situations of persons are different.’

Developmental goals are different for different categories of people because of their different aspirations. Aspirations are based on their needs. At times people may have conflicting developmental goals also. What may be development for one may not be development for another. It may even be destructive for the other.

Example, Industrialists may want construction of more dams for more electricity, but this may lead to displacement of tribals who live in those areas and thereby disrupt their lives.

Example, The inhabitants of Nandigram in West Bengal are mainly agriculturists and their aspirations are to see development in the field of agriculture, whereas to some it may appear that industrial advancement is more necessary for national development.

Question 29.

What does HDI stand for? Explain the main criteria of measuring HDI according to UNDP Report of 1990. (2015)

Answer:

HDI Stand for Human Development Index.

Main criteria of measuring HDI:

1. HDI published by UNDP compares countries based on the educational levels of the people, their health status and per capita income.
2. HDI determines the rank of a country by its overall achievement in three areas, i.e., life expectancy, educational level and per capita income.
3. Many improvements have been suggested in calculating HDI and many new components have been added to Human Development Report.

4. Pre-fixing Human to Development, it has made it clear that what is important in development is what is happening to citizens of a country, i.e., the health and well being of the people is most important.

Question 30.

Explain with examples that there are other important development goals also besides income. (2014)

Answer:

More income or more material goods do not always give us a good quality life. There are other aspects such as equal treatment, freedom, security, opportunity to learn, good working conditions, pollution-free atmosphere, job security and good social life which are very important for a good quality life.

Money or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. But quality of our life also depends on non-material things, for example, the role of our friends in our life which cannot be measured but mean a lot to us. Another example, if we get a job in a far off place, before accepting it we would try consider many factors apart from income such as facilities for our family, working atmosphere, or opportunity to learn. Similarly, for development, people look at a mix of goals. It is true that if women are engaged in paid work, their dignity increases. However, it is also the case that if there is respect for women there would be more sharing of house work and greater acceptance of women.

The developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about other important things in life.

Question 31.

Explain any five fields other than income where development is needed. (2012)

Answer:

Fields other than income where development is needed:

1. Education. The government must provide adequate education facilities in all rural and urban areas. The government must necessarily focus on education for girls so that all girls are able to acquire atleast secondary level schooling. Running proper schools and providing quality education, particularly elementary education, is the duty of the Government.
2. Health. Basic health care facilities are a must for all. Establishment of government hospitals, clinics and dispensaries, especially in rural areas, to provide subsidized and unadulterated medicines to the poorer sections of society.
3. Nutrition. An effective Public Distribution System—proper functioning of ration shops and equitable distribution of foodgrains is very essential.
4. Transportation. A well developed public transport system to make it easy for general public to commute.
5. Electricity. It is the duty of the government to provide electricity and water at reasonable rates to the common man and prevent him from exploitation by private companies.

Question 32.

Explain with reasons why state of Punjab with a very high per capita income has a low literacy rate. (2016, 2017 D)

Answer:

Per capita income is not a useful criterion at all to measure the human development ranking of a state. High per capita income is not the only attribute to a good quality life. Money cannot buy all the essential things required for a good life.

This can be seen in the case of Punjab which has a very high per capita income but a low literacy rate. Having money in one's pocket cannot buy all the goods and services that we need to live well. Money cannot ensure education and literacy. Another reason for low literacy rate in Punjab could be the lack of free and compulsory

educational facilities. The government needs to open more schools and provide other facilities so that all children have a chance to study.

Pollution-free atmosphere to ensure good health, protection from infectious diseases, lowering of mortality rate, promotion of literacy, etc. are essential for a good standard of living. In order to achieve these, joint efforts have to be made by all members of a community, be it rich or poor.

SECTORS OF THE INDIAN ECONOMY

SUMMARY

ECONOMIC ACTIVITIES – Activities performed to generate income.

SECTORS OF ECONOMIC ACTIVITIES-

Primary Sector – In this we produce a good by exploiting natural resources. It is called primary because it forms the base for all other products that we subsequently make. This sector is called agriculture and related sector because most of the natural products are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry. Examples of activities from this sector include agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry and mining.

Secondary Sector – It covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing that we associate with industrial activity. It is the next step after primary. It is also called as industrial sector. Examples of activities from this sector include manufacture of sugar/gur from sugarcane, using cotton fiber to spin yarn and weave cloth.

Tertiary Sector – This sector helps in the development of the primary and secondary sectors. Activities in this sector, do not produce a good but they are an aid or a support for the production process. Examples of activities from this sector include washermen, barbers, cobblers, lawyers, transport, storage, communication, banking, trade. It is also called as service sector.

All economic activities are highly interdependent.

COMPARING THE THREE SECTORS-

- With so many thousands of goods and services produced, it might appear impossible to count the various goods and services and know the total production in each sector. Economists suggest that the values of goods and services should be used rather than adding up the actual numbers.
- Value of final goods and services is used as they already include the value of all the intermediate goods.
- Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of a country is the sum of value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year. It is the value of all final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year. It shows the size of economy.

Historical Change in Sectors –

In Developed Countries -

- At initial stages of development, primary sector was the most important sector of economic activity.
- At middle stage (secondary stage) of development secondary sector gradually became the most important in total production and employment.
- In the past 100 years, there has been a further shift from secondary to tertiary sector in developed countries. The service sector has become the most important in terms of total production. Most of the working people are also employed in the service sector.

PRIMARY, SECONDARY AND TERTIARY

SECTORS IN INDIA (Historical Change in Sectors in India) -

Graph 1 shows the production of goods and services in the three sectors for 1973-74 and 2013-14. This shows that

- a) Though primary sector had largest share in GDP in 1973-74, its share declined in 2013-14.
- b) Though share of both, secondary and tertiary sectors, increased but tertiary sector emerged to be larger share holder in 2013-14.

Graph 2 shows that share of primary sector in GDP (in percentage) reduced to less than 15% in 2013-14 but share of both, secondary and tertiary sectors, increased with tertiary sector becoming the largest shareholder with more than 65% in 2013-14.

Graph 3 shows that share of sectors in employment (in percentage) for 1973-74 and 2017-18 changed

For primary sector from 71% in 1973-74 to 44% in 2017-18. (Decreased)

For secondary sector from 11% in 1973-74 to 25% in 2017-18. (Increased)

For tertiary sector from 18% in 1973-74 to 31% in 2017-18. (Increased)

But the primary sector continues to be the largest employer.

Rising Importance of the Tertiary Sector in Production – Causes -

1. In a developing country the government has to take responsibility for the provision of basic services such as hospitals, educational institutions, post and telegraph services, police stations, courts, village administrative offices etc.
2. The development of agriculture and industry leads to the increase in demand of services.
3. As income levels rise, certain sections of people start demanding many more services like eating out, tourism, shopping, private hospitals.
4. Over the past decade or so, certain new services such as those based on information and communication technology have become important and essential.

Where are most of the people employed –

- In primary sector because enough jobs were not created in the secondary and tertiary sectors. Though primary sector produces just one sixth of the GDP.
(In secondary sector – Production increased to 9 times but employment increased to 3 times only.
In tertiary sector - Production increased to 14 times but employment increased to 5 times only.)
- More workers in the agricultural sector means there are more people than necessary. They are underemployed. Underemployment is also known as disguised unemployment.
- Underemployment can be seen in other sectors too such as service sector in which casual workers don't get work everyday and many times earn very little even after working for whole day.

How to Create More Employment –

- The government can spend some money or banks can provide a loan, to construct a well. This will improve irrigation facility leading to increase in production.
- If government invests some money in transportation and storage of crops, or makes better rural roads so that mini-trucks reach everywhere. This can provide productive employment to not just farmers but also others such as those in services like transport or trade.
- Farmers can be provided with cheap agricultural credit. This will help to purchase seeds, fertilizers, agricultural equipments.
- Local industries and services can be identified, located and promoted in semi-rural areas where a large number of people may be unemployed.
- Efforts to improve the educational status and health situation will lead to increase in number of educational and medical institutions which will further lead to employment to more people (20 lakh jobs in education sector alone).
- Identification of tourism, regional craft, industry, or new services like IT in various regions and states will lead to employment to more people (35 lakh jobs in tourism sector alone)

- Many suggestions discussed above may take a long time to implement. For the short-term, we need some quick measures. Implementation of programs like Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005 (MGNREGA 2005). MGNREGA 2005 is implemented in 625 districts of India and guarantees 100 days of employment to people in rural areas. In case government fails to provide work, unemployment allowances are given.

Division of Sectors as Organised and Unorganised:

- Organised Sector: It is characterized by regular terms of employment, mandatory registration with the government and mandatory adherence to laws and rules like Minimum Wages Act etc. Workers in the organised sector enjoy security of employment, paid leave, payment during holidays, provident fund, gratuity, medical benefits, safe working environment, pensions.
- Unorganised sector: It is characterized by lack of government control, non-adherence to rules and regulations and unsecured employment. Jobs are low-paid and often not regular. There is no provision for overtime, paid leave, holidays, leave due to sickness etc.

How to Protect Workers in the Unorganised Sector

- Many organized sector firms, trespass into unorganized setup, as a strategy to avoid certain legal frameworks and to avoid taxes etc.
- Job loss in the organised sector is also pushing many workers to the low paying unorganised sector. Many workers lost jobs since 1990s.
- Those who need protection include –
 - a) In rural areas - landless agricultural labourers, small and marginal farmers, sharecroppers and artisans.
 - b) In urban areas - workers in small-scale industry, casual workers in construction, trade and transport etc., and street vendors, head load workers, garmentmakers, rag pickers etc.
 - c) Vulnerable sections like the Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes etc.
- Providing more work, protection and support can protect workers in the unorganised sector.

SECTORS IN TERMS OF OWNERSHIP: PUBLIC

AND PRIVATE SECTORS -

- Public sector is characterized by government ownership of most of the assets and provides all the services. For example, Railways, post offices, etc.
- Private sector is characterized by private ownership of assets and delivery of services by private individuals or companies. For example, Tata Iron and Steel Company Limited (TISCO) or Reliance Industries Limited (RIL) etc.
- A general analysis in Indian scenario is as follows:
 - ✓ Goods and services in the private sector are provided with a profit motive, hence this sector does not provide certain essential services due to high costs and operational difficulties.
 - ✓ Government provides certain services like construction of roads, bridges, railways, harbors, generating electricity, providing irrigation through dams etc. to make them affordable and accessible to everyone.
 - ✓ Government has to support the private sector to induce continued production in some sectors. For example: bearing a part of the cost of electricity generation to make it affordable for the consumers.
 - ✓ The government must spend on activities consisting of its primary responsibilities like providing health and education facilities for all.

OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. Which sector is also called agriculture and related sector?
 - a. Primary sector
 - b. Secondary sector
 - c. Tertiary sector
 - d. Quaternary sector

Answer- a

2. What does it show if there is strike by transporters and lorries refuse to take vegetables, milk etc. from rural areas?
 - a. Dependency of primary sector on secondary sector
 - b. Dependency of primary sector on tertiary sector
 - c. Dependency of primary sector and secondary sector on tertiary sector
 - d. Dependency of tertiary sector on primary sector

Answer- c

3. Which of the following occupations cannot be included in tertiary sector?
 - a. Courier
 - b. Basket weaver
 - c. Call center employee
 - d. Transporter

Answer- b

4. Which of the following occupations cannot be included in primary sector?
 - a. Agriculture
 - b. Fishing
 - c. Mining
 - d. Moneylending

Answer- d

5. If biscuits are made from flour and flour from wheat then which of the following is true?
 - a. Flour is raw material and wheat is final product
 - b. Biscuit is final product and wheat is intermediate good
 - c. Flour is raw material; Wheat is intermediate good and biscuit is final product
 - d. Wheat is raw material for flour, flour is raw material for biscuit and biscuit is the final product.

Answer- d

6. Which of the following is true about historical change in sectors in India in last 100 years
 - a. In initial stage primary sector was most important
 - b. In middle stage tertiary sector became more important than secondary sector
 - c. In recent time secondary sector became more important than tertiary sector
 - d. Primary sector remained most important in all stages.

Answer- a

7. Which sector has lost its share in GDP but still continues to be largest employer
 - a. Primary
 - b. Secondary
 - c. Tertiary
 - d. Only c

Answer- a

8. Disguised unemployment occurs when people
 - a. Do not want to work
 - b. Are working in a lazy manner

- c. Are working less than what they are capable of doing
- d. Are not paid for their work

Answer- c

- 9. Which one of the following is not an organized sector activity
 - a. A teacher taking class in school
 - b. A doctor treating patient in hospital
 - c. A policeman working under superior officer
 - d. A daily wage labourer working under a contractor

Answer- d

- 10. The sectors are classified into organized and unorganized sector on the basis of:
 - a. Employment conditions
 - b. The nature of economic activity
 - c. Ownership of enterprises
 - d. Number of workers employed in the enterprise

Answer- a

- 11. Kamal does not get paid leaves, medical benefits and payment during holidays in which type of sector he might be working
 - a. Organized sector
 - b. Unorganized sector
 - c. Only a
 - d. It can be any one of them

Answer- b

- 12. Sunny works in place where doors of expensive cars are made. He works in
 - a. Primary sector
 - b. Secondary sector
 - c. Tertiary sector
 - d. None of the above

Answer- b

- 13. Manish is preparing to join Google as software engineer which of the following might be wrong about him?
 - a. He will work in unorganized sector
 - b. He will work in private sector
 - c. He will work in tertiary sector
 - d. He will work in organized sector

Answer- a

- 14. Mr. Rajan says he is government teacher. Which of the following is right about him?
 - a. He works in secondary sector
 - b. He works in private sector
 - c. He works in unorganized sector
 - d. He works in public sector

Answer- d

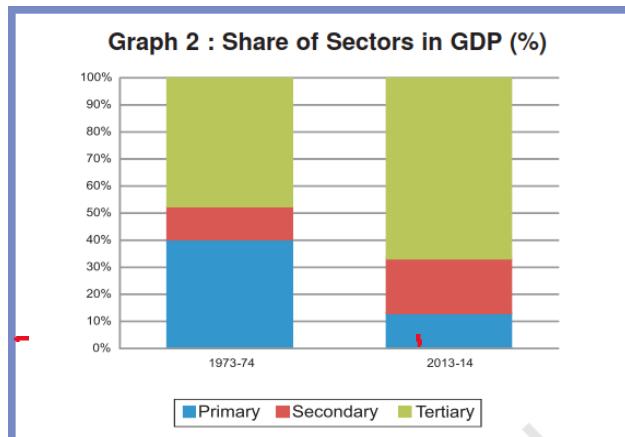
15. Mr. Rishi says his son is planning to be a trader. In which sector he will be working in?

- a. Primary
- b. Secondary
- c. Tertiary
- d. Industrial sector

Answer- c

CASE/SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS

1. Study the graph given below and answer the questions that follows



1.1 Which sector had largest share in GDP during 1973-74?

- a. Primary
- b. Secondary
- c. Tertiary
- d. Only b

Answer- c

1.2 Which sector had largest share in GDP during 2013-14?

- a. Primary
- b. Tertiary
- c. Both a and b
- d. Only b

Answer- b

1.3 Which sector has shown maximum growth between 1973-74 and 2013-14?

- a. Primary
- b. Secondary
- c. Tertiary
- d. Only b

Answer- c

1.4 Which sector has shown least growth between 1973-74 and 2013-14?

- a. Primary
- b. Secondary
- c. Tertiary
- d. Only b

Answer- a

2. Study the paragraph given below and answer the questions that follows

The organised sector offers jobs that are the most sought-after. But the employment opportunities in the organized sector have been expanding very slowly. It is also common to find many organised sector enterprises in the unorganized sector. They adopt such strategies to evade taxes and refuse to follow laws that protect labourers. As a result, a large number of workers are forced to enter the unorganized sector jobs, which pay a very low salary. They are often exploited and not paid a fair wage. Their earnings are low and not regular. These jobs are not secure and have no other benefits. Since the 1990s, it is also common to see a large number of workers losing their jobs in the organized sector. These workers are forced to take up jobs in the unorganized sector with low earnings. Hence, besides the need for more work, there is also a need for protection and support of the workers in the unorganized sector.

2.1 Suppose that if Kundan is working in organized sector which of the following might be wrong about him?

- a. His sector is expanding very rapidly
- b. Many companies/enterprises have entered his sector only to evade taxes
- c. His sector is expanding very slowly
- d. He gets a fair wage

Answer- c

2.2 Mr. Kamal says he was among those people who lost job during 1990s. In which sector he was working?

- a. Organized sector
- b. Unorganized sector
- c. It can be any of them
- d. Difficult to say

Answer- a

2.3 Which of the following is wrong about Unorganized sector?

- a. Low wages
- b. Exploitation
- c. Most sought-after jobs
- d. No job security

Answer- c

2.4 Why many organized sector enterprises enter in unorganized sector

- a. To evade taxes
- b. To refuse laws that protect labourers
- c. Only a
- d. Both a and b

Answer- d

3. Study the paragraph given below and answer the questions that follows

When we produce a good by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the primary sector. Why primary? This is because it forms the base for all other products that we subsequently make. Since most of the natural products we get are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry, this sector is also called agriculture and related sector. The secondary sector covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms throughways of manufacturing that we associate with industrial activity. It is the next step after primary. The product is not produced by nature but has to be made and therefore some process of manufacturing is essential. This could be in a factory, a workshop or at home. It is also called as industrial sector. After primary and secondary, there is a third category of activities that falls under tertiary sector and is different from the above two. These are activities that help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors. These activities, by themselves, do not produce a good but they are an aide a support for the production process. Transport, storage, communication, banking, trade are some examples of tertiary activities . The tertiary sector is also called the service sector.

3.1 Find the odd one

- a. Agriculture, forestry, fishing,
- b. Sugar, brick, cloth,
- c. Banking, communication, transport
- d. Dairy, Gur, trade

Answer- d

3.2 find the correct pair

- a. Primary – godowns
- b. Secondary – storage
- c. Tertiary – milk
- d. None of the above

Answer- d

3.3 In which of the following sector product is changed into other form?

- a. Primary
- b. Secondary
- c. Tertiary
- d. None of the above

Answer- b

3.4 Which of the following is independent of the other two?

- a. Primary
- b. Secondary
- c. Tertiary
- d. None of the above

Answer- d

4. Study the paragraph given below and answer the questions that follows

After primary and secondary, there is a third category of activities that falls under tertiary sector and is different from the above two. These are activities that help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors. These activities, by themselves, do not produce a good but they are an aid or a support for the production process. For example, goods that are produced in the primary or secondary sector would need to be transported by trucks or trains and then sold in wholesale and retail shops. At times, it may be necessary

to store these in godowns. We also may need to talk to others over telephone or send letters (communication) or borrow money from banks (banking) to help production and trade. Transport, storage, communication, banking, trade are some examples of tertiary activities. Since these activities generate services rather than goods, the tertiary sector is also called the service sector.

4.1 Which economic sector is considered the first sector?

- a. Tertiary sector
- b. Secondary Sector
- c. Primary sector
- d. Third Sector

Answer- c

4.2 What comes under the tertiary sector?

- a. Only transport and trade are examples of tertiary activities.
- b. Transport, storage, communication, banking, trade are some examples of tertiary activities.
- c. Only storage and communication some examples of tertiary activities.
- d. Only banking is an example of tertiary activities

Answer- b

4.3 Which sector is known as service sector?

- a. Tertiary sector
- b. Secondary Sector
- c. Primary Sector
- d. Third Sector

Answer- c

4.4 Fill in the blanks:

These activities (of service sector), by themselves, do not _____ but they are an____ or a support for the production process.

- a. Lend help, support
- b. Produce commodities, support
- c. Produce aid, good
- d. Produce a good, aid

Answer- d

5. Study the paragraph given below and answer the questions that follows

Sectors of Economic Activities (Primary Sector) There are many activities that are undertaken by directly using natural resources. Take, for example, the cultivation of cotton. It takes place within a crop season. For the growth of the cotton plant, we depend mainly, but not entirely, on natural factors like rainfall, sunshine and climate. The product of this activity, cotton, is a natural product. Similarly, in the case of an activity like dairy, we are dependent on the biological process of the animals and availability of fodder etc. The product here, milk, also is a natural product. Similarly, minerals and ores are also natural products. When we produce a good by exploiting

natural resources, it is an activity of the primary sector. Why primary? This is because it forms the base for all other products that we subsequently make. Since most of the natural products we get are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry, this sector is also called agriculture and related sector.

5.1 Why is Primary Sector also called agriculture and related sector?

- a. When we produce a good by properly using natural resources, it is an activity of the Primary Sector. Since most of the natural products we get are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry etc. So, this sector is also called agriculture and related sector.
- b. When we produce a good by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the Primary Sector. Since most of the natural products we get are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry etc. So, this sector is also called agriculture and related sector.
- c. Since most of the natural products we get are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry etc. and Primary Sector solely depends on Secondary Sector, so this sector is also called agriculture and related sector.
- d. When we produce a good by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the Secondary Sector. Since most of the natural products we get are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry etc. So, this sector is also called agriculture and related sector.

Answer- b

5.2 Name some natural products.

- a. Airplanes and boats
- b. Cars and trucks
- c. Minerals and ores, and milk, etc.
- d. Trains and pulleys

Answer- c

5.3 When does the cultivation of cotton take place?

- a. During the fall
- b. During the winter season
- c. During the shredding season
- d. During the crop season

Answer- d

5.4 On what we mostly depend for the growth of cotton?

- a. For the growth of the cotton plant, we depend mainly, but not entirely, on natural factors like rainfall, sunshine and climate.
- b. For the growth of the cotton plant, we depend mainly on natural factors like rainfall, sunshine and climate.
- c. For the growth of the cotton plant, we depend mainly on sunshine and climate.
- d. For the growth of the cotton plant, we depend mainly on rainfall, sunshine.

Answer- a

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

1. Mr. Narendra Nathis engaged in work of construction of a small pond with 100 other workers. This might be a case of _____ (Disguised unemployment/unemployment)

Answer- Disguised unemployment

2. Laxmi is a small poor farmer. What steps can be taken to help her increase production in her field?

Answer- a. Loan by bank

b. Construction of well in field by panchayat

c. Help by government to purchase tractor on low interest rate.

3. In which category we can put a casual worker working as painter with his brother.

Answer- Unorganized sector activity

3. Give one reason to help understand why the primary sector continues to be the largest employer in 1973 as well as in 2018?

Answer- Enough jobs were created in the secondary and tertiary sectors.

4. Define disguised unemployment in such a way that Ravi will understand it's meaning properly.

Answer- This kind of under-employment is hidden in contrast to someone who does not have a job and is clearly visible as unemployed. Hence it is called disguised unemployment.

5. State any one feature of the unorganised sector.

Answer- There are no provision for overtime and paid leave.

6. Explain how "Economic activities, though grouped into three different categories, are highly interdependent."

Answer- When we produce goods by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the primary sector. It is primary because it forms the base for all other products that we subsequently make.

The secondary sector covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms manually or by machines. For example, wheat is used to manufacture bread. So, there is mutual dependency between primary and secondary sectors.

The activities that help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors fall under the tertiary sector.

MONEY AND CREDIT SUMMARY

MONEY AS A MEDIUM OF EXCHANGE—

Money is called a medium of exchange as it acts as an intermediate in the exchange process. A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or service that he or she might want.

Due to its role as an intermediate in transactions, forms and essence of money has changed over time, from grain and cattle being used for transactions in ancient periods to coins later on to further modern forms of money today.

The main function of Money is to eliminate the need for double coincidence of wants. It was very important in the barter system, an exchange could take place only, if both parties want exactly the same thing that the other party has to offer at the same time.

MODERN FORMS OF MONEY -

- **Currency:**

- ✓ Modern forms of money include currency - paper notes and coins.
- ✓ Today, currency is not made of precious metals but still accepted as a medium of exchange, as it is authorized by the government.
- ✓ In India, only the Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the central government.
- ✓ No individual in India can legally refuse a payment made in rupees.

- **Deposits with Banks:**

- ✓ The other form in which people hold money is as deposits with banks.
- ✓ Excess money after fulfilling day to day needs is deposited with the banks by opening a bank account.
- ✓ Deposits in the bank account which can be withdrawn on demand are called demand deposits.
- ✓ Banks also offer the facility of payments being made by cheques instead of cash.
- A cheque is a paper instruction the bank to pay a specific amount from the person's account to the person in whose name the cheque has been issued.

LOAN ACTIVITIES OF BANKS –

- Banks use the major portion of the deposits to extend loans for various economic activities.
- In this way, banks mediate between those who have surplus funds (the depositors) and those who are in need of these funds (the borrowers).
- Banks charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits.
- The difference between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors is the main source of income for banks.

TWO DIFFERENT CREDIT SITUATIONS –

Credit (loan) refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment.

Situation – 1 -Festival Season -

Salim obtains credit to meet the working capital needs of production. The credit helps him to meet the ongoing expenses of production, complete production on time, and thereby increase his earnings. Credit positive role in this situation.

Situation – 2– Swapna’s Problem –

Swapna takes a loan from the moneylender to meet the expenses of cultivation, hoping that her harvest would help repay the loan. The failure of the crop made loan repayment impossible. She had to sell part of the land to repay the loan. Credit, instead of helping Swapna improve her earnings, left her worse off. She was also caught in debt trap.

In rural areas, the main demand for credit is for crop production. Repayment of the loan is crucially dependent on the income from farming. In case of crop failure, credit pushes the farmer into a debt trap.

TERMS OF CREDIT -

- It is agreement between the lender and the borrower
- Interest rate, collateral and documentation requirement, and terms of repayment together comprise the terms of credit.
- The terms of credit vary substantially from one credit arrangement to another.
- They may vary depending on the nature of the lender and the borrower.
- Interest rate is the amount which the borrower must pay to the lender along with the payment of the principal amount.
- Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns (such as land, building, vehicle, livestocks, deposits with banks) and uses this as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid.

Variety of credit arrangements –

- In case of Shyamal (small farmer) it is village moneylender and agricultural trader.
- In case of Arun (middle landowner) it is bank

- In case of Rama (agricultural labourer) it is her employer (a middle landowner)

Loan from Cooperatives –

Cooperative societies (or cooperatives) provide cheap credit in rural areas. Members of a cooperative pool their resources for cooperation in certain areas. There are several types of cooperatives possible such as farmers' cooperatives, weavers cooperatives, industrial workers cooperatives, etc.

Krishak Cooperative provides loans for the purchase of agricultural implements, loans for cultivation and agricultural trade, fishery loans, loans for construction of houses etc.

FORMAL SECTOR CREDIT IN INDIA –

The various types of loans can be conveniently grouped as

Formal Sector Loans (loans from banks and cooperatives) and

Informal Sector Loans (including moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends).

- ✓ The RBI supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans. Periodically, banks have to submit information to the RBI on how much they are lending, to whom, at what interest rate, etc.
- ✓ Informal sources of credit are unsupervised and hence prone to usage of unfair terms of credit (such as high interest rate) and means of recovery, which may cause the borrower hardships and often push him in debt trap.

Formal and Informal Credit: Who gets what - Graph 2

- ✓ Rich households both in urban and rural areas, avail a major portion of their credit from formal sources (90%). Poor households depend on informal sources (85%).
- ✓ The formal sector still meets only about half of the total credit needs of the rural people.

Solution -

- ✓ Banks and cooperatives need to expand in the rural areas to reduce the dependence upon informal sources and in the urban areas credit from these sources needs to be more equitably distributed even to the poor households.
- ✓ A cheap and affordable credit from formal source is necessary for the development of the country.

SELF-HELP GROUPS FOR THE POOR –

A self-help group (SHG) is

- An informal association of people who come together to find ways to improve their living conditions. They are generally self-governed and peer controlled.
- It is basically a community where 15-20 members generally women, usually belonging to one neighborhood meets and save regularly.
- Members can take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs. The group charges interest on these loans but this is still less than what the moneylender charges.
- The group as a whole decides the terms of credit for granting loans to the members.
- If the group is regular in savings, it becomes eligible for availing loan from the bank.
- Bank loan is sanctioned in the name of the group and is meant to create self-employment opportunities for the members.

- SHGs help borrowers overcome the problem of lack of collateral. They can get timely loans for a variety of purposes and at reasonable interest rate.

SUMMING UP –

Economic activities require loans or credit. Credit can have a positive or negative impact on borrower. Credit is available from a variety of sources. These can be either formal sources or informal sources. Terms of credit vary substantially between formal and informal lenders. At present, it is the richer households who receive credit from formal sources whereas the poor have to depend on the informal sources. It is essential that the total formal sector credit increases so that the dependence on the more expensive informal credit becomes less.

OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. Which one of the following is a formal source of credit?

- a. Traders
- b. Cooperative societies
- c. Moneylenders
- d. Friends and relatives

Answer- b

2. Which one of the following is the appropriate meaning of collateral?

- a. It is the sum total of money borrowed from banks.
- b. The amount borrowed from friends.
- c. It is an asset of the borrower used as guarantee to a lender.
- d. The amount invested in a business.

Answer- c

3. Which one of the following is the newer way of providing loans to the rural poor, particularly women?

- a. Cooperative Banks
- b. Grameen Banks
- c. Self-Help Groups
- d. Moneylenders

Answer- c

4. Double coincidence of wants means _____.

- a. What a person desires to sell is exactly what the other person wishes to buy.
- b. What a person desires to sell is exactly what the other person also wishes to sell.
- c. What a person desires to buy is exactly what the other person also wishes to buy.
- d. None of the above.

Answer- a

5. Banks use the major portion of the deposits to

- a. Extend loans
- b. Invest in infrastructure
- c. Deposit in foreign banks
- d. None of the above

Answer- a

6. Which of the following statements are correct?

- a. Members of a cooperative pool their resources for cooperation in certain areas.
- b. Besides banks, the other major source of cheap credit in rural areas is the cooperative societies.
- c. There are several types of cooperatives possible such as farmers' cooperatives, weavers cooperatives, industrial workers cooperatives.
- d. All of the above statements are true.

Answer- d

7. Which of the following statements is false

- a. There is no organization which supervises the credit activities of lenders in the informal sector.
- b. RBI stops the money lenders from using unfair means to get their money back.
- c. Compared to the formal lenders, most of the informal lenders charges much lesser interest on loans
- d. All of the above

Answer- d

8. Name the system in which the double coincidence of wants is an essential feature.

- a. Barter system
- b. Money economy
- c. Global economy
- d. None of these

Answer- a

9. Which of the following could lead to a debt trap?

- a. The high interest rate for borrowing can mean that the amount to be repaid is greater than the income of the borrower.
- b. Higher cost of borrowing means a larger part of the earnings of the borrowers is used to repay the loan.
- c. The high interest rate for borrowing can mean that the amount to be repaid is lesser than the income of the borrower.
- d. both (a) and (b)

Answer – d

10. Since money acts as an intermediate in the exchange process, it is called

- a. Medium of trade
- b. Medium of Exchange
- c. Medium of Business
- d. Medium of transaction

Answer- b

11. The modern currency is without any use of its own, then why is it accepted as a medium of exchange?

- a. Because it is convenient
- b. It has digital and manual system
- c. It can be used in foreign exchange
- d. Is authorized by the government of the country

Answer- d

12. People also have the provision to withdraw the money as and when they require the deposits in the bank accounts to be withdrawn, what are these deposits called?

- a. Fixed deposits
- b. Savings
- c. Demand deposits
- d. Demand drafts

Answer- c

13. The facility of cheques against demand deposits makes it possible to directly settle payments without the use of.....

- a. Deposit slip
- b. Cash
- c. Moneylender
- d. Other funds

Answer- b

14. M. Salim wants to withdraw Rs 20,000 in cash for making payments to Prem after Prem receives the money, he deposits it in his own account? What is the result?

- a. Salim's balance in his bank account increases and Prem's balance increases.
- b. Salim's balance in his bank account decreases and Prem's balance increases.
- c. Salim's balance in his bank account increases and Prem's balance decreases

- d. None of the above

Answer- b

15......refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment.

- a. Debit
- b. Cash transaction
- c. Credit
- d. Trade

Answer- c

CASE/SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS

1. Read the paragraphs given below and answer the questions that follows

Festival Season

It is festival season two months from now and the shoe manufacturer, Salim, has received an order from a large trader in town for 3,000 pairs of shoes to be delivered in a month time. To complete production on time, Salim has to hire a few more workers for stitching and pasting work. He has to purchase the raw materials. To meet these expenses, Salim obtains loans from two sources. First, he asks the leather supplier to supply leather now and promises to pay him later. Second, he obtains loan in cash from the large trader as advance payment for 1000 pairs of shoes with a promise to deliver the whole order by the end of the month. At the end of the month, Salim is able to deliver the order, make a good profit, and repay the money that he had borrowed.

Swapna's Problem

Swapna, a small farmer, grows groundnut on her three acres of land. She takes a loan from the moneylender to meet the expenses of cultivation, hoping that her harvest would help repay the loan. Midway through the season the crop is hit by pests and the crop fails. Though Swapna sprays her crops with expensive pesticides, it makes little difference. She is unable to repay the moneylender and the debt grows over the year into a large amount. Next year, Swapna takes a fresh loan for cultivation. It is a normal crop this year. But the earnings are not enough to cover the old loan. She is caught in debt. She has to sell a part of the land to pay off the debt.

- 1.1** In whose case credit played a vital and positive role?

- a. Swapna
- b. Salim
- c. Both
- d. None of the above

Answer- b

- 1.2** In Swapna's case what made loan repayment impossible?

- a. Crop failure
- b. Spraying of expensive pesticides
- c. Both a and b
- d. Only b

Answer- c

- 1.3** Which one of the following is not a source of credit mentioned in paragraphs?

- a. Trader
- b. Moneylender
- c. Bank
- d. Leather supplier

Answer- c

1.4 Who was not caught into debt trap?

- a. Salim
- b. Swapna
- c. Moneylender
- d. Leather supplier

Answer- a

2. Read the paragraph given below and answer the questions that follows

Variety of Credit Arrangements

Shyamal tells us that every season he needs loans for cultivation on his 1.5 acres of land. Till a few years back, he would borrow money from the village moneylender at an interest rate of five per cent per month (60% per annum). For the last few years, Shyamal has been borrowing from an agricultural trader in the village at an interest rate of three percent per month. At the beginning of the cropping season, the trader supplies the farm inputs on credit, which is to be repaid when the crops are ready for harvest. Besides the interest charge on the loan, the trader also makes the farmers promise to sell the crop to him. This way the trader can ensure that the money is repaid promptly. Also, since the crop prices are low after the harvest, the trader is able to make a profit from buying the crop at a low price from the farmers and then selling it later when the price has risen.

We next meet Arun who is supervising the work of one farm labourer. Arun has seven acres of land. He is one of the few persons in Sonpur to receive bank loan for cultivation. The interest rate on the loan is 8.5 per cent per annum, and can be repaid anytime in the next three years. Arun plans to repay the loan after harvest by selling apart of the crop. He then intends to store the rest of the potatoes in a cold storage and apply for a fresh loan from the bank against the cold storage receipt. The bank offers this facility to farmers who have taken crop loan from them.

2.1 How agricultural trader plans to receive loan repayment from farmers?

- a. Asking to sell crop to him only
- b. Asking to pay in monthly installments in next 3 years
- c. Asking to store crop in cold storage facility and selling when price is high
- d. None of the above

Answer- a

2.2 Who is paying more money while repaying loan?

- a. Shyamal
- b. Arun
- c. Only b

- d. Both a and b

Answer- a

2.3 Why agricultural trader asks farmers to repay loan at the time of harvest?

- a. Because prices are high at that time
- b. Because prices are low at that time
- c. Because he wants to sell crop later when prices are high
- d. None of the above

Answer- b

2.4 Who do you think might be affected less by loan?

- a. Shyamal
- b. Arun
- c. Only a
- d. Both a and b

Answer- b

3. Read the paragraph given below and answer the questions that follows

The various types of loans can be conveniently grouped as formal sector loans and informal sector loans. Among the former are loans from banks and cooperatives. The informal lenders include moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends, etc.

The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans. There is no organisation which supervises the credit activities of lenders in the informal sector. They can lend at whatever interest rate they choose. There is no one to stop them from using unfair means to get their money back. Compared to the formal lenders, most of the informal lenders charge a much higher interest on loans. Thus, the cost to the borrower of informal loans is much higher. Higher cost of borrowing means a larger part of the earnings of the borrowers is used to repay the loan. Hence, borrowers have less income left for themselves. In certain cases, the high interest rate for borrowing can mean that the amount to be repaid is greater than the income of the borrower. This could lead to increasing debt and debt trap. Also, people who might wish to start an enterprise by borrowing may not do so because of the high cost of borrowing.

3.1 Which of the following is not an informal sector loan?

- a. Relatives and banks
- b. Moneylenders
- c. Employers
- d. Cooperatives

Answer- d

3.2 Who supervises the functioning of informal sources of loans?

- a. The borrower
- b. Reserve Bank of India

- c. Moneylenders
- d. None of the above

Answer- d

3.3 Which one of the following is wrong about formal sector lenders?

- a. They provide credit on high interest rate
- b. They include banks and cooperative societies
- c. They are supervised by RBI
- d. Cost of borrowing is lower

Answer- a

3.4 Which loans usually lead to debt trap?

- a. Formal sector loans
- b. Informal sector loans
- c. Loan from commercial banks
- d. None of them

Answer- b

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's development. The various types of loans or credits can be grouped as formal sector loans and informal sector loans. Among the former are loans from banks and cooperatives. The informal lenders include moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends. Banks and cooperatives give loans on a lesser interest rate than the informal sector. But bank loans require proper documents and collateral. Absence of collateral is one of the major reasons why bank loans are not available to small farmers and people who wish to start small industries. Compared to the formal lenders, most of the informal lenders charge a much higher interest on loans. Thus, the cost to the borrower of informal loans is much higher. Higher cost of borrowing means a larger part of the earnings of the borrowers is used to repay the loan. For these reasons, banks and cooperative societies need to lend more to the poorer section of people. This would lead to higher incomes and many people could then borrow cheaply for a variety of needs. They could grow crops, do business, set up small-scale industries etc. They could set up new industries or trade in goods.

4.1 Identify the types of loans or credits can be grouped into:

- a. Formal sector
- b. Informal sector
- c. Both (a) and (b)
- d. Only (a)

Answer- c

4.2 What is the main reason that bank loans are not available to small farmers?

- a. Lack of proper documents
- b. Absence of collateral
- c. Both (a) and (b)
- d. None of the above

Answer- c

4.3 Which of the following is not a part of informal source of offenders?

- (a) RBI
- (b) Commercial banks
- (c) Moneylenders living in rural areas
- (d) Both (a) and (b)

Answer- d

4.4 Which one of the following statements is true regarding loans provided by formal and informal sector?

- a. Formal lenders charge a much higher interest on loans than informal lenders.
- b. Informal lenders charge a much higher interest on loans than formal lenders.
- c. Cost to the borrower of informal loans is much lower than formal loans.
- d. Both (b) and (c)

Answer- b

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS –

1. Mr. S.C. Pan wants to learn about barter system but he is not able to understand double coincidence of wants. What is double coincidence of wants?

Answer –Both parties have to agree to sell and buy each other's goods.

2. Mr. Shyam was given a check which he took to the bank but he was not given any money. When he asked about it, the cashier told him that check had A/C payee written on it. What does it mean?

Answer- A/C means payment in account only.

3. Mr. Jay Singh wants to get a loan for opening a cloth shop in main market. Which source of credit would be better for him and why?

Answer – Formal source of credit is better for him because

- a. Rate of interest is low
 - b. Lender cannot use unfair means to get money back
 - c. His chances of getting caught in debt trap are low.
4. Rohan and Rohit are fighting over which type of money should be included in modern form of money. Rohan says only paper notes and coins should be included in the list but Rohit says currency and deposits in banks should be included. Who is right?

Answer – Rohit is right because both currency and deposits in banks are considered modern money

5. Ms. Manisha has taken membership of a Self-Help group named Saraswati Self-Help group. Help Mr. Chennram to help her understand about Self-Help group.

Answer – a. An informal association of people who come together to find ways to improve their living conditions. They are generally self-governed and peer controlled.

- b. It is basically a community where 15-20 members generally women, usually belonging to one neighborhood meets and save regularly.
- c. Members can take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs on low interest rate.
6. Explain the social and economic values for which it is necessary to expand formal sources of credit in India.

Answer – a. To reduce dependence on informal sources of credit reduces.

- b. To make sure that everyone receives loans.

GLOBALISATION AND THE INDIAN ECONOMY (SUMMARY)

GLOBALIZATION is the process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries.

PRODUCTION ACROSS COUNTRIES:

Trade was the main channel of connecting distant countries before Multinational Corporations (MNCs) replaced it.

A Multinational Corporation(MNC) is a company that owns or controls production in more than one nation.

- ✓ MNCs not only produce the goods and services globally but also sell its finished products globally. The production process is divided into small parts and spread out across the globe. This helps in cost cutting.

INTERLINKING PRODUCTION ACROSS COUNTRIES –

- ✓ MNCs set up production where it is close to the markets; where there is skilled and unskilled labour available at low costs; and where the availability of other factors of production is assured and government policies are favorable.
- ✓ The money that is spent by MNCs to buy assets such as land, building, machines and other equipment is called foreign investment. Any investment is made with the hope that these assets will earn profits.
- ✓ Sometimes, MNCs set up production jointly with some of the local companies of these countries.
- ✓ The benefits to the local company of such joint production are -

- First, MNCs can provide money for additional investments, like buying new machines for faster production.
- Second, MNCs might bring with them the latest technology for production.
- ✓ Sometimes, MNCs buy up local companies and then expand production.
- ✓ MNCs in developed countries place orders for production with small producers.

FOREIGN TRADE AND INTEGRATION OF MARKETS –

- Foreign trade allows producers to sell their goods outside their domestic nations.
- It allows producers to compete with producer of another country.
- It also reduces prices of goods and provides more choices to consumers.
- Foreign trade thus results in connecting the markets or integration of markets in different countries.

WHAT IS GLOBALIZATION –

- Globalization is process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries.
- MNCs are playing a major role in the globalization process.
- More land more goods and services, investments and technology are moving between countries. Most regions of the world are in closer
- Besides the movements of goods, services, investments and technology, one more way in which the countries can be connected is the movement of people between countries. Who move in search of better income, better jobs or better education.

FACTORS THAT HAVE ENABLED GLOBALISATION –

Technology:

- Rapid improvements in technology for instance, improvements in transportation technology have made much faster delivery of goods across long distances possible at lower costs.
- Information and communication technology has made global transmission of information and communication possible at negligible costs.

Liberalization of foreign trade and investment policy:

- Liberalization is a process of removing barriers or restrictions set by the government. Trade barrier is one such barrier. Governments can use trade barriers to increase or decrease (regulate) foreign trade and to decide what kinds of goods and how much of each, should come into the country.
- With liberalization of trade, businesses are allowed to make decisions freely about the imports, exports and their investments.
- Starting around 1991 in India, the government decided to lift many barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment to a large extent.

WORLD TRADE ORGANISATION –

- It is an international organisation whose aim is to liberalize international trade. It establishes rules regarding international trade, and sees that these rules are obeyed. At present 164 countries of the world are currently members of the WTO.
- Started at the initiative of the developed countries, it establishes rules regarding international trade.
- Though it is supposed to get international trade liberalized, however many developed countries have unfairly retained trade barriers. On the other hand, WTO has forced developing countries to remove all trade barriers.

➤ For example, farmers in the USA are receiving massive sums of money from the US government to produce and export agricultural produce to other countries, due to which they can sell their produce at abnormally low prices in other countries, adversely impacting the farmers in these destination countries.

IMPACT OF GLOBALIZATION ON INDIA –

Positive impact:

- Increased investment by MNCs in India has led to the prosperous growth of local supplier companies in India.
- Increased competition benefitting Indian companies by inducing higher quality of goods.
- Creation of new opportunities for domestic service sector companies, in newer servicing fields like accounting, data entry, engineering etc.
- Some Indian companies have themselves developed into MNCs. For example, TATA Motors, Infosys, Asian Paints, Sundaram Fastener etc.

Negative impact:

- Small manufacturers and industries such as domestic industries of toys, tiers, vegetable oils etc. are unable to compete with large MNC's which is leading to their shut down.
- Due to increasing competition flexible employment culture have developed. Jobs are now unsecured.
- Most workers, today, are employed in the unorganized sector. Moreover, conditions of work in the organised sector have increasingly come to resemble the unorganised sector.

THE STRUGGLE FOR A FAIR GLOBALISATION –

Not everyone has benefited from globalization equally, people with education and skill have made the most out of it, while leaving many out. Fair globalization would create opportunities for all, and also ensure that the benefits of globalization are shared better.

Methods –

- By using government policies. For example, strong implementation of labour laws, protection to small manufacturing units, use of trade and investment barriers etc.
- Cases of unfair practices and domination of developed countries in WTO can be protested with the help of other developing countries.
- People can also play a major role by being vocal about their concerns and asking for forming favorable policy.

OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. Which one of the following organizations laid stress on liberalisation of foreign trade and foreign investment?
 - a. International Monetary Fund
 - b. International Labour Organisation
 - c. World Health Organisation
 - d. World Trade Organisation

Answer- d

2. Which one of the following refers to investment?
 - a. The money spent on religious ceremonies
 - b. The money spent on social customs
 - c. The money spent to buy assets such as land
 - d. The money spent on household goods

Answer- c

3. have been a major force in the globalization process connecting distant regions of the world?
 - a. Traders
 - b. International companies
 - c. Multinational corporations
 - d. Businesses houses

Answer- b

4. Special Economic Zones (SEZs) are being set up to attract
 - a. Foreign tourists
 - b. Foreign investment
 - c. Foreign goods
 - d. Foreign policies

Answer- b

5. Investment means spending on
 - a. Factory building
 - b. Machines
 - c. Equipments
 - d. All the above

Answer- d

6. MNCs set up offices and factories for production in regions where they can get.....?
 - a. Cheap labour and other resources.
 - b. Good market for profits
 - c. They can make great sales
 - d. More industry

Answer- a

7. The money that is spent to buy assets such as land, building, machines and other equipment by MNCs is called.....?
 - a. Investment
 - b. Foreign Investment

- c. Domestic investment
- d. International investment

Answer- b

- 8.** Entry of MNCs in a domestic market may prove harmful for
- a. all large-scale producers
 - b. All domestic producers
 - c. All substandard domestic producers
 - d. All small-scale producers

Answer- d

- 9.** Which of the following contributes to globalization?
- a. Internal trade
 - b. External trade
 - c. Large scale trade
 - d. Small scale trade

Answer- b

- 10.** Which of the following industries have been hard hit by foreign competition?
- a. Dairy products
 - b. Leather industry
 - c. Cloth industry
 - d. Vehicle industry

Answer- a

- 11.** Benefits enjoyed by companies who set up production units in the SEZs are:
- a. They do not have to pay taxes for some years
 - b. Reduction in excise duty
 - c. Reduced tariffs and barriers
 - d. None of the above

Answer- a

- 12.** Which one of the following is not true regarding the World Trade Organisation?
- a. It allows free trade to all countries without any trade barriers.
 - b. Its aim is to liberalize international trade.
 - c. It establishes rules regarding international trade.
 - d. WTO rules have forced the developing countries to remove trade barriers.

Answer- a

- 13.** In which other way do the MNCs control production?
- a. By land of local country
 - b. Send the latest technology from parent country
 - c. Place orders for production with small producers, which then sell these under their own brand name
 - d. Send the brand name to the company they buy

Answer- c

14. MNCs keep in mind certain factors before setting up production". Identify the incorrect option from the choices given below

- a. Availability of cheap skilled and unskilled labour
- b. Proximity to markets
- c. Presence of a large number of local competitors
- d. Favorable government policies

Answer- c

15. Which one of the following is a major benefit of joint production between a local company and a Multi-National Company?

- a. MNC can bring latest technology in the production
- b. MNC can control the increase in the price
- c. MNC can buy the local company
- d. MNC can sell the products under their brand name

Answer- a

CASE/SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS

1. Read the paragraphs given below and answer the questions that follows

In general, MNCs set up production where it is close to the markets; where there is skilled and unskilled labour available at low costs; and where the availability of other factors of production is assured. In addition, MNCs might look for government policies that look after their interests. You will read more about the policies later in the chapter. Having assured themselves of these conditions, MNCs set up factories and offices for production. The money that is spent to buy assets such as land, building, machines and other equipment is called investment. Investment made by MNCs is called foreign investment. Any investment is made with the hope that these assets will earn profits. At times, MNCs set up production jointly with some of the local companies of these countries. The benefit to the local company of such joint production is two-fold. First, MNCs can provide money for additional investments, like buying new machines for faster production. Second, MNCs might bring with them the latest technology for production.

1.1 Which of the following is not a condition checked by any MNC to set up factories and offices for production?

- a. Availability of cheap labour
- b. Closeness of market
- c. Only a
- d. Both a and b

Answer- c

1.2 Which of the following is wrong about investment?

- a. Investment is the amount of money spent on purchase of equipments
- b. Investment made by MNCs is called foreign investment
- c. Investment is made with the hope to earn profits
- d. Investment made by local companies is called foreign investment

Answer- d

1.3 Which of the following is not a benefit that local companies get when MNCs set up production jointly with the local companies of any country?

- a. Money for additional investment

- b. Access to latest technology
- c. Access to cheap labour
- d. Increase in market share

Answer- c

1.4 Which of the following might not be a benefit that MNCs get when MNCs set up production jointly with the local companies of any country?

- a. Access to cheap labour
- b. Extra access to market
- c. Decrease in investment amount
- d. Access to favorable government policies

Answer- c

2. Read the paragraphs given below and answer the questions that follows

The result of greater foreign investment and greater foreign trade has been greater integration of production and markets across countries. Globalization is this process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries. MNCs are playing a major role in the globalization process. More and more goods and services, investments and technology are moving between countries. Most regions of the world are in closer contact with each other than a few decades back. Besides the movements of goods, services, investments and technology, there is one more way c. This is through the movement of people between countries. People usually move from one country to another in search of better income, better jobs or better education. In the past few decades, however, there has not been much increase in the movement of people between countries due to various restrictions.

2.1 Which of the following is not a role of MNCs in globalization?

- a. Greater foreign investment
- b. Access to advanced technology
- c. Rapid movement of goods
- d. Rapid movement of people

Answer- d

2.2 Which of the following is not an example of globalization?

- a. Greater foreign trade
- b. Increase in movement of people in search of jobs
- c. Decrease in movement of people due to restrictions
- d. Increase in foreign investment

Answer- c

2.3 Which of the following is an example of movement between countries?

- a. Movement of goods
- b. Movement of technology
- c. Only a
- d. Both a and b

Answer- d

2.4 What has restricted the movement of people between countries?

- a. Restrictions by countries

- b. Globalization
- c. Foreign trade
- d. None of the above

Answer- a

3. Read the paragraphs given below and answer the questions that follows

USING IT IN GLOBALISATION

Information and communication technology (or IT in short) has played a major role in spreading out production of services across countries. A news magazine published for London readers is to be designed and printed in Delhi. The text of the magazine is sent through Internet to the Delhi office. The designers in the Delhi office get orders on how to design the magazine from the office in London using telecommunication facilities. The designing is done on a computer. After printing, the magazines are sent by air to London. Even the payment of money for designing and printing from a bank in London to a bank in Delhi is done instantly through the Internet(e-banking).

3.1 Which of the following is not a word describing the use of technology in production mentioned in paragraph?

- a. E – banking
- b. Designing
- c. Publishing
- d. Printing

Answer- a

3.2 Where the magazine does gets printed for readers in London?

- a. Delhi
- b. London
- c. Karachi
- d. Tokyo

Answer- a

3.3 By which technology design of the magazine is prepared?

- a. Telecommunication
- b. Information and communication technology
- c. E - banking
- d. None of the above

Answer- b

3.4 Which technology is used to make payment?

- a. Telecommunication
- b. Information and communication technology
- c. E – banking
- d. None of the above

Answer- c

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Mr. Shyam is a small producer of Raipur. A multinational company wants to tie up with him to open a factory in outskirt of Raipur. What benefit he might get from this?

Answer- a. Access to latest technology

b. Access to money for investment

c. Global recognition

2. Mr. Mohanlal owns a huge chain of delivery outlets. Which characteristics his business should have in order to be recognized as MNC?

Answer- a. Offices in many countries.

b. Tie up with local companies of other countries

c. Huge capital

3. Maharashtra government decided to weaken labour laws. How it will help companies?

Answer- a. They can get workers at cheap rates

b. They can ask workers to work for more hours

c. They can get relaxation in case of loss caused to workers due to accidents or negligence.

4. Help Sharat Chandra to know about telecommunication facilities.

Answer- Telecommunication facilities include telegraph, telephone including mobile phones, fax.

5. After reading an article about protest against WTO, Amin is trying to know about negative points about WTO. Which points he should include?

Answer- a. Developed countries dominate in WTO

b. WTO force developing countries to open their economies for trade.

c. WTO works in favor of developed countries.

SHORT /LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS (3M/5M)

Question 1. What changes have taken place in our markets during the last few years ?

Answer:

In the last few years, our markets have been transformed as mentioned below :

- There is a wide choice of goods and services in the markets.
- The latest models of digital cameras, mobile phones and televisions made by the leading manufacturers of the world are available in the markets. Not only these products are affordable and within reach of the people.

Thus a few years back, there were only few brands of different goods in the markets. A consumer did not have real choice and had no option to purchase a particular brand. But now he has a number of options between Indian as well as foreign brands.

Question 2.“Information and communication technology has played a major role in spreading out production of services across countries.” Justify the statement with examples. [CBSE 2016]

Or

Explain the factors that have enabled globalisation.

Or

How has information and communication technology stimulated Globalisation ? Explain with example.

Answer:

The factors that have enabled Globalisation are as given below :

1. Technology :

- In the past fifty years, several improvements in technology have taken place.
- For example, in transportation technology, containers are used for the transportation of goods which are placed in containers that can be loaded intact on to ships, railways, planes and trucks. Containers have led to huge reduction in port handling costs and increased the speed with which exports can reach markets.
- Similarly, the cost of air transport has fallen. This has enabled much greater volumes of goods being transported by airlines.

(2) Information technology :

- Telecommunication facilities – telegraph, mobile phones, fax – are used to contact one another around the world and to communicate from remote areas.
- This has been facilitated by satellite communication devices.
- Internet enables to send instant electronic mail and talk across the world at negligible costs.
- Now a news magazine published for London readers can be designed and printed in Delhi.
- The designing is done on a computer.
- After printing, the magazines are sent by air to London.
- Even the payment of money for designing and printing from a bank in London to a bank in Delhi is done instantly through the Internet e., e-banking.

(3) Liberalisation of foreign trade and foreign investment policy :

- Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is liberalisation. Under liberalisation goods can be imported and exported easily.
- Foreign companies are allowed to set up factories and offices in other countries.
- Thus liberalisation has enabled MNCs to increase their investments in other countries as India.
- As a result of greater foreign investment and greater foreign trade, there is greater integration of production and markets across countries.
- Globalisation is this process of rapid integration of interconnection between countries.

Question 3.“Globalisation and competition among producers has been of advantage to the consumers.” Give arguments in support of this statement.

Answer:

Globalisation and competition among producers has been of advantage to the consumers in the ways as mentioned below :

- Now there is more choice for the consumers in the markets. For example in the field of toys, the markets are flooded with Chinese toys which are cheaper and of better quality than Indian toys. People now have a choice between Indian toys and Chinese toys.
- The consumers now have products of better quality.
- The prices of various products have come down due to competition among the producers/manufacturers.
- Globalisation has led to improvement in the standard of living of people.

Question 4. What is a trade barrier ?

“Tax on imports is one type of trade barrier. The government could also place a limit on the number of goods that can be imported. This is known as quotas. Can you explain using the example of Chinese toys, how quotas can be used as trade barriers ? Do you think this should be used ? Discuss.

Answer:

1. Trade barrier means restrictions to increase or decrease foreign trade and to decide what kinds of goods and how much of each should come into the country.
2. Tax on imports is a trade barrier because this will lead to increase in the price of the product. In such a situation foreign products will become costlier than Indian goods and the Indian producer will be in a position to sell their products and earn profits.
3. In case of Chinese toys, quotas can be used as trade barrier because the government can put restrictions on the number and type of toys that can be imported into the country. In such case, there will be less competition between Indian toys and Chinese toys. The Indian toy makers may also not suffer losses. Quotas should be used as trade barriers in the interest of the Indian toy makers.

Question 5. Give arguments in favour of WTO.

Or

Write a short note on World Trade Organisation.

Ans.

(1) World Trade Organisation was set up in 1995 at the initiative of the developed countries. Its aim is to liberalise international trade. Its headquarters is at Geneva. WTO establishes rules regarding international trade among countries of the world in an open, uniform and non-discriminatory manner. In 2006, 149 countries of the world were its members.

(2)

1. With the liberalisation of foreign trade and investment, it is necessary to have an international organisation to supervise the trade between countries.
2. It sees that all the countries in the world liberalise their policies.
3. It allows free trade for all i.e., in developing and developed countries.
4. It implements the rules for trade in all the countries.
5. WTO looks after to make globalisation more fair to create opportunities for all and also ensure that the benefits of globalisation are shared better.

Question 6. Describe the major problems created by the globalisation for a larger number of small producers and workers.

Or

Describe the effects of globalisation on small producers and workers.

Answer:

Small producers such as producing batteries, capacitors, toys have been hit hard due to competition with the MNCs. They could not compete on the issue of price and quality. As a result of it, their production decreased and many units were closed. Many workers became jobless. Many employers prefer to employ workers on temporary basis which means workers' jobs are no longer secure. Women are denied their fair share of benefits. Workers have to put in very long working hours without any overtime.

Also see Textbook Question 6.

Question 7. What steps have been taken by the government to attract foreign investment ?

Answer:

The steps taken by the government to attract foreign investment are as mentioned below :

1. Industrial zones, called Special Economic Zones (SEZs) are being set up.
2. SEZs are to have world class facilities : electricity, water, roads, transport, storage etc.
3. Companies who set up production units in the SEZs do not have to pay taxes for an initial period of five years.
4. The government has also allowed flexibility in labour laws g., workers can be hired for short period.

Question 8. Describe the steps that may be taken to make globalisation more 'fair'.

Answer:

The following steps may be taken to make globalisation more fair :

- Labour laws should be implemented properly to avoid exploitation of the workers.
- The government should protect the interest of the small producers by using trade and investment barriers till they are in a position to compete with large producers or MNCs.
- The government should negotiate at the WTO for “fairer rules”.
- The government should align with other developing countries to fight against the domination of developed countries.

RESOURCE AND DEVELOPMENT

‘Resource’:

Everything available in our environment which can be used to satisfy our needs, is called a resource. It should be technologically accessible, economically feasible and culturally acceptable. Only then, it can be termed as a ‘Resource’. Examples: minerals, forests, fossil fuels etc.

Sustainable

development:

Sustainable economic development means that ‘development should take place without damaging the environment and development in the present should not compromise with the needs of future generation’.

Land under important relief features in India:

Plains-43%, Mountains-30%, Plateaus-27%

Land

Degradation:

Continuous use of land over a long period of time without taking appropriate measures to conserve and manage it.

Measures to solve problem of land degradation:

Afforestation, proper management of grazing to control overgrazing planting of shelter belts of plants, stabilization of sand dunes by growing thorny bushes, control of mining activities, avoid over-irrigation and overuse of fertilizers and pesticides;

Soil

erosion:

The denudation of the soil cover and subsequent washing down is soil erosion. Reasons for soil erosion include—

- Human activities like deforestation, over grazing construction, mining defective method of fanning etc.;
- Natural forces like wind, glacier and water flow.

Types

of

erosion:

(a) Gully erosion. The running water cuts through the clayey soils and makes deep channels known as gullies.

This makes the land bad land and in the Chambal basin such land is known as ravines;

(b) Sheet erosion. When top soil over large area is washed away it is known as sheet erosion.

Methods to prevent soil erosion in hilly area:

Ploughing along the contour lines-contour ploughing; terrace cultivation; strip farming and shelter belts.

Soils and its types:

- Alluvial soils: Entire northern plains are made of alluvial soil. Also found in the eastern coastal plains particularly in the deltas of the Mahanadi, the Godavari, the Krishna and the Kaveri rivers. Fertile soil

therefore, fit for agriculture purpose. Regions of alluvial soils are intensively cultivated and densely populated. Rich in potash, phosphoric acid and lime which are ideal for the growth of sugarcane, paddy, wheat and other cereal and pulse crops.

- Black soil: Black in colour and are also known as regur soils. Ideal for growing cotton and is also known as black cotton soil. Found in the plateaus of Maharashtra, Saurashtra, Malwa, Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh also along the Godavari and the Krishna valleys. Made up of extremely fine, i.e., clayey material. Well-known for their capacity to hold moisture. Rich in calcium carbonate, magnesium, potash and lime.
- Red and yellow soils: Found in the areas of low rainfall in the eastern and southern parts of the Deccan plateau. Also found in parts of Odisha, Chhattisgarh, southern parts of the middle Ganga plain and along the piedmont zone of the Western Ghats. Develop a reddish colour due to diffusion of iron in crystalline and metamorphic rocks.
- Laterite soils: Develops in areas with high temperature and heavy rainfall. Found in Karnataka, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh, and the hilly areas of Odisha and Assam. Suitable for cultivation with adequate doses of manures and fertilizers. Low Humus content because decomposers, like bacteria, get destroyed due to high temperature.
- Arid soils: Found in the western parts of Rajasthan. After proper irrigation these soils become cultivable. Lacks humus and moisture because dry climate, high temperature make evaporation faster. Salt content is very high and common salt is obtained by evaporating the water.
- Forest soils: Found in the hilly and mountainous areas where sufficient rain forests are available. Feature differs based on location. Loamy and silty in valley sides and coarse grained in the upper slopes. Sil in the lower parts of the valleys particularly on the river terraces and alluvial fans are fertile.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which of the following soil is ideal for growing cotton?
 - a) Regur soil
 - b) Laterite soil
 - c) Desert soil
 - d) Mountainous soil
2. Soil is formed by the process of.
 - a) Denudation
 - b) Weathering
 - c) Gradation
 - d) Erosion
3. Land left without cultivation for one or less than one year is called.
 - a) Culturable waste land
 - b) Current fallow land
 - c) Waste land
 - d) None of the above
4. “There is enough for everybody need but not for everybody greed” who said this.
 - a) Jawaharlal Nehru
 - b) Atal Bihari Bhajpayi
 - c) M.kGandi
 - d) Sundar Pichai
5. The first international earth summit was held on.
 - a) Rio de Janario

- b) Geneva
 - c) Japan
 - d) France
6. The most widespread relief feature of India is.
- a) Mountains
 - b) Plains
 - c) Forest
 - d) Plateaus
7. Resource planning is essential for _____ existence of all form of life
- a) Ecological balance
 - b) Exploitation
 - c) Sustainable
 - d) None of these
8. Which of the following method is used to break up the force of wind?
- a) Shelter belt
 - b) Contour ploughing
 - c) Strip cropping
 - d) Terrace farming
9. Geothermal energy in Puga valley and Parvati valley are
- a) Stock resource
 - b) Reserve resource
 - c) Developed resource
 - d) Potential resource
10. Material in the environments which have the potential to satisfy the human need but human being don't have appropriate technology to access them are called
- a) Potential resource
 - b) Developed resource
 - c) Stocks
 - d) Reserve

ANSWER

1 (a), 2 (b), 3(b), 4(c), 5(a), 6(b), 7(c), 8(c), 9(c), 10(c)

VERY SHORT TYPE QUESTION (2M)

1.what is Net sown Area?

Ans. The physical extent of land on which crops are sown and harvested is known as net sown area.

2. What is gross cropped area?

Ans. Area sown more than once in an agricultural year plus net slow area is known as gross cropped area.

3. What is wasteland?

Ans. Wasteland includes rocky, arid desert areas and land put to other non-agricultural uses including settlements, roads, railways, industries etc.

4. How does land degradation occur?

Ans. Continuous use of land over a long period of time without taking appropriate measures to conserve and manage it, result in land degradation.

5. How is over irrigation responsible for land degradation in Punjab?

Ans. Over-irrigation is responsible for land degradation due to water logging leading to increase in Salinity and alkalinity in the soil.

6. How is cement industry responsible for Land degradation?

Ans. The mineral processing like grinding of limestone for cement industry is responsible for land degradation.

7. How is mining activity responsible for land degradation in Jharkhand?

Ans. 1 mining activity caused deep scars and traces of overburdening.

2 deforestation leads to land degradation.

8. Which Type of soil in India is most widespread and important?

Ans. Alluvial soil in India is most widespread and important.

9. Why is alluvial soil called fertile soil?

Ans. Mostly alluvial soil contains an adequate proportion of potash, phosphoric acid lime which are ideal for the growth of sugarcane, Paddy, wheat and other cereals and pulses crops.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (3M)

1. Describe the different steps of 'resource planning'?

Ans. Steps of Resource planning:

- (I) Identification and inventory of resources
- (II) Evolving a planning structure endowed with appropriate technology, skill and institutional set up.
- (III) Resources development plans are matched with overall national development plans.

2. Describe the need of resources for human survival.

Ans. Resources needed for human survival:

- (I) Humans can transform material into resources and use them.
- (II) Human-being use resources as raw materials to satisfy their needs and comforts.
- (III) They use them for making clothes, food and Constituting houses.
- (IV) They use energy resources like coal, gases, etc.

3. Describe the importance of judicious use of resources.

Ans. Judicious use of resources

- (I) Resources are vital for any developmental activity.
- (II) Irrational consumption and over-utilisation may lead to socioeconomic and environmental problems.
- (III) Most of the resources are non-renewable, if exhausted, then they may not be able to be recreated.

4. Describe any three main features of the black soil.

Ans. (I) Black soil is black in colour and also known as regur soil.

(II) Black soil is well known for its capacity to hold moisture.

(III) It is rich in calcium carbonate, magnesium, potash& lime.

5. Which factors affect the land use pattern of India?

Ans. (I) The land use pattern is determined by certain physical factors of the country such as topography, climate and soil types. The availability of geographical area determines its uses by the country. In India we have various forms of land like plains, plateaus, mountains, etc. which are kept in mind before planning the land use patterns.

(II) There are certain human factors also affecting the land use pattern. They include population density of the country, technologically capability culture and traditions of the country etc. The economic development of the country depends on the technological development of the country thus leading to the planning of land use patterns.

6. Describe the importance of an equitable distribution of resources in the society.

Ans. Importance of equitable distribution of resources:

- (I) For a sustained quality of life.
- (II) To eliminate the difference between rich and poor in the society.
- (III) To reduce poverty.
- (IV) To maintain global peace.
- (V) To prevent our planet from danger.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (5M)

1. What efforts were made for resource planning in the first five year plan?

Ans. (I) The availability of resources is a necessity condition for the development of any religions. But technologically knowledge is an important prerequisite for it.

(II) There are many regions in our country that are rich in resources but are economically backward; whereas there are some regions which have a poor resources base but are economically developed.

(III) Resources can contribute to development only when they are accompanied by appropriate technological development.

(IV) In India, development or resource development does not only mean the availability of resources but also the technology, quality of human resources and the historical experiences of the people.

2. What are the causes of land degradation? What are the ways to solve this problem?

Ans. Causes of land degradation:

- (I) Mining sites are abandoned after the Excavation work is done leaving deep scars of overburdening. In states like Odisha, Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, deforestation due to mining has caused severe land degradation.
- (II) Overgrazing in states like Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra is one of the main reasons behind land degradation.
- (III) Minerals processing like grinding of limestone for cement industry and calcite and soapstone for ceramic industry generate huge quantities of dust in the atmosphere. It stops the infiltration of water in the soil.

Ways to check land degradation:

- (I) Afforestation and proper management of grazing can help to check land degradation.

- (II) Planning of shelterbelts help in checking the sand causing land degradation near the desert.
- (III) Overgrazing can be checked and avoided.
- (IV) Proper management of wastelands can be taken up.

3.What are the various methods of soil conservation?

Ans. Methods of soil conservation:

- (I) Contour ploughing: ploughing along the contour lines can check the flow of water down the slopes. It is called contour ploughing. It can be practiced on the hills.
- (II) Terrace cultivation: steps can be cut out on the slopes making terrace. It restricts soil erosion. It is practiced in Western and central Himalayas.
- (III) Strip cropping: large fields can be divided into strips. Strips of grass are left to grow between the crops. This breaks up the force of wind. This method is called strip cropping.
- (IV) Planting of shelter belts: planting lines of trees to create shelter also checks the soil erosion. Rows of such trees are called shelter belts. These shelter belts have contributed significantly to the stabilization of sand dunes and in stabilizing the desert in Western India.

4. “Consequences of environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries”. Justify the statement.

Ans. (I) The increase in population of land, water, air, noise and resulting in degradation of the environment cannot be overlooked.

(II) Population of river waters affects all as most of the rivers pass through different states.

(III) Air pollution caused by the presence of high proportion of undesirable gases adversely affects human health and atmosphere as a whole.

(IV) Thermal pollution of river water affects the aquatic life irrespective of state and national boundaries.

5. Why do we need to conserve resources?

Ans.(I) The availability of resources is a necessary condition for the development of any region.

(II) Resources are vital for any developmental activity.

(III) But irrigational consumption and over utilization of resources may lead to socio- economic and environmental problems.

(IV) To overcome these problems, resources conservation at various levels is important.

(V) If the present trend of resources depletion by the few individuals and countries continues the future of our planet is in danger.

Therefore, we need to conserve resources for sustainable existence of all forms of life.

PASSAGE

Arid soils range from red to brown in colour. They are generally sandy in texture and saline in nature. In some area the salt content is very high and common salt is obtained by evaporating the water. Due to the dry climate, high temperature, evaporation is faster and the soil lacks humus and moisture. The lower horizons of the soil are occupied by kankar because of the increasing calcium content downwards. The kankar layer formation is the bottom horizons restrict the infiltration of water. After proper irrigation, these soils become cultivable as has been in the case of western Rajasthan.

1. What are the 2 components lacking by dry climate in high temperature?

2. The lower horizons of the soil are occupied by what and why?
3. what does the kankar layer formation restrict in the bottom horizons?

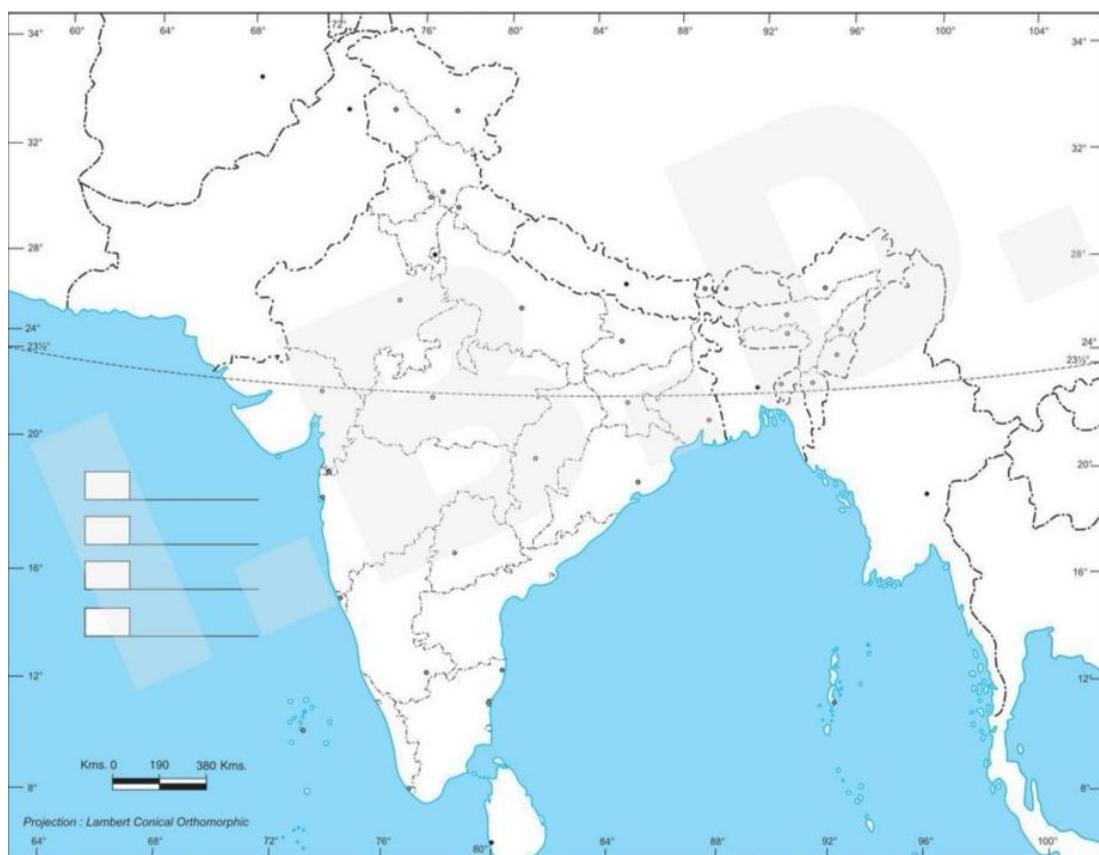
ANSWER

1. Human and moisture.
2. The lower horizons of the soil are occupied by kankar because of the increasing calcium content downwards.
3. The kankar layer formation in the bottom horizons restrict the infiltration of water.

MAP QUESTION

1. On the given map of India, mark three states where laterite soil is found

Ans. Madhya Pradesh, Odisha and Kerala



FOREST AND WILDLIFE

- ◆ Biosphere : Part of the earth which is covered by living organisms both plants and animals.
- ◆ Ecosystem : An integrated unit consisting of the community of living organisms and the physical environment.
- Flora : Plants of a particular region or period are referred to as flora.
- ◆ Fauna : Species of animals are known as fauna.
- ◆ Forest : Extensive area covered with trees.

- ◆ Wildlife Sanctuary : A reserved area for preserving natural beauty, e.g., wildlife.
- ◆ Biodiversity : It is the sum total of all the varieties of species of plants, animals and micro-organisms living on the earth.
- ◆ Normal species : The species whose population levels are considered to be normal for their survival, such as cattle, sal, pine, rodents, etc.
- ◆ Endangered species : The species which are in danger of extinction.
- ◆ Vulnerable species : These are some species whose population has declined to levels from where it is likely to move into the endangered category in the near future if the negative factors continue to operate.
- ◆ Rare species : Species with small population may move into the endangered or vulnerable category if the negative factors affecting them continue to operate.,
- ◆ Endemic species : These are species which are only found in some particular areas usually isolated by natural or geographical barriers. For example Nicobar pigeon.
- ◆ Extinct species : These are species which are not found after searches of known or likely areas where they may occur. A species may be extinct from a local area, region, country, continent or the entire earth. Examples of such species are the Asiatic cheetah, pink head duck.
- ◆ The Indian Wildlife Act : It was an act implemented in 1972, with various provisions for protecting natural habitats.
- ◆ Reserved Forests : These are the most valuable forests as far as the conservation of forest and wildlife resources are concerned.
- ◆ Protected forests : These are the forests which are protected from any further depletion.
- ◆ Unclassed forests : These are forests and wastelands belonging to both government and private individuals and communities.
- ◆ Permanent forests : Reserved and protected forests are referred as permanent forest estates maintained for the purpose of producing timber and other forest produce and for protective reasons.
- ◆ Chipko Movement : It was a movement launched by the people of the Himalayas against deforestation.
- ◆ Joint Forest Management : It was a programme launched for management and restoration of degraded forests.

MCQ

1. Which of these statements is not a valid reason for the depletion of flora and fauna?
 - (a) Agricultural expansion
 - (b) Large -scale developmental project
 - (c) Grazing and fuel wood collection
 - (d) Rapid industrialisation and Urbanisation
2. Which of the following conservation strategies does not directly involve community participation?
 - (a) Joint forest management
 - (b) Beti Bachao Andolan

- (c) Chipko Movement
 - (d) Demarcation of Wildlife sanctuaries
3. The forest cover in our country has recently increased due to :
- (a) Increase in natural forest growth
 - (b) Increase in net sown area
 - (c) Plantation by different agencies
 - (d) None of the above
4. Substantial parts of the tribal belts in north -eastern India have been deforested by:
- (a) Shifting cultivation
 - (b) Mining
 - (c) Infrastructure development
 - (d) None of the above
5. Forest and wastelands belonging to both private individuals and government are known as:
- (a) Sacred groves
 - (b) Reserved forests
 - (c) Protected forest
 - (d) Unclassed forests
6. Which one of the following is an endangered species of Manipur?
- (a) Blue sheep
 - (b) Asiatic Buffalo
 - (c) Sangai
 - (d) Cattle
7. In which year the Indian Wildlife protection Act was implemented?
- (a) 1970
 - (b) 1971
 - (c) 1972
 - (d) 1974
8. In which one the following states Periyar tiger reserves located?
- (a) Kerala
 - (b) Chhattisgarh
 - (c) Tamil Nadu
 - (d) West Bengal

9. What was the aim of the Chipko movement?

- (a) human right
- (b) agriculture expansion
- (c) political rights
- (d) forest conservation

10. The Buxar tiger reserve is situated in which of the following states?

- (a) west Bengal
- (b) Madhya Pradesh
- (c) Rajasthan
- (d) Goa

ANSWER

1(c), 2(d), 3(c), 4(a), 5(d), 6(c), 7 (c), 8(a), 9(d), 10(a).

VERY SHORT QUESTION (2m)

1. What is the role of forest in ecological system?

Ans. Forest is the primary producer in which all living organism depend.

2. Which species are called normal species?

Ans. species whose population are considered to be the normal for the survival such as cattle, sheep.

3. Which species are considered vulnerable?

Ans. species whose population declined and likely to move in endangered species in the near future.

4. What is rare species?

Ans. species with small population may move into endangered category if negative factor affecting them continue to operate. Example desert fox.

5. What are endemic species?

Ans. Species that are found in only particular area. example Nicobar pigeon.

6. How were forest depleted by tribal people of India?

Ans. Substantial part of tribal belts, especially in the north-eastern and central India has cleared the forest for practicing shifting cultivation or Jhumming agriculture.

7. Which forest are protected forest?

Ans. Almost one third of the total forest are protected forest, as declared by forest department. These forest lands are protected from any further depletion.

8. Which forest is categorized as unclassed forest?

Ans. These are other forest belonging to government and private individual or communities.

9. What do you know about Chipko movement?

Ans. The famous Chipko movement resisted deforestation in several area and show community afforestation

10. What do you understand by joint forest management programme?

Ans. Joint Forest Management Programme. In it, local communities are involved in management and restoration of degraded forest in India.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

1. How are flora and fauna in India under great threat?

Ans. (I) India is one of the world's richest countries in flora and fauna this diverse flora and fauna are so well integrated in our daily lifestyle

(II) But they are under great stress mainly due to insensitivity towards the involvement

(III) Some estimates suggest that at least 10% of India's wild flora and 20% of mammals are on threatening list

(IV) Many of these are on the verge of extinction like cheetah pink headed duck plant like madhca .

2. What were the provisions of India wildlife act of 1972?

Ans. (I) It was implemented with various provisions for protecting habitat.

(II) The thrust of program was towards protecting the remaining population of certain endangered species by banning hunting giving legal protection to their habitat and restricting trade in wildlife.

3. How the villagers of Alwar district of Rajasthan are struggling to conserve their forest and wild life?

Ans. The inhabitants of 5 villages in the Alwar district of Rajasthan have declared 1200 hectares of forest as badavas of century declaring their own set of rules and regulation which do not align hunting and are protecting the wildlife against outside encroachment

4. Grazing and fuel wood collection are not responsible for deforestation in India. Support the statement with suitable reason.

Ans. Many environmentalists hold the view that grazing and fuel wood collection are responsible for depletion of forest.

But actually more try are cut rather than need of teak wood for furniture and other requirements

Due to rapid industrialization demand of wood and land made the forest fall due to urbanisation forest are cleared for the settlement of people

These are the real causes of deforestation

5. Nature worship is an age old belief. Explain how it helped in forest and wildlife conservation.

Ans. (i) Nature worship is an age old driver belief based on the belief that all creation of nature have to be protected. Such beliefs have preserved several virgin forests in pristine form. These are called sacred groves

(ii) Dispatches of forest have been left untouched by the local people and any interference with them is banned.

(iii) Some particular trees in the category are Mahua, kadamba, tamarind, pepal, banyan, tulsi and many more. All days trees are protected by local tribes of various regions of India and are worshipped or their leaves are used for auspicious occasions like wedding some religious ceremonies and festival like Diwali

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

1. Mention the private and governmental steps taken to conserve forest and wildlife.

Ans. (i) In some areas of India local communities are struggling to conserve forest and wildlife along with government officials to secure their own livelihood

(ii) The famous chipko movement in the Himalaya was organised which has not only successful registered deforestation in several areas but has also shown the community a forestation with indigenous species can be enormously successful

(iii) Attempt to revive the traditional conservation method of developing new method of ecological farming and now widespread.

(iv) In India the joint forest management program furnaces as a good example for involving local communities in the management and restoring of degraded forest.

(v) Nature worship is an age old driver belief based on the premise that all creation of nature have to be protected such believe have preserved several virgin forest in pristine form called sacred grooves.

(vi) The central government has announced several projects for protecting specific animal which wear threatened including the tiger

2. Explain any five different categories of existing plant and animal species based on the international union for conservation of nature and natural resource with example

Ans. (i) Normal species: species whose population are considered to normal for survival of them. Example, cattle.

(ii) Endangered species: these are species which are in danger of extinction . Example, crocodile, Indian wild ass, Indian Rhine

(iii) Vulnerable species: these species whose population has declined to level from where it is likely to move into endangered category in future. Example, Asiatic elephant

(iv) Rare species with small population may move into the endangered category if the negative factor affecting them continues to operate. Examples, Himalayan brown bear

(v) Endemic: species that are found in only a certain area are called endemic species. Example, Nicobar pigeon

(vi) Extinct species: species which are not found now after searches. Example, pink head duck

PASSAGE

In 1960s and 1970s, conservationist demanded a National Wildlife protection program. The Indian wildlife Protection Act was implemented in 1972 , with various provision for protecting habitats. And All India list of protected species was also published. The trust of the program was towards protecting the remaining population of certain endangered species by banning hunting, giving legal protection to their habitat,. And restricting trade in wildlife subsequently, central and many state government stabilized national Parks and Wildlife centuries about which you have already studied. The central government also announced several project for protecting specific animals which were gravely threatened including the tiger, the one horned rhino , the Kashmir stag or hangul, 3 type of crocodile freshwater crocodile, saltwater crocodile and the gharial , the asiatic lion and other. Most recently the Indian elephant ,the blackbuck (chinkara), the great Indian bustard, and the snow leopard etc have been given full or partial legal protection against hunting and trade throughout India

1. Which act was implemented in 1972?

Ans. Wildlife protection act

2. Who demanded the National Wildlife protection program?

3. Ans. The conservationists demand the national Wildlife protection programme.

4. Which animal have been recently given full or partial legal protection against hunting and trade throughout India?

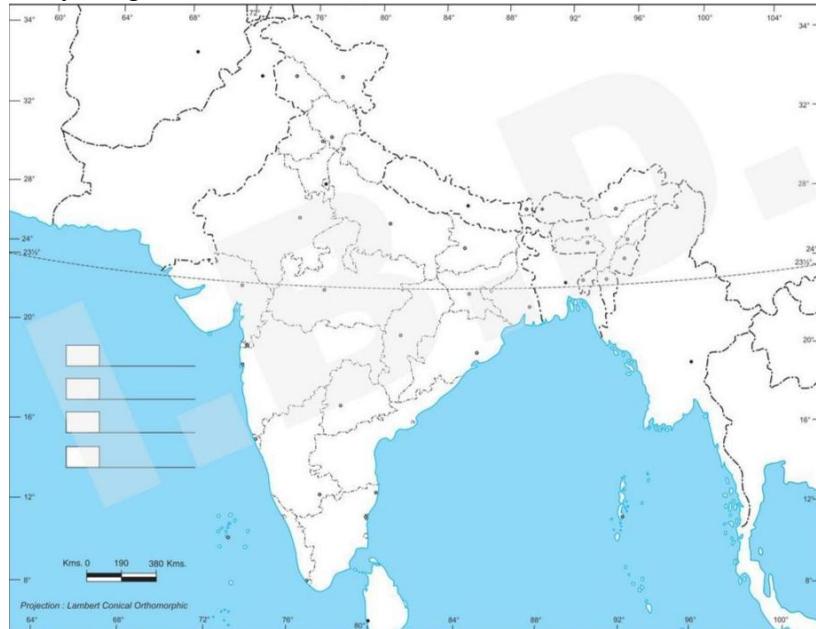
Ans. The Indian elephant, black buck, the great Indian bustard and the snow leopard

MAPWORK

1. Mark these on the following map of India.

(A) Panna biosphere reserve

- (B) Corbett national park
- (C) Sundarbans national park
- (D) Sariska wildlife sanctuary
- (E) Manas tiger reserve
- (F) Periyar tiger reserve



WATER RESOURCE (SUMMARY)

Fresh water:

96.5 per cent of the total volume of world's water is estimated to exist as oceans and only 2.5 per cent exists as fresh water. 70 per cent of the fresh water occurs as ice sheets and glaciers in Antarctica, Greenland and the mountainous regions of the world. Less than 30 per cent is stored as groundwater in the world's aquifers. Fresh water is mainly obtained from surface run off and ground water. This is continually being renewed and recharged through the hydrological cycle. All the water moves within the hydrological cycle making water a renewable resource.

Three fresh water sources are:

Precipitation—from rainfall; Surface water—in rivers, lakes, etc.; Ground water—water stored in underground aquifers which gets recharged by rainfall.

Water scarcity:

Water scarcity means shortage of water. It is usually associated with regions having low rainfall or drought prone areas.

There are many other reasons which lead to scarcity of water:

Large growing population; In the agricultural sector, water resources are being over-exploited to expand irrigated areas and dry- season agriculture; More water required for irrigation purposes to facilitate higher food production, i. e., for doing multiple cropping and for HYV seeds; There is greater demand for water with growing urbanization and industrialization; An unequal access to water among different social groups; The quality of water is deteriorating, i.e., getting polluted by domestic and industrial wastes, chemical fertilizers and pesticides used in agriculture; Excessive use of water by industries which also require water to generate hydro-electric power to run them; and Over exploitation of water in the urban areas.

Adverse effects of over-exploitation of ground water resources:

- Pumping out more water from under the ground may lead to falling ground water levels.
- It will adversely affect water availability.
- This, in turn, will affect our agriculture and food security of the people.
- Impoverishment of water resources may adversely affect the ecological cycle.

Main causes of water pollution:

Domestic wastes, especially urban sewers; industrial wastes are disposed off in the water without proper treatment; chemical effluents from industries and from agricultural sector; and many human activities, e.g., religious rituals and immersing of idols, etc. in the water also pollute water.

Measures for water conservation:

- Do not overdraw the ground water, recharge it by techniques like rainwater harvesting; tapping rainwater in reservoirs, watershed development programmes, etc.
- Avoid wastage of water at all levels and do not pollute the water.
- Adopting water conserving techniques of irrigation, e.g., drip irrigation and sprinklers etc., especially in dry areas.

A dam is a barrier across flowing water that obstructs, directs or retards the flow, creating a reservoir, lake or impoundment. A dam is the reservoir and not the whole structure.

Multipurpose river valley projects —'The Temples of Modern India':

Jawaharlal Nehru pro-claimed that multipurpose projects are 'The Temples of Modern India', because they were thought of as the vehicle that would lead the nation to development and progress. He believed that these projects with their integrated water resource management approach would integrate development of agriculture and the village economy with rapid industrialization and growth of the urban economy.

Advantages:

- They bring water to those areas which suffer from water scarcity and also provide water for irrigation;
- These projects generate electricity for industries and our homes;
- They help in controlling floods;
- These projects can be used for recreation, inland navigation and fish breeding.

Disadvantages:

- Damming of rivers affects their natural flow causing poor sediment flow;

- Excessive sedimentation at the bottom of the reservoir;
- Lack of sediments results in (a) rockier stream bed and (b) poorer habitat for the rivers aquatic life;
- The reservoirs submerge the existing vegetation and soil, leading to its decomposition over time;
- They affect the fertility levels of the soil;
- Cause large scale displacement of local communities.

Traditional rainwater harvesting methods practiced in different parts of the country:

- In mountainous areas ‘Guls’ and ‘Kuls’ the diversion channels were built for agriculture.
- ‘Rooftop rainwater harvesting’ was commonly practiced to store drinking water, especially in Rajasthan.
- Inundation channels for irrigation were developed in the flood plains of West Bengal.
- In arid and semi-arid regions, agricultural fields were converted into rain fed storage structures, e.g., ‘Khadins’ in Jaisalmer and ‘Johads’ in other parts of Rajasthan.
- In semi-arid and arid regions of Rajasthan, particularly in Bikaner, Phalodi and Banner, all the houses had underground tanks or ‘tankas’ built inside the house for storing drinking water. They were a part of the well-developed rooftop rainwater harvesting system.

‘Narmada Bachao Andolan’:

Narmada Bachao Andolan or Save Narmada Movement is an NGO that mobilized tribal people, farmers, environmentalists and human rights activists against the Sardar Sarovar Dam being built across the Narmada river in Gujarat. The movement originally focused on environmental issues related to submerging of trees under the dam water. Recently its aim has been to enable the displaced poor people to get full rehabilitation facilities from the government.

MCQ

1. Rana pratapsagar dam located in?
 - (A) Odisha
 - (B) Uttrakhund
 - (C) Rajasthan
 - (D) Andrapradesh
2. Bamboo drip irrigation system is prevalent in.
 - (A) Manipur
 - (B) Meghalaya
 - (C) Mizoram
 - (D) Chhattisgarh
3. The Hirakud project was built in _____ basin.
 - (A) Indus
 - (B) Mahanadi
 - (C) Ganga
 - (D) Ravi
4. The Narmada Bachao Aandolan was associated with which state?
 - (A) Gujarat
 - (B) Himachal Pradesh
 - (C) Uttrakhand
 - (D) Karnataka
5. The remote village that has earned the rare distinction of being rich in rain water is.
 - (A) Gari

- (B) Kaza
(C) Gendathur
(D) None of these
6. Name the village where almost all the houses traditionally had tankas.
(A) Rajasthan
(B) Odisha
(C) Tamil Nadu
(D) Maharashtra
7. Which of the following river is not having any multipurpose river project?
(A) Sutlej
(B) Mahanadi
(C) Yamuna
(D) Narmada
8. During whose reign were the dams, lakes and irrigation system built extensively?
(A) Ashoka
(B) Akbar
(C) Chandragupta Maurya
(D) None of these
9. What were "guls"
(A) Reservoir
(B) Artificial lake
(C) Diversion channel
(D) None of these
10. Tehri dam Andolan is mainly concerned with the state of?
(A) Uttarakhand
(B) Chhattisgarh
(C) Jharkhand
(D) None of these

ANSWER

1(c), 2(b), 3(b), 4(a), 5(c), 6(a), 7(c), 8(c), 9(c), 10(a)

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTION (2m)

1. How is freshwater obtained?

Answer. Mainly obtained from surface run off and groundwater.

2. What was the method used in the ancient period to conserve water?

Answer. Dam builds of stone rubble, reservoir or lake, embankment and canal for irrigation.

3. What are the benefits of dam?

Answer. Irrigation, electricity generation, water supply for domestic and industrial uses, flood control, recreation, inland navigation and fish breeding.

4. Why were multipurpose projects launched after independence of India?

Answer. Multipurpose project were thought of as a vehicle that would lead the nation to development and progress overcoming the handicap of its colonial past

5. What wear “kuls” or “guls”?

Answer. These are the divergent channel for irrigation purpose. These are mainly used in western Himalaya for water harvesting and agriculture.

6. What wear Johads and khadins?

Answer. In arid and semiarid region the agriculture field were converted into rain fed storage structure that allowed the water to stand and moisture the soil these were called khadins in jaisalmer and johad in other part of Rajasthan.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTION (3m)

1. Give various method of rainwater harvesting since ancient time.

Ans:- Guls and kuls: in hilly and mountain region people built diversion channels called kuls and guls in western Himalayas. a kul Or gul lead to a circular village tank from which water is released as and when required.

Inundation channels: in the flood plains of Bengal, people develop inundation channel to irrigate their field.

Khadins and johads: in arid and semi arid region agriculture field were converted into rain fed storage structure that allowed the water to stand and moisture soil called khadins in Jaiselmer and johad in other part of Rajasthan.

Tankas:Circular holes are made in the ground, lined with fine polished lime. In Bikaner and barmer of Rajasthan almost all the house traditionally had underground tank as for storing drinking water.

2. Why did Jawaharlal Nehru proudly proclaim the dam as the temple of modern India?

Ans. Multipurpose projects launch after independence with their integrated water resources management approach where thought of as a vehicle that would lead the nation to the development and progress. Jawaharlal Nehru proclaims the dam as the temple of modern India, as it would integrate the development of agriculture and village economy with rapid industrialization and growth of urban economy.

3. With the help of an example each compares a single issue movement and a long term movement?

Ans. Single issue movements are those which seek to achieve a single objective within a limited time period. example, Narmada Bachao Andolan.

Long term movement is those which seek to achieve a long goal in very long term. Example , environmental movement etc.

4. “The dam that were constructed to control flood have triggered flood”. analyzed the statement.

Ans. (i) Sedimentation in the reserves causes floods.

(ii) Big dams have mostly been unsuccessful for controlling floods at the time of excessive rainfall.

(iii) Sudden release of water from dam cause devastation and flood.

5. Is rainwater harvesting practiced these days in the western Rajasthan? Support your answer.

Ans. These day, in western Rajasthan, sadly the practice of rooftop rainwater harvesting is on the decline as plenty of water is available due to perennial Rajasthan canal though some house is still maintain the tankers since they do not like the taste of tap water.

6. “Rainwater harvesting system is a viable alternative both socio-economically and environmentally” .support the statement with example.

Ans., Keeping in views the disadvantage and rising resistance against the multi purpose dam water harvesting system is considered a viable alternative both socio-Economically and environmentally.

For example, rooftop rainwater harvesting is the most common practice in Shillong, Meghalaya. Though this region receives the highest rainfall in the world yet the state capital Shillong faces acute water shortage. Nearly every household in the city has a rooftop rain water harvesting structure.

7. "Water scarcity maybe an outcome of the large and growing population in India". Analysed a statement.
Ans. (i) Greater demand for water for domestic purpose.
(ii) Water resources over exploited to expand irrigation area.
(iii) falling groundwater levels.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTION (5m)

1. India is heading towards water scarcity trace to possible solution to tackle this problem.

Ans. The major concern now in the country is water scarcity which can be tackled with the help of following methods

1. Interlinking of river.
 2. Rainfall in India is the second highest after Brazil but the distribution is highly uneven certain channeling by Oil Company can solve the problem of distribution of water.
 3. Over use and wastage of water in day to day life activities need to be controlled.
 4. Thermal pollution need to be inhibited.
 5. Bottled water or water packaging industries need to be dominated by strong hands and law regarding extraction of groundwater should be there.
 6. Over irrigation and agriculture industry need to be considered a decreasing trend of groundwater.
 7. Proper disposal of waste otherwise leaches may pollute groundwater.
 8. Rainwater harvesting in bamboo drip irrigation system can be helped a lot.
2. In what ways the Intensive industrialization and urbanization responsible for water scarcity?
- Ans. (i) The ever increasing number of industry has made matters worse by exerting pressure on existing freshwater resources.
Industries apart from being heavy user of water, also require power to run them much of them play this energy come from hydro electric power
(ii) Multiplying urban center with large and dense population and urban lifestyle have not only added to water and energy requirement but have further aggravated the problem.
(iii) In housing societies or colonies we would find that most of these have their own groundwater pumping device to meet their water needs with the result, fragile water resources are been overexploited and have caused their depletion in several cities.
3. What do you know about bamboo drip irrigation system?

Ans. In Meghalaya, 200 year old system of tapping stream and spring water by using bamboo pipes is prevalent.

- (i) Bamboo pipes are used to divert perennial spring on the hilltop to the lower reaches by the gravity.
- (ii) The channel section made of bamboo; divert water to the plant site, where it is distributed into branches.
- (iii) If the pipes pass roads, they are taken high above the land on the tree branches.
- (iv) Reduced channel sections and diversion unit are used at the last stage of water application.
- (v) The last channel section enables water to be dropped near the root of the plant.

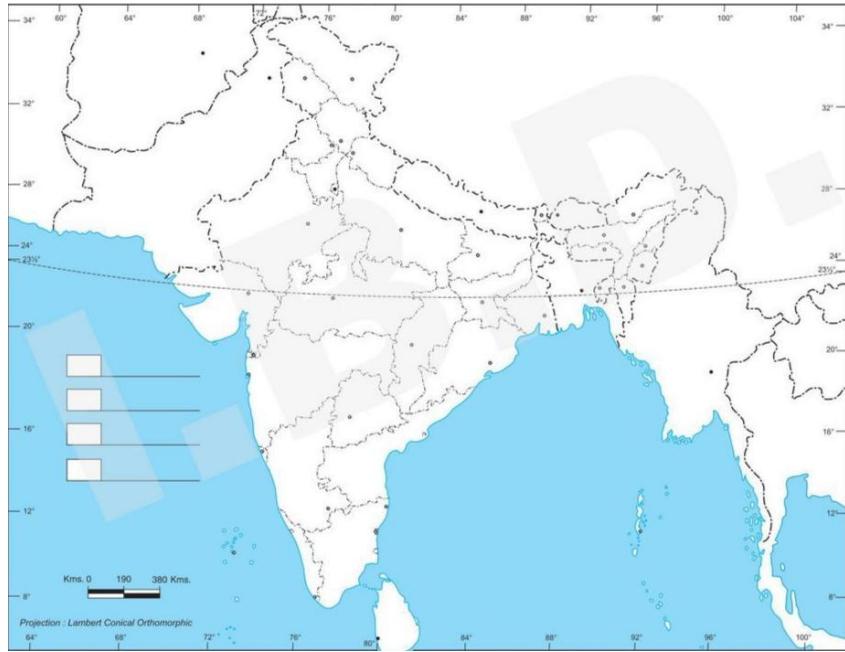
Today, dams are built not just for irrigation but for electricity generation, water supply for domestic and industrial use, flood control, recreation, and inland navigation, add fish breeding. Hence, dams are now referred to as multipurpose project where the many use of the impounded water are integrated with one another. For example, the Satluj-Beas river basin, the Bhakra-Nangal project Water is being used both for hydel power production and irrigation. Similarly, play song the Hirakud project in Mahanadi basin integrates conservation of water with flood control. Multipurpose project launched after independence with their integrated water resource management approach were thought of as the vehicle that would lead the nation to development and progress, overcoming the handicap of its colonial past. Jawaharlal Nehru proudly proclaim the dam as the “temple of modern India” the reason being that it would integrate development of agriculture and the village economy with rapid industrialization and growth of urban economy

1. Hirakud dam is build on which river?
 - (A) Chenab
 - (B) Mahanadi
 - (C) Krishna
 - (D) Sutlej
2. Which one of the following is not a adverse effect of dam?
 - (A) Interstate water dispute
 - (B) Excessive sedimentation of reservoir
 - (C) Displacement of population
 - (D) Flood control
3. Which one of the multipurpose project is found in sutlej-beas basin?
 - (A) For generating electricity
 - (B) For supplying water to industries
 - (C) For flood control
 - (D) To impound the rain water for irrigation

ANSWER 1(A), 2(A), 3(A)

MAPWORK:- Locate the following dams and river on the given map of India

- (A) Salal dam
- (B) Tehri dam
- (C) Gandak dam
- (D) Saradrsarovar dam



AGRICULTURE (SUMMARY)

Types of Farming

Agriculture is an age-old economic activity in our country but over these years, cultivation methods have changed with the use of modern techniques. Farming varies from subsistence to commercial type. At present, in different parts of India these types of farming systems are practiced.

Primitive Subsistence Farming is a ‘slash and burn’ agriculture in which farmers clear a patch of land and grow crops with the help of primitive tools to sustain their family. It depends upon monsoon, natural fertility of the soil and availability of other environmental conditions suitable to the crops grown.

‘Slash and burn’ agriculture is known as Jhumming in north-eastern states, Pamlo in Manipur, Dipa in Bastar district of Chhattisgarh, and in Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

Features of primitive subsistence agriculture in India are:

- (i) It is practiced on small patches of land.
- (ii) Tools used in this kind of farming are traditional tools such as hoe, dao and digging stick.
- (iii) This type of agriculture is completely dependent on monsoon.
- (iv) When soil fertility decreases, the farmers shift to another plot of land.

Intensive subsistence farming is practiced in areas of high population pressure on land, where high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining higher production. This type of farming is practiced in areas of high population. Under this type of farming, high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining higher production.

Features of intensive farming are:

(a) High yielding variety (HYV) seeds, modern chemical inputs and irrigation methods are used to increase the production.

(b) The per hectare yield is very high.

(c) More than one crop is cultivated during a year.

Commercial Farming in which farmers grow crops with the aim of selling the products for commercial purpose. The main characteristic of this type of farming is the use of higher doses of modern inputs, e.g., high yielding variety (HYV) seeds, chemical fertilizers, insecticides and pesticides in order to obtain higher productivity.

Plantation is a type of commercial farming. In this farming a single crop is grown on large area. It is practiced on large tracts of land, using capital intensive inputs, with the help of migrant labourers.

Plantation Agriculture: Plantation agriculture is a form of commercial farming where crops are grown for profit. In this type of farming, a single crop is grown on a large area. Hence, large land areas are needed for this type of agriculture. This type of commercial farming is practiced in tropical and sub-tropical regions. It was introduced by the British in India.

Some characteristics of plantation agriculture are:

(i) A single crop is grown over large area.

(ii) It is capital intensive and done with migrant labour.

(iii) Entire produce is used as raw material in industries such as tea, coffee, rubber, sugarcane, banana, etc.

(iv) Plantation agriculture has an interface of agriculture and industry both.

Cropping Season in India

Cropping Season: Season in which some particular crops are grown.

India has three cropping season— rabi, kharif and zaid.

Rabi crops: These crops are grown in winter between October to December and harvested in summer between April to June. The rabi crops include wheat, barley, gram and oilseeds.

Kharif crops: These crops are sown with the onset of monsoon in different parts of the country and harvested in September-October. The kharif crops include rice, maize, millet, cotton, jute, groundnut, moong, urad, etc.

Rice is a kharif crop. Conditions required for the growth of rice are as follows:

(a) High temperature (above 25°C).

(b) High humidity with annual rainfall above 100 cm.

(c) In the areas of less rainfall, it grows with the help of irrigation.

(d) It is grown in the plains of north and north-eastern India, coastal areas and deltaic regions.

(e) Development of dense network of canal irrigation and tube wells have made it possible to grow rice in areas of less rainfall such as Punjab and Haryana.

Zaid crops: In between the Rabi and the Kharif seasons, there is a short season during the summer months known as the Zaid season. Crops like watermelons, muskmelons, cucumber, some vegetables and fodder crops are the major crops of this season.

Major crops grown in India are rice, wheat, millets, pulses, tea, coffee, sugarcane, oilseeds, cotton, jute, etc. Rice is the staple food crop of the majority of people in India. India is the second largest producer of rice in the world after China.

Wheat is the second most important cereal crop. It is the main food crop in north and northwestern part of the country. Jowar, bajra and ragi are the important millets grown in India. Maize is a crop which is used both as food and fodder. It grows well in old alluvial soil.

Food Crops other than Grains

India is the second largest producer of sugarcane only after Brazil. India was the second largest producer of groundnut in the world after China. India was the third largest producer rapeseed in the world after Canada and China.

India is the largest producer of oilseeds in the world. Main oilseeds produced in India are groundnut, mustard, coconut, sesamum (til), soyabean, castor seeds cotton seeds, linseed and sunflower. Most of these are edible and used as cooking mediums.→Major pulses that are grown in India are tur (arhar), urad, moong, masur, peas and gram.

Main oilseeds produced in India are groundnut, coconut, sesamum (til), soyabean, castor seeds, cotton seeds, linseed and sunflower.

Oilseeds usually have two main uses:

- (i) They are used as a cooking medium as most of them are edible. For example, groundnut oil sunflower oil, coconut oil, etc.
- (ii) They are used as raw material. For example, oilseeds are important raw materials for the production of soap, cosmetics, ointments, etc.

Groundnut is a kharif crop and accounts for about half of the major oilseeds produced in the country.

Importance of groundnut:

- (i) Groundnut seeds are edible.
- (ii) Groundnut oil is a commonly used cooking medium.
- (iii) Groundnut is used as raw material in production of soap, cosmetics and ointment.
- (iv) India is the largest producer of groundnut.
- (v) Groundnut oil accounts for half of the total oilseed production.

Gujarat is the largest producer of groundnut in India. Other states are Rajasthan, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, West Bengal and Telangana.

Tea is an beverage crop introduced in India initially by the British. It is a labour intensive industry. India was the second largest producer of tea after China and Turkey in 2014.

Tea cultivation is an example of plantation agriculture. It is also an important beverage crop introduced in India initially by the British. Today, most of the tea plantations are owned by Indians.

(a) Climatic conditions: Tea grows well in tropical and sub-tropical climates. Tea bushes require warm and moist frost-free climate all through the year.

(b) Soil type: It grows on deep and fertile, well-drained soil, rich in humus and organic matters.

(c) Rainfall: Frequent showers evenly distributed over the year ensure continuous growth of tender leaves.

(d) States: Assam, West Bengal, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Andhra Pradesh, Meghalaya and Tripura.

Indian coffee is known in the world for its good quality. India produced 3.5 per cent of the world coffee production in 2014. The Arabica variety which is in great demand all over the world is produced in India. Its cultivation was introduced on the Baba Budan Hills.

Horticulture refers to intensive cultivation of vegetables, fruits and flower crops for the market. India was the second largest producer of fruits and vegetables in the world after China in 2014.

Non-Food Crops

Rubber is a major industrial raw material. It is an equatorial crop, but under special condition.

Cotton, jute, hemp and natural silk are the four major fibre crops grown in India.

(i) Jute is called the ‘golden fibre’.

Geographical conditions suitable for production of jute:

(a) Grows well in the drained fertile soil of the flood plains where the soil is renewed every year.

(b) High temperature is required during the time of growth.

Uses of jute: Used to manufacture gunny bags, mats, ropes, yarn, carpets and other artifacts.

Geographical conditions required for the growth of sugarcane in India :

(i) It is a tropical as well as sub-tropical crop so it requires a hot and humid climate with a temperature of 24°C to 27°C.

(ii) It requires an annual rainfall between 75 to 100 cm.

(iii) It can be grown on a variety of soils. Major sugarcane producing states of North India are: Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Punjab and Haryana.

Geographical conditions required for the cultivation of cotton are:

(i) It grows well in drier parts of the black cotton soil of the Deccan plateau.

(ii) It requires high temperature.

(iii) It requires light rainfall or irrigation.

(iv) It requires 210 frost-free days and bright sunshine for its growth.

Sericulture is the rearing of silk worms for the production of silk fibre.

India was the second largest producer of cotton after China in 2008.

Jute is known as the golden fibre. It grows well in well-drained fertile soils in the flood plains where soils are renewed every year.

Horticulture: Horticulture is the science and art of growing plants (fruits, vegetables, flowers and any other cultivar). India is the largest producer of fruits and vegetables in the world. India is a producer of tropical as well as temperate fruits.

Technological and Institutional Reforms

Agriculture, provides livelihood for more than 60% of population, needs some serious technical and institutional reforms.

Collectivization, consolidation of holdings, cooperation and abolition of zamindari, etc. were given priority to bring about institutional reforms in the country after independence.

The Green Revolution and the White Revolution (operation flood) were some of the strategies initiated to improve the lot of Indian agriculture.

Green Revolution: Technologies that were introduced to increase the agricultural production such as use of HYV seeds, fertilizers, modern machinery and inputs.

White Revolution: Increase in milk production due to introduction of technological and institutional reforms.

Kissan Credit Cards (KCC) and Personal Accident Insurance Scheme (PAIS) are introduced by government for the benefit of the farmers.

Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers were introduced on radio and television.

The government announces Minimum Support Price (MSP), remunerative and procurement prices for important crops.

The Bhoojan-Gramdan movement initiated by Vinoba Bhave is also known as the Bloodless Revolution.

Establishment of Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR), agricultural universities, veterinary services and animal breeding centers, horticulture development, research and development in the field of meteorology and weather forecast were given priority for improving Indian agriculture.

Today, Indian farmers are facing a big challenge from international competition and reduction in the public investment in agriculture sector.

The Government of India made concerted efforts to modernize agriculture by establishing the Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR), agricultural universities, veterinary services and animal breeding centres, horticulture development, research and development in the field of meteorology and weather forecast, etc.

MCQ

1. Which one of the following describes a system of agriculture, where a single crop is grown on a large area?

- (a) Shifting Agriculture (b) plantation Agriculture (c) horticulture (d) Intensive Agriculture

2. Which one of the following is a rabi crop?

- (a) Rice (b) Gram (c) Millets (d) Gram

3. Which one of the following is a leguminous crop?

- (a) pulses (b) jowar (c) Millets (d) Sesamum

4. Choose the correctly matched pair about the agriculture in India from the following options:

(a) Rabi crops are sown- October to December

(b) Gram- paddy crops

(c) Aus, Aman and boro- Government schemes

(d) Kisan credit card – Increased the production

5. What is “boro”?

- (a) kharif crop (b) zaid crop (c) Rabi crop (d) None of these

6. Kharif: _____, Rabi: barley, zaid : watermelon

- (a) Gram (b) wheat (c) oilseeds (d) moong

7. Which is the ideal condition for the growth of sugarcane?

(a) Temperature of 21 to 27 degrees Celsius and an annual rainfall between 75cm and 100cm

(b) Temperature below 17 degree Celsius and 50to 75 CM of rainfall.

(c) Temperature of 25 degree Celsius and 200cm if rainfall.

(d) None of the above

8. Choose the correctly matched pair about the major crops of India from the following options:

(a) Millets- North eastern part of the country

(b) Wheat- North western part of the country

(c) Pulse – South western part of the country

(d) Rice- South eastern part of the country.

9. Choose the correctly matched pair about the agriculture pattern of India from the following options:

(a) Primitive subsistence agriculture – Dao and digging sticks

(b) Slash and burn agriculture- cotton and tobacco

(c) Intensive subsistence agriculture- felled and burned vegetation

(d) Commercial farming- hoe

ANSWER :- 1.(B) 2.(B) 3(A) 4(A) 5(A) 6(D) 7(A) 8(B) 9(A)

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (2m)

1. Why is India called an ‘Agriculture’ country?

Ans. Two thirds of India's populations are engaged in agricultural activities. Agriculture is a primary activity.

2. Which factors are playing an important role in the development of a plantation?

Ans. A well developed network of transport and communication connecting the plantation areas, processing industries and markets.

3. Which are the major wheat producing states of India?

Ans. Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Rajasthan and parts of Madhya Pradesh.

4. Which factors contribute to increasing production of maize?

Ans. Use of modern inputs such as HYV seeds, fertilizer and irrigation have contributed to the increasing production of maize.

5. Suggest any one measure to promote handspun khadi in India.

Ans. Government should promote it by reducing the cost of khadi. By launching scheme for its promotion.

6. Name the major maize producing states of India.

Ans. Karnataka, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Andhra Pradesh and Madhya Pradesh.

7. Name the two major beverage crops grown in India. Describe their growing areas.

Ans. Two major beverage crops: Tea and coffee

Tea growing areas:- Assam, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu and Kerala

Coffee producing states: Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

1. What is primitive subsistence farming?

Ans. (I) It is practiced on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools.

(II) This type of farming depends upon the monsoons and natural fertility of the soil.

(III) It is also called 'slash and burn' agriculture.

2. What is 'slash and burn' agriculture?

Ans. (I) In this agriculture, farmers clear a patch of land and produce cereals and other crops to sustain their families.

(II) When the soil fertility decreases, the farmers shift and clear a fresh patch of land for cultivation.

(III) This type of shifting allows nature to replenish the fertility of the soil through natural processes.

Land productivity in this type of agriculture is low, as the farmers do not use fertilizers or any modern inputs.

3. Describe the three cropping seasons of India.

Ans. (I) Rabi season:

(a) Crops sown in winters and harvested in summers.

(b) Some of the important rabi crops are wheat, barley, peas, gram and mustard.

(II) Kharif season:

- (a) Crops grown with the onset of monsoons and harvested in September or October.
- (b) Crops grown during this season are rice, maize, jowar, bajra, tur, moong, urad, cotton, jute, groundnut and soyabean.

(III) zaid season:

- (a) It falls in between the rabu and kharif seasons.
- (b) Major crops grown are: watermelon, muskmelon, cucumbers, vegetables and fodder crops.

4. What do you know about rubber plantations in India?

Ans. (I) Rubber is an educational crop but is also grown in tropical and subtropical areas.

(II) It requires a moist and humid climate with rainfall of more than 200 CM and temperature above 25 degree c.

(III) It is grown in Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Andaman and Nicobar Islands and Garo hills of Meghalaya.

India ranks fifth among the world's largest natural rubber producers.

5. What climatic conditions are required for growing cotton?

Ans. (I) Cotton grows well in drier parts of the black cotton soil of the Deccan plateau.

(II) It requires high temperature, light rainfall or irrigation.

(III) It also requires 210 frosts – free days and bright sunshine for its growth.

It's a kharif crop and requires 6 to 8 months to mature.

6. Differentiate between commercial farming and plantation farming.

Ans. Commercial farming: - (I) In this type of farming, crops are grown only for commercial purposes.

(II) Farmers make use of higher doses of modern inputs, HYV seeds, chemical fertilizers etc.

(III) Eg : Rice is a commercial crop in Haryana and Punjab.

Plantation farming:- (I) In this type of farming, a single crop is grown on a large area.

(II) labour is employed to work in large tracts of land, using capital intensive devices.

(III) Eg – Tea gardens produce tea, and coffee plantation produce coffee.

7. Describe any three institutional reforms taken by the Indian Government in the field of agriculture.

Ans. Institutional reforms in agriculture: (I) Land ceiling and consolidation of holdings.

(II) Abolition of zamindari etc.

(III) Establishment of Grameen bank, cooperative societies and banks for providing loan facilities to the farmers at lower rates of interest.

8. Which crop is known as a 'Golden fibre'? Explain any two geographical conditions essential for the cultivation of this crop. Mention its four uses.

Ans. Jute is known as 'golden fibre'. It grows well on well – drained fertile soils in the flood plains where soils are renewed every year. West Bengal, Bihar, Assam, Odisha, Meghalaya are the major jute producing states of India. It is used in making gunny bags, mats ropes, yarn, carpets, and other artefacts. Due to its high cost, it is losing market to synthetic fibres and packing material, particularly nylon.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS(5m)

1 What type of farming is called plantation farming? Which factors are needed to promote them in India?

Ans. (I) Plantation is a type of commercial farming.

(II) In This type of farming, a single crop is grown on a large area.

(III) The plantation also includes the processing of that crop in the nearby industries.

(IV) Plantation covers large tracts of land using capital intensive inputs, with the help of migrant labourers.

(V) All the produce is used as raw material in respective industries.

2. "Irrigation has changed the cropping pattern of many regions in India." Analysis the statement.

Ans. (I) Well – developed irrigation facilities have lessened the dependency of peasants on monsoon by ensuring regular supply of water.

(II) Major shift – The development of proper irrigation facilities has enabled peasants to grow the water – intensive and commercial crop.

The following are the effects of developing proper irrigation facilities:

- (I) This has resulted in the brininess of the earth
- (II) It has increased productivity.

3. Explain any five technological and institutional reforms in Indian agriculture.

Ans. Technological and Institutional reforms in Indian agriculture are

- (I) Collectivization and consolidation of land holding
- (II) Abolition of zamindari
- (III) Land reforms were the main focus of our first five – year plan
- (IV) Provision of crop insurance against droughts, floods, cyclones etc. to protect farmers.
- (V) Grameen banks, cooperative societies and bank provided loan facilities to farmers at low rates of interest.
- (VI) Kisan credit cards and personal accident insurance for farmers introduced by the government.

4. Name the two major fibre crops grown in India. Describe the condition required for growth of these two crops with their growing areas.

Ans. Two major fibre crops:

A cotton and jute are the fibre crops:

Geographical condition required for cotton:-

- (1).It requires black soil
- (2).It requires high temperature and light rainfall or irrigation.
- (3). It requires 210 frost- free days and bright sunshine.

Geographical condition required for jute:-

- 1. It requires well drained fertile soil in the flood plains
- 2. It requires a high temperature
- 3. It requires high rainfall
- 4. Requires fresh water and cheap labour.

5. Suggest the initiative taken by the government to ensure the increase in agricultural production.
- Ans. (I) The green revolution based on the use of package technology and white revolution were initiated to improve Indian agriculture.
- (II) Land development programme was initiated, which included provision for crop insurance against famine, flood, cyclone, fire and disease, establishment of Grameen banks, cooperative societies, etc.
- (III) Kisan credit cards, personal accident Insurance schemes were introduced for the benefits of farmers.
- (IV) Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers are run on the radio and television.

PASSAGE

Agriculture has been practiced in India for thousands of years. Sustainable uses of land without compatible techno institutional changes have hindered the pace of agriculture development .Inspite of development of sources of irrigation most of the farmers in a large part of country still depends upon monsoons and natural fertility in order to carry on their agriculture. For a growing population ,This poses a serious challenges .Agriculture which provides livelihood for more than 60% of its populations ,need some serious technical and institutional reforms .Thus collectivisation, consolidation of holding corporation and abolition of zamindari, etc. where given priority to bring about institutional reforms in the country after independence. Land reforms were the main focus of our first 5 year plan. The right of inheritance had already leaded to fragmentation of land holding necessitating consolidation of holdings.

Question

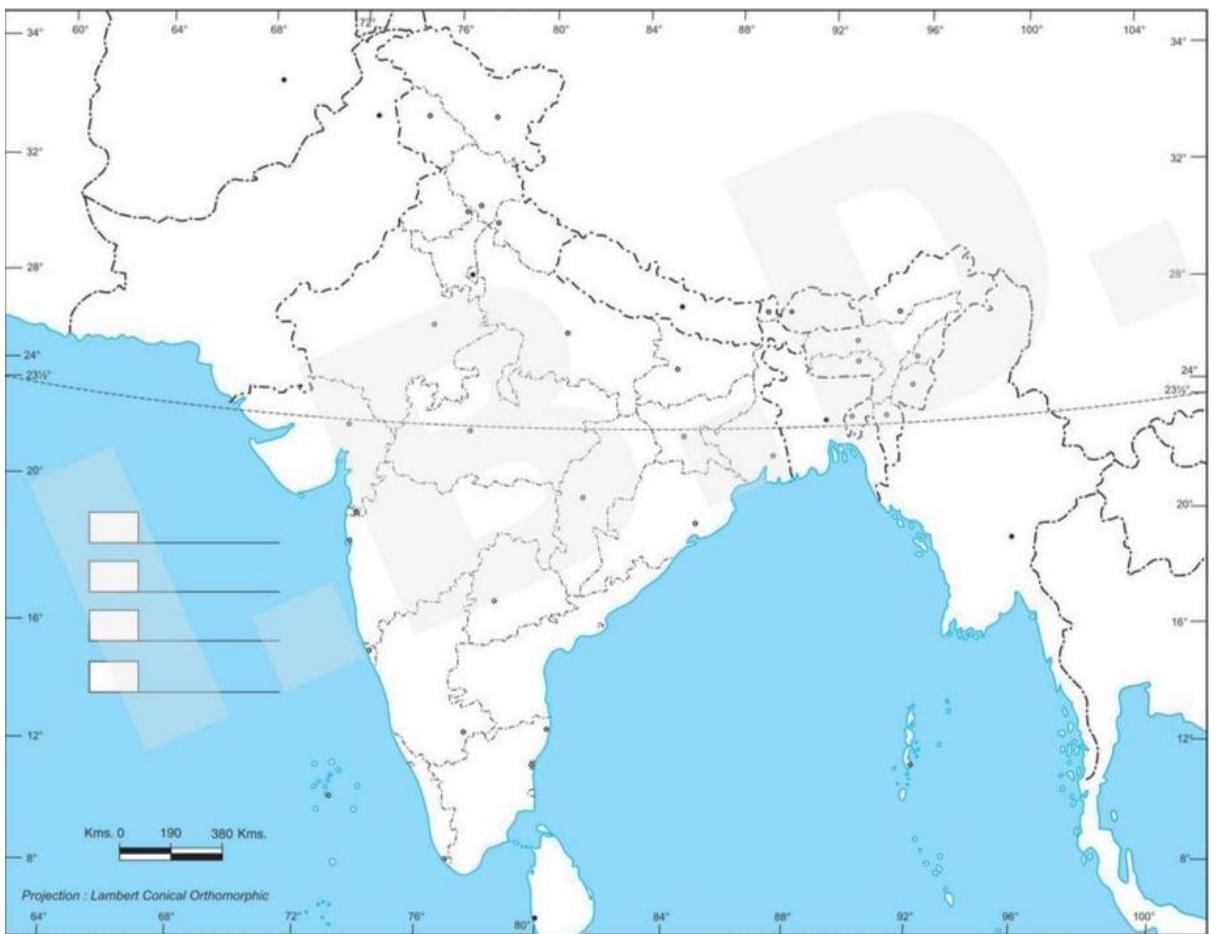
1. Which of the following is the most important Occupation of the people of India?
(a) Food gathering (b) Agriculture (c) manufacturing (d) services
2. In spite of the development of irrigation, farmer stills depends on _____?
(a) Artificial water resources (b) monsoon (c) wells (d) none of these
3. What was the main objective of the first five year plan?
(a) Land forms (b) land degradation
(c) Land reforms (d) All of these

ANSWER :- 1(B) 2(B) 3(C)

MAP WORK

Outline the following in the India map:-

1. Major areas where rice is grown.
2. Major areas where wheat is grown
3. Major areas where jowar is grown.
4. Major sugarcane producing states.
5. One rubber producing state.
6. Major Cotton producing states.



MINERALS AND ENERGY RESOURCES (SUMMARY)

Mineral:

Geologists define mineral as a “homogeneous, naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.” They have physical and chemical properties by which they can be identified.

Rocks are combinations or aggregates of minerals in varying proportions. Some rocks consist of a single mineral, e.g., limestone while most rocks consist of several minerals.

The term ‘ore’ is used to describe an accumulation of any mineral mixed with other elements.

Minerals generally occur in the following forms:

1. Veins and lodes. In igneous and metamorphic rocks minerals may occur in the cracks, faults or joints by getting solidified in them. The smaller occurrences are called veins and the larger lodes, e.g., metallic minerals like tin, copper, zinc and lead, etc. are found in lodes and veins.
2. In sedimentary rocks minerals occur in beds or layers. They are formed as a result of deposition, accumulation and concentration in horizontal strata. Some sedimentary minerals are formed as a result of evaporation, especially in arid regions, e.g., gypsum, potash and salt.
3. Another mode of formation involves decomposition of surface rocks and the removal of soluble contents, leaving a residual mass of weathered material containing ores. Bauxite is formed this way.
4. Placer deposits. Certain minerals occur as alluvial deposits in sands of valley floors and the base of hills, e.g., gold, silver, tin and platinum. These are called placer deposits and contain minerals which are not corroded by water.

5. Ocean waters contain vast quantities of minerals, e.g., common salt, magnesium and bromide are largely derived from the ocean waters. The ocean beds are rich in manganese nodules.

Four types of iron ores are:

Magnetite, Hematite, Siderite and Limonite.

Two best ores are:

- Magnetite—It is the finest iron ore available with upto 70% iron content. It has excellent magnetic qualities and is especially valuable in the electrical industry.
- Hematite—It is the most important industrial iron ore in terms of quantity used. It has 50-60% iron content.

Four major iron ore belts:

1. Odisha-Jharkhand Belt: Badampahar Mines—High grade hematite ore is found here.
2. Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur Belt: Bailadila Mines—Super high grade hematite ore deposits are found in Bailadila range. Iron ore from these mines is exported to Japan and South Korea.
3. Bellary-Chitradurga-Chikmaglur Tumkur Belt in Karnataka: Kudremukh Mines — A 100 per cent export unit. The ore is transported as slurry to a port near Mangalore.
4. Maharashtra-Goa Belt: Ratnagiri district of Maharashtra—Ores are not of very high quality. Iron ore is exported through Marmagao port.

Aluminum is obtained from bauxite ore. It is an important metal because—it has the strength of metals such as iron, and is extremely light at the same time; it has good conductivity; and it has great malleability.

Bauxite deposits are formed by the decomposition of a wide variety of rocks rich in aluminium silicates. Leading State of bauxite production is Odisha, producing 45% of the total bauxite of India. The most important bauxite deposits are found in Panchpatmali in Koraput district. Other States are Gujarat (17%), Jharkhand (14%) and Maharashtra (11%).

Mica is made up of a series of plates or leaves. It splits easily into such thin sheets that a thousand put together are only a few centimeters thick. Mica is indispensable for electric and electronic industry because it has —

- excellent di-electric strength;
- Low power loss factor;
- Insulating properties; and
- Resistance to high voltage.

Mica deposits are found in the northern edge of Chhota Nagpur Plateau. Jharkhand is the leading producer. The important mica producing belt here is Koderma-Gaya-Hazaribagh.

Dangers involved in mining are—

1. The risk of collapsing mine roofs;
2. Inundation, i.e., flooding in mines;
3. Fires in coal-mines is a constant threat to miners; and
4. Poisonous gases, dust and noxious fumes inhaled by miners make them vulnerable to pulmonary diseases.

Adverse effects of mining on the environment:

1. The water sources in the region get contaminated;
2. Dumping of the slurry and waste leads to degradation of land and soil; and
3. It also leads to an increase in stream and river pollution.

Conservation of minerals is necessary because:

1. The formation of minerals takes a long geological period of millions of years.
2. They are finite in nature, non-renewable and exhaustible.
3. The rate of replenishment of minerals is infinitely small in comparison to rate of consumption.
4. They have to be preserved for our future generations.

Methods of mineral conservation:

1. We should use minerals in a planned and sustainable manner.
2. Improved technologies need to be evolved to allow use of low grade ores at low cost.
3. Recycling of metals, using scrap metals and other substitutes.
4. Wastage's in mining, processing and distribution should be minimized.
5. Controlled export of minerals.

Energy resources can be classified as conventional and non-conventional sources.

Conventional sources include coal, petroleum, natural gas and electricity (both hydel and thermal). All these sources have been in use for quite some time.

Non-conventional sources of energy are relatively new sources as their large scale generation has started recently. These include solar, wind, tidal, geothermal, biogas and atomic energy.

Coal as an important source of energy:

1. It provides a substantial part of the nation's energy needs as it is abundantly available.
2. It is used for power generation, to supply energy for industrial and domestic needs.
3. India is highly dependent on coal for meeting its commercial needs. Its share in total—67%.
4. It can easily be converted into other forms of energy—electricity, gas, oil, etc.

Coal as an industrial raw material:

1. It is an indispensable raw material for iron and steel industry.
2. It provides raw material for chemical industries and synthetic textile industries.
3. Many coal-based products are processed in industries, e.g., coal tar, graphite, soft coke, etc.
4. Power generation industry is mainly based on this fossil fuel.

Four types of coal and their characteristics:

(a) Anthracite—1. It is the highest quality hard coal; 2. It contains more than 80% carbon content. It gives less smoke. ,

(b) Bituminous—1. It is the most popular coal in commercial use and has 60-80% carbon content; 2. Metallurgical coal is high grade bituminous coal and is of special value for smelting iron in blast furnaces.

(c) Lignite—1. It is a low grade brown coal; 2. It is soft with high moisture content. The main lignite reserve is Neyveli in Tamil Nadu.

(d) Peat—1. It has a low carbon and high moisture content; 2. It has low heating capacity and gives lot of smoke on burning.

Occurrence of coal:

- Gondwana Coal Belt—A little over 200 million years in age. Mainly metallurgical coal is found in: (a) Damodar Valley Belt (West Bengal, Jharkhand) which contains important coal mines of Jharia, Raniganj and Bokaro; (b) The Godavari Valley Belt; (c) The Mahanadi Valley Belt; and (d) Wardha Valley Belt.
- Tertiary coal deposits are only about 55 million years old, i.e., they are comparatively younger. They occur in North-Eastern States, namely: (a) Assam (b) Meghalaya, (c) Arunachal Pradesh and (d) Nagaland.

Petroleum:

It is the second most important energy source of India after coal. It can be easily trans-ported by pipelines and does not leave any residue. It provides fuel for heat and light. It provides lubricants for machinery. It provides raw material for a number of manufacturing industries. It is an important fuel used in transportation sector. Petroleum refineries act as a ‘nodal industry’ for synthetic textiles, fertilizers and many chemical industries.

Occurrence and formation of petroleum:

Most of the petroleum occurrences in India are associated with anticlines and fault traps in the rock formations of the tertiary age. In regions of folding anticlines it occurs where oil is trapped in the crest of the unfold. The oil bearing layer is porous limestone or sandstone through which oil may flow. Petroleum is also found in fault traps between porous and non-porous rocks.

Distribution of petroleum:

1. Mumbai High—It is an offshore oilfield and is the richest oilfield of India. Its share is about 63% of India’s petroleum production;
2. Gujarat—It produces 18% petroleum of India. Ankaleshwar is the most important field; and
3. Assam—It is the oldest oil producing State of India. Its contribution in the total production is 16%. Important oilfields are Digboi, Naharkatiya and Moran-Hugrijan.

Non-Conventional Sources of Energy:

- Nuclear Energy:

Nuclear energy is obtained by altering the structure of atom. When the structure of an atom is altered, too much energy is released in the form of heat. This heat is utilised to generate electric power. Uranium and Thorium are used for generating atomic power. These minerals are available in Jharkhand, Aravalli ranges of Rajasthan.

- Solar Energy:

Photovoltaic technology is used to convert solar energy into electricity. The largest solar plant of India is located at Madhapur near Bhuj. Solar energy holds great promises for the future. It can help in minimizing

the dependence on firewood and animal dung cakes in rural areas. This will also help in conservation of fossil fuels.

- Wind Power:

The wind farm cluster in Tamil Nadu (from Nagarcoil to Madurai) is the largest cluster in India. Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Gujarat, Kerala, Maharashtra and Lakshadweep are also important centres of wind power production. India is now a “Wind Super Power” in the world.

- Biogas:

Biogas can be produced from shrubs, farm waste, and animal and human waste. It is more efficient than kerosene, dung cake and charcoal. Biogas plants can be set up at municipal, cooperative and individual levels. The gobar gas plants provide energy and also manure.

- Tidal Energy:

Dams are built across inlets. The water flows into the inlet during high tide and gets trapped when the gate is closed. Once the tide recedes, the floodgates are opened so that water can flow back to the sea. The flow of water is used to run the turbine to generate electricity. A 900 mw tidal energy power plant is set up by the National Hydropower Corporation in the Gulf of Kuchchh.

- Geo Thermal Energy:

We know that the inside of the earth is very hot. At some places, this heat is released on the surface through fissures. Groundwater in such areas becomes hot and rises up in the form of steam. This steam is used to drive turbines. Two geo thermal energy projects—the Parvati valley near Manikam in Himachal Pradesh and the Puga valley in Ladakh.

Importance of energy:

Energy is required for all activities. It is needed to cook, to provide light and heat, to propel vehicles and to drive machinery in industries. It is the basic requirement for economic development. Every sector of national economy—agriculture, industry, transport and commerce needs greater inputs of energy. Energy demands, in the form of electricity, are growing because of increasing use of electrical gadgets and appliances.

Ways to conserve energy:

1. Using more of public transport system instead of individual vehicles.
2. Switching off electrical devices when not in use, using power saving devices.
3. Using non-conventional sources of energy such as solar energy, wind energy, etc.
4. Getting the power equipment regularly checked to detect damages and leakages.

MCQ

1. Which one of the following minerals are formed by decomposition of rocks , leaving a residual mass of weathered material ?

- (a) Coal

- (b) Bauxite
 - (c) Gold
 - (d) Zinc
2. Koderma , in Jharkhand is the leading producer of which of the following minerals
- (a) Bauxite
 - (b) Mica
 - (c) Iron ore
 - (d) Copper
3. Minerals are deposited and accumulated in the stratas of which of the following rocks ?
- (a) Sedimentary rocks
 - (b) Metamorphic rocks
 - (c) Igneous rocks
 - (d) None of these
4. Which of the following minerals is contained in monazite sand ?
- (a) Oil
 - (b) Uranium
 - (c) Thorium
 - (d) Coal
5. Which of the following place is known as lignite deposit?
- (a) Khetri
 - (b) Neyveli
 - (c) Bailadila
 - (d) Bokaro
6. Minerals are generally found in.
- (a) Ore
 - (b) Rocks
 - (c) Soil
 - (d) None of these
7. Gold, silver, and platinum are example of
- (a) Ferrous minerals
 - (b) Precious minerals

- (c) Non-essential minerals
(d) None of these
8. Sandstone and mica are example of .
(a) Non -metallic minerals
(b) Wasteful minerals
(c) Ferrous minerals
(d) Precious minerals
9. India's _____ deposit are mainly found in the Amarkantak plateau, Maikal hills and plateau region of Bilaspur-Katni .
(a) Bauxite
(b) Steel
(c) Iron ore
(d) Manganese
10. The _____, Mahandi, son and Wardha valley contain coal deposit.
(a) Sutlej
(b) Krishna
(c) Narmada
(d) Godavari

ANSWER :- 1(B), 2(B), 3(A), 4(C), 5(B), 6(A), 7(B), 8(A), 9(A), 10(D)

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTION(2m)

1. Name the best variety of iron ore.

Ans. magnetite

2. Where are Kudurmukh mines are located?

Ans. Westerns Ghat of Karnataka

3. Name the leading producer of copper?

Ans. Balaghat mines of MP, Khetri mines in Rajasthan etc

4. Name the mica deposit region of India .

Ans . Chotanagpur plateau , koderma Ajmer in Rajasthan

5. Why is copper mainly used in electrical cable and electrical Industries?

Ans. Because it is good conductor of electricity

6. Why are there a wide range of colours , hardness, crystal forms , lustre and density found in minerals ?

Ans. Due to physical and chemical condition.

7. How do minerals occurs in igneous and metamorphic rocks?

Ans. Minerals occur in cracks , crevices ,faults and joints .

8. Why should the use of cattle cake as fuel is discourage?

Ans. Because it create pollution and consume most valuable manure that used in agriculture

9. How are gobar gas plant beneficial to farmer?

Ans. It is beneficial in the form of energy and improved quality of manure production.

10. Name the best variety of iron ore found in India?

Ans. Magnetite

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTION (3m)

1. Why is conservation of mineral resource essential? Explain any three reason.

Ans. (I) Minerals are an indispensable part of our life.

(II) It is available in limited quantities.

(III) Takes millions of years to get formed.

2. Differentiate between ferrous and non-ferrous minerals.

Ans. Ferrous minerals: - 1. Ferrous minerals account for about three fourths of the total value of metallic minerals. Iron manganese etc. is the example.

Non- ferrous minerals: - India's reserve and production of non- ferrous minerals are not very satisfactory. Bauxite, lead, gold etc. are the examples.

3. What types of iron ore found in India?

Ans. India is rich in good quality iron ores.

(I) Magnetite: It is the finest iron ore with a very high content of iron upto 70 %. It has excellent magnetic qualities and is valuable in the electrical industry.

(II) Hematite: It is the most important industrial iron ore I terms of the quantity used but has a slightly lower iron content than magnetite.

4. What is the need of using non-conservational source of energy?

Ans. (I) The growing consumption of energy has resulted in the country becoming increasingly dependent on fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas.

(II) Increasing use of fossil fuels also causes serious environmental problems.

Hence, there is a primary need to use renewable energy sources like solar, wind, tidal, biomass and energy from waste material. They are called now conventional sources of energy.

5. Which state is the largest producer of manganese in India? Mention any two uses of it .

Ans. Odisha is the largest producer of manganese

Uses of manganese in India:

- (I) It is used in manufacturing of steel and ferric manganese alloy.
- (II) These alloys are strong and are used in making giant machine.
- (III) It is also used in insecticides.

6. What are the uses of petroleum and mineral oil in India?

Ans. (I) Petroleum is also an important energy source in India after coal.

(II) It provides fuel for heat and lighting, lubricants for machinery and raw materials to a number of manufacturing industries. Mineral oil is used in lotion and moisturizers.

(III) Petroleum refineries act as a ‘nodal industry’ for synthetic textile, fertilizer and numerous chemical industries.

7. How does mining affect the health of miners?

Ans. (I) The dust and noxious fumes inhaled by miners make them vulnerable to pulmonary disease.

(II) The risk of collapsing mine roofs, inundation and fires in coal mines are a constant threat, to miners.

(III) The water sources in the region get contaminated due to mining. Dumping of waste and slurry leads to degradation of land, soil and increase in stream and river pollution.

8. How do we have to adopt a cautious approach for the judicious use of our limited energy resource?

Ans. Steps to adopt for judicious use of our limited energy resources:

- (I) Use public transport.
- (II) Switch off electricity when not in use.
- (III) Use power saving device.
- (IV) Use non conventional sources of energy.

9. “Energy saved is energy produced” support the statement with suitable example.

Ans. (I) Promotion of energy conservation and increased use of renewable energy sources are the twin plants of sustainable energy.

(II) India is presently one of the least energy efficient countries in the world.

(III) Using public transport system instead of individual vehicles.

10. Why is there a pressing need to use renewable energy resources in India explain by giving any 3 reason .

Ans. (I) The growing consumption of energy has resulted in the country becoming increasingly dependent on fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas.

(II) Renewable energy sources on the other hand, are pollution free and eco – friendly.

(III) Hence, there is a pressing need to use renewable energy sources like solar energy, wind, tidal, biomass and energy from waste material. These are called non- conventional energy resources.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION (5m)

Q1. “Minerals are unevenly distributed in India.” Support the statement with examples.

Ans. (I) India is fortunate to have fairly rich and varied mineral resources. However, they are unevenly distributed.

(II) Peninsular rocks contain most of the reserves of coal, metallic minerals, mica and many other one metallic minerals.

(III) Sedimentary rocks on the Western and eastern flanks of peninsula, in Gujarat and Assam have most of the petroleum deposits.

(IV) Rajasthan with the rock system of the peninsula has reserve of many now ferrous minerals.

(V) The vast alluvial plains of North India are almost devoid of economic minerals.

Q2. Highlight the importance of petroleum. Explain the occurrence of petroleum in India.

Ans. Importance of petroleum:

(1) Petroleum is the major energy source in India.

(2) Provide fuel for heat and lightning.

(3) Provide lubricant for machinery.

(4) Provide raw material for a number of manufacturing industries.

(5) Petroleum refineries act as nodal industry for synthetic, textile, fertilizer and chemical industries.

Its occurrence:

1. Most of the petroleum occurrence in India are associated with Anticlines and fault traps.
2. In regions of folding, anticline or domes, it occurs where oil is trapped in the crest of the upfold.

Q3. Explain the importance of conservation of materials. Highlight any 3 measures to conserve them.

Ans. Importance of conservation of material:

1. Mineral resources are being rapidly consumed which takes millions of years to be created and concentrated.
2. Mineral resources are finite and non-renewable.
3. Continued extension of ores leads to increase cost as mineral extraction comes from greater depth along with decreasing quantity.

The three measures to conserve minerals:

1. It should be used in planned and sustainable manners.
2. Improve technology needs to be consistently evolved to allow use of low grade ores at low cost.
3. Some of the metals are recyclable.
4. Scrap of metal can be used and some others substitute can be found.

Q4. “Minerals are indispensable part of our lives.” Support this statement with suitable examples.

Ans. Minerals are indispensable part of our lives:

1. Almost everything we use, from a tiny pin to a towering building or a big ship, all are made from minerals.

2. The railway lines and tarmac (paving) of the roads are made from minerals
 3. Cars, buses, trains, aeroplanes are manufactured from minerals and run on power resources derived from the earth.
 4. Even the food that we eat contains minerals.
- 5 In all stage of development human being have used minerals for their livelihood, decoration, festivities, religious and ceremonial rites.

5. "Energy saved is energy produced." Justify the statement by giving any six measures to conserve the energy resources.

Ans. We have to adopt a cautious approach for the judicious use of our limited energy resources.

As concerned citizens, we can do our bit by:

1. Using public transport system instead of individual vehicles.
2. Switching off electricity when not in use.
3. Using power saving devices like star appearing in electronic industries.
4. Using CNG fuel which is environmental friendly.
5. Increase use of renewable energy.
6. Using biogas for domestic consumption in the rural areas.

PASSAGE

The growing consumption of energy has resulted in the country becoming increasingly dependent on fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas. Rising price of oil and gas and their potential shortage has raised uncertainties about the security of energy supply in future, which in turn has serious repercussions on the growth of national economy. Moreover increasing use of fossil fuels also causes serious environmental problems. Hence, there is a pressing need to use renewable energy sources like solar energy, wind, tide, biomass and energy from waste material. These are called non conventional energy sources. India is blessed with an abundance of sunlight, water, wind and biomass. It has the largest programmes for the development of these renewable energy resources.

1. What are non conventional energy resources?
2. What is causing serious environmental problems?
3. Why is there a pressing need to use renewable energy?

Answer:-

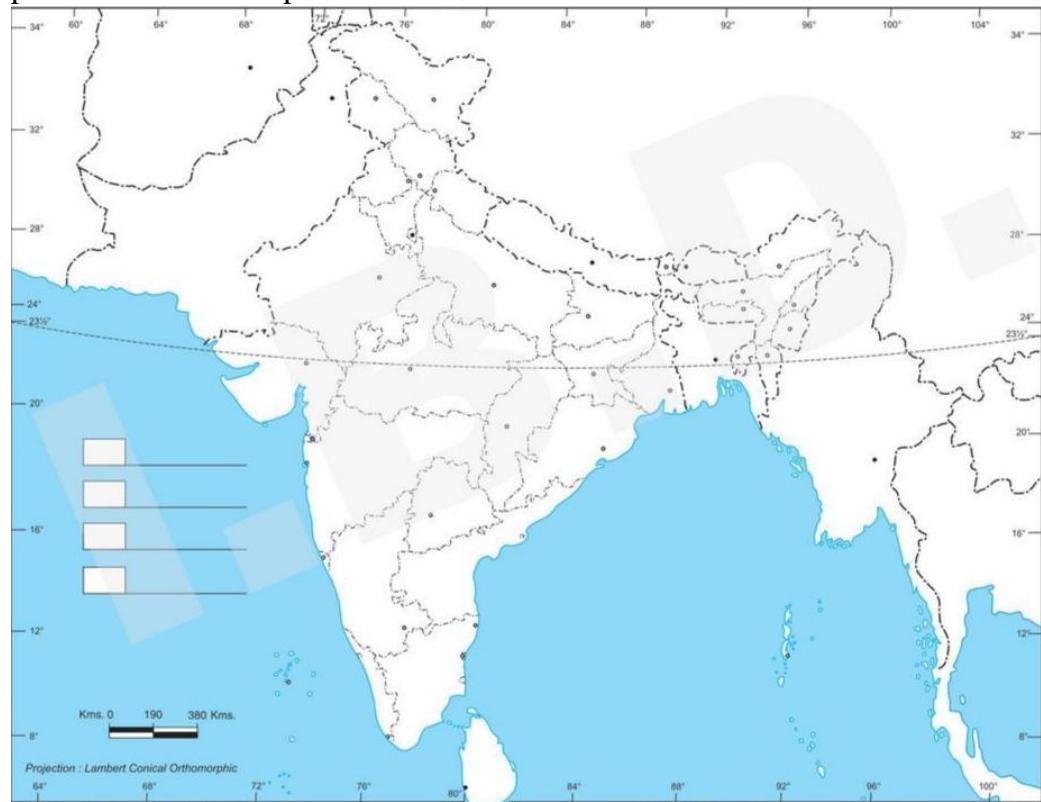
1. Sources like solar energy, wind, tide, biomass are non conventional energy sources.
2. Increasing use of fossil fuels are causing serious environmental problem.
3. Due to serious environmental problem there is a pressing need to use renewable energy.

Map Question:-

Identify and mark the following on the given outline map of India.

- (a) One power plant .
- (b) One nuclear power plant .
- (c) Narora nuclear power plant .
- (d) Ramagundam power plant .

- (e) A power plant station in kakrapara.
power station in Tarapur.



- (f) A nuclear

MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES (SUMMARY)

Manufacturing is the production of goods in large quantities after processing raw materials into more valuable products. Industries that manufacture finished products from primary material are called manufacturing industries.

Importance of Manufacturing

The economic strength of a country lies in the development of manufacturing industries because:

- (1) Manufacturing industries help in modernizing agriculture; which forms the backbone of our economy.
- (2) Manufacturing industries also reduce the heavy dependence of people on agricultural income because of the creation of new jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors.
- (3) Industrial development helps in eradication of unemployment and poverty.
- (4) Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce and enhances prosperity.
- (5) A country with a high level of manufacturing activities becomes prosperous.
- (6) It brings down regional disparities.
- (7) It brings much needed foreign exchange.
- (8) It increases the GDP/ National Income of the country.

Contribution of Industry to National Economy

The share of manufacturing sector in the GDP (Gross Domestic Product) has stagnated at 17% over the last two decades. The total contribution of industry to the GDP is 27% out of which 10% comes from mining, quarrying, electricity and gas. The growth of the manufacturing sector had been 7% in the last decade. Since 2003, the growth rate has been 9 to 10% per annum. The desired growth rate over the next decade is 12%.

The National Manufacturing Competitiveness Council (NMCC) has been set with the objectives of improving productivity through proper policy interventions by the government and renewed efforts by the industry

Some of the factors which affect the industrial location are as follows:

- (1) Availability of raw materials: Large quantities of raw materials are needed for industries. Therefore industries are located near the source of raw materials. It saves the cost of transportation.
- (2) Availability of labour : This factor also adds to the cost effectiveness aspect of an industry.
- (3) Availability of capital: Industry can be in need of financial resources at any time. Therefore, it is necessary that an industry has these facilities available easily.
- (4) Availability of power: It is important that basic facilities like electricity etc. are available.
- (5) Availability of market: An industry needs to have a sound market for the goods produced.
- (6) Availability of adequate and swift means of transport: Modern industries need cheap, developed and quick means of transportation.

A manufacturing industry promotes the urbanization of its neighborhood. Already urbanized areas also attract industries, since they provide ready facilities for transport, banking, labour, consultancy, etc. If an urban centre offers sufficient facilities and advantages, several industries come up there together to form an industrial agglomeration. These industries together form an agglomeration economy. Before Independence, most industries in India were located in port cities to enable easy overseas trade.

Agriculture gives boost to the industrial sector:

- (i) Agriculture provides raw material to industries.
- (ii) Agriculture provides market for industrial products.
- (iii) Agriculture helps boost new industrial products.
- (iv) The industries such as cotton, jute, silk, woolen textiles, sugar and edible oil, etc., are based on agricultural raw materials.

Classification of industries on the basis of raw materials

(a) Agro – Based Industries: These industries are based on agricultural raw material.

Example: Cotton, woolen, jute, silk textile, rubber, sugar, tea, coffee, etc.

(b) Mineral-Based Industries: Industries that use minerals and metals as raw materials are called mineral-based industries.

Example: Iron and steel, cement, aluminum, petrochemicals, etc.

Classification of industries according to their main role

(a) Basic or Key Industries: These industries supply their products or raw materials to manufacture other goods, e.g., iron and steel, copper smelting, aluminum smelting.

(b) Consumer Industries: These industries produce goods which are directly used by consumers, e.g., sugar, paper, electronics, soap, etc.

Classification of industries on the basis of capital investment

(a) Small Scale Industry: If the invested capital is upto one crore, then the industry is called a small scale industry. Manufacture small goods. No huge quantity of raw material as well as capital is required.

Example: Garment industry, soap making industry.

(b) Large Scale Industry: If the invested capital is more than one crore, then the industry is called a large scale industry. Manufacture large quantities of finished goods. The quantity of raw material and capital investment are large.

Example: Iron and steel industry, cotton textile industry.

Classification of industries on the basis of ownership

(a) Public Sector: These industries are owned and operated by government agencies, e.g., SAIL, BHEL, ONGC, etc.

(b) Private Sector: These industries are owned and operated by individuals or a group of individuals, e.g., TISCO, Reliance, Mahindra, etc.

(c) Joint Sector: These industries are jointly owned by the government and individuals or a group of individuals, e.g., Oil India Limited.

(d) Cooperative Sector: These industries are owned and operated by the producers or suppliers of raw materials, workers or both.

The resources are pooled by each stakeholder and profits or losses are shared proportionately. AMUL which is milk cooperative is a good example. The sugar industry in Maharashtra is another example.

Classification of industries on the basis of bulk and weight of raw materials and finished goods:

(a) Heavy Industries: Iron and steel.

(b) Light Industries: Electronic industry

Agro-based industries: Industries based on agricultural raw materials.

For example, cotton textiles, jute textiles, woolen textiles, silk textiles, synthetic textiles, sugar industry.

Cotton textiles: It occupies a unique position in the Indian economy, contributes 14% of industrial production. Provides employment to 35 million persons directly. Today, they are spread over 80 towns and cities of India.

Earlier the cotton textile industries were located in Maharashtra and Gujarat because:

(i) Availability of raw cotton.

- (ii) Ready markets are available.
- (iii) Well-developed means of transportation.
- (iv) Abundant skilled and unskilled labour at cheap rate.
- (v) Moist climate which is suitable for the cotton industry.

Problems faced by the cotton textiles industry are Scarcity of good quality cotton, obsolete machinery, erratic power supply, low productivity of labour and stiff competition are some of the

“Many of our spinners export cotton yarn while apparel manufacturers have to import fabric.”

- (i) India has a world class production and quality in spinning, but weaving supplies low quality of fabric because they are fragmented in small units. The mismatch is a major drawback.
- (ii) Although the production of staple cotton has increased but we still need to import good quality staple cotton.
- (iii) The industries also face erratic power supply problems which decreases labour productivity.
- (iv) Then there is a stiff competition with the synthetic fibre industry and Jute textiles. The machineries are not upgrade.

Jute textiles: There are about 80 jute mills in India and most of these are located in West Bengal, mainly in the Hugli basin. India is the second largest exporter of jute goods after Bangladesh.

Location of Jute industries in Hugli Basin is due to:

- (i) Proximity of jute producing areas.
- (ii) Cheap water transport supported by a good network.
- (iii) Good network of roadways, railways and waterways.
- (iv) Abundant water for processing raw jute.
- (v) Cheap labour from West Bengal and adjoining states.
- (vi) Good banking, insurance and poor facilities in Kolkata.

Sugar: There are over 662 sugar mills in the country. 50% of them are found in Uttar Pradesh and Maharashtra. Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh and Gujarat are also important producers of sugar in the country.

Major challenges of sugar industry are:

- (i) Seasonal nature of the industry.
- (ii) Old and inefficient methods of production.
- (iii) Transport delay in reaching sugar factories and the need to maximize the use of bagasse.

Shifting of sugar industries to Southern states is because :

- (i) Sugarcane that grows there has higher sucrose content.
- (ii) Favorable climate provides longer crushing period and growing season.
- (iii) Cooperatives are successful in these states.
- (iv) Modern mills have more crushing capacity.

Manufacturing industries that use minerals as raw material are called mineral-based industries. The iron and steel industry is the basic industry on which all other industries depend. The production and per capita consumption of steel is a measure of a country's economic development.

The main raw materials used in the iron and steel industry are iron ore, coal and limestone. The raw materials and finished products of iron and steel industries are quite bulky; these industries must be located near the mining areas of the required minerals and must be connected by a good transport network.

Steel

India is the ninth largest producer of crude steel and the largest producer of sponge iron in the world. India is also a leading exporter of steel in the world. China has become the world's largest producer and consumer of steel, leaving India far behind.

The per capita consumption of steel in India is only 32 kg. There are 10 primary integrated steel plants in India. These integrated plants handle all stages of steel production, from procurement of basic raw material to producing finished rolled and shaped steel. India has many mini steel plants that produce customized alloy steel using scrap iron or sponge iron as raw material.

Most steel manufacturing industries are located in the Chota Nagpur Plateau region because of the availability of inexpensive, high-grade raw material and abundant cheap labour.

The main challenges faced by the industry in realizing its full potential are limited supply of expensive coking coal, erratic power supply, and low output of labour and poor infrastructure. The future of India's iron and steel industry is bright due to India's liberalization policy and foreign direct investment in the industry.

Iron and steel industry is the basic industry as:

- (i) All the other industries depend on it for their machinery.
- (ii) Steel is needed to manufacture a variety of engineering goods.
- (iii) It provides variety of consumer goods.
- (iv) Construction material, defense, medical, telephonic, scientific equipments, etc., are the gift of iron and steel industry.

We have maximum concentration of iron and steel industry in Chota Nagpur Plateau region due to :

- (i) Low cost of iron ore. Iron mines are located in the nearby areas.
- (ii) High grade raw materials in proximity and other bulky raw materials like, coking coal, limestone are also available in proximity.
- (iii) From the adjoining areas of Bihar, Jharkhand and Odisha, cheap labour is available in abundance.

(iv) This region is well connected with roadways and railways that help in the swift movement of raw materials and finished goods to the industry and market areas, respectively.

(v) Kolkata is a well developed port that is near to this area.

We are not able to perform to our full potential in the production of iron and steel in India due to

(i) High costs and limited availability of cooking coal.

(ii) Lower productivity of labour.

(iii) Irregular supply of power.

(iv) Poor infrastructure.

The importance of IT sector is as follows:

(i) A major impact of this industry has been an employment generation. The IT industry employed over one million persons.

(ii) It is encouraging to know that 30 per cent of the people employed in this sector are women.

(iii) This industry has been a major foreign exchange earner in the last two or three years because of its fast growing Business Processes Outsourcing (BPO) sector.

(iv) The continuous growth in the hardware and software is the key to the success of the IT industry in India.

Industries have caused severe pollution of our natural resources. Industries cause environmental degradation through four main types of pollution, i.e., air pollution, water pollution, land pollution or soil degradation, and noise pollution.

Smoke contains undesirable gases like carbon dioxide, sulphur dioxide and carbon monoxide, besides solid and liquid particulate matter, in the form of dust and spray mist, which cause air pollution.

(a) Air pollution affects the health of humans, animals and plants alike and also causes damage to buildings. Air pollution is caused by the presence of a high proportion of undesirable gases, such as sulphur dioxide and carbon monoxide. Smoke is emitted by chemical and paper factories, brick kilns, refineries and smelting plants, and burning of fossil fuels in big and small factories.

(b) Water pollution is caused by the discharge of untreated chemical waste like dyes, detergents, acids, heavy metals like lead and mercury, pesticides, fertilizers, and plastics from industries, into freshwater bodies like rivers and lakes. Water pollution is caused by organic and inorganic industrial wastes and effluents discharged into rivers. The discharge of hot water from thermal power plants into rivers before cooling is called thermal pollution of water. The main culprits in this regard are paper, pulp, chemical, textile and dyeing, petroleum, refineries and electroplating industries that let out dyes, detergents, acids, salts and heavy metals like lead and mercury, pesticides, fertilizers, synthetic chemicals with carbon, plastics and rubber, etc., into the water bodies.

Solid wastes like fly ash, phospo-gypsum, and iron and steel slags also cause water pollution. Radioactive waste, hazardous chemicals, glass, plastic, industrial effluents and non-biodegradable garbage are the main agents of land pollution. Rainwater falling on polluted land dissolves and carries many of the pollutants further into the ground and pollutes groundwater.

Noise pollution is due to industrial and construction activities. Machinery, factory equipment, generators, saws and pneumatic and electric drills cause hearing problems and irritation. Loud noise can lead to irritation, loss of

hearing, and an increase in blood pressure and heart rate. Industrial machinery, construction activities, generators, and equipment like saws and pneumatic drills are mainly responsible for noise pollution.

One of the most important steps for the control of environmental degradation is treating hot and polluted waste water from industries before releasing it into our rivers and lakes.

Waste water treatment involves:

- (a) Primary treatment through screening, grinding, flocculation and sedimentation.
- (b) Secondary treatment through bacterial action to digest harmful chemicals.
- (c) Tertiary stage of stirring with chemicals to neutralize remaining harmful waste.

Treated waste water can be recycled for reuse in industrial processes. Rainwater harvesting can be used to meet the requirements of water for industrial processes.

Legal provisions must be made to regulate the use of groundwater for industrial use. Smoke stacks, filters, scrubbers, and electrostatic and inertial separators remove a large number of harmful particles from industrial smoke. The emission of smoke itself from industries can be reduced by using more efficient fuels like oil and natural gas in place of coal.

Industrial and generator silencers and sound-absorbing material are available to reduce the noise level in industries. Industrial workers can use earphones and earplugs for individual protection of health and hearing.

National Thermal Power Corporation or NTPC is a major electricity generation and distribution company in India.

NTPC has demonstrated how conservation of environment and natural resources can happen simultaneously with industrial growth by:

- (a) Adopting latest technical knowhow minimizing waste
- (b) Providing green cover
- (c) Reducing environmental pollution
- (d) Continuous monitoring

The pro-active approach adopted by the National Thermal Power Corporation (NTPC) for preserving the natural environment:

- (i) Optimum utilization of equipment adopting latest techniques and upgrading existing equipment.
- (ii) Minimizing waste generation by maximizing ash utilization.
- (iii) Providing green belts for nurturing ecological balance and addressing the question of special purpose vehicles for afforestation.
- (iv) Reducing environmental pollution through ash pond management, ash water recycling system and liquid waste management.
- (v) Ecological monitoring, reviews and online database management for all its power stations.

Ways to reduce industrial pollution are listed below:

- (i) Restructuring the manufacturing processes to reduce or eliminate pollutants, through a process called pollution prevention.
- (ii) Creating cooling ponds, which are man-made and are designed to cool the heated water from industries by evaporation, condensation and radiation.
- (iii) Filtration of sewage in water treatment plants attached to industries.
- (iv) Instructing industries to be set up far from residential areas.
- (v) Backing the constitutional provisions by a number of laws – acts, rules, and notifications.

Steps to be taken to minimize environmental degradation by industries

- (i) Minimizing use of water for processing by reusing and recycling it in two or more successive stages.
- (ii) Harvesting of rainwater to meet water requirements.
- (iii) Treating hot water and effluents before releasing them in rivers and ponds.
- (iv) Particulate matter in the air can be reduced by fitting smoke stacks to factories with electrostatic precipitators, fabric filters, scrubbers and inertial separators.
- (v) Smoke can be reduced by using oil or gas instead of coal in factories.
- (vi) Machinery and equipments can be used and generators should be fitted with silencers.
- (vii) Almost all machineries can be redesigned to increase energy efficiency and reduce noise.

MCQ

1. Which one of the following industries uses limestone as a raw material?
(a) Aluminum (b) Cement (c) Plastic (d) Automobile
2. Which one of the following agencies markets steel for the public sector plants?
(a) HAIL (b) SAIL (c) TATA Steel (d) MNCC
3. Which one of the following industries uses bauxite as a raw material?
(a) Aluminum smelting (b) Cement (c) Paper (d) Steel
4. Which one of the following industries manufactures telephones, computers etc?
(a) Steel (b) Electronic (c) Aluminium smelting (d) Information Technology
5. Most of the integrated steel plants in India are located in :-
(a) Malwa Plateau (b) Bundelkhand Plateau (c) Meghalaya Plateau (d) Chotanagpur Plateau
6. Tools, implements, fertilisers, tractors, etc are supplied by:
(a) Government (b) Industry (c) People (d) None of these
7. Which are the two prime factors for the location of aluminium industry?

(a) Market and cheap labour (b) Transport network and unlimited water supply (c) Regular supply of electricity and an assured source of raw material (d) None of the above

8. _____ pollution of water occurs when hot water from factories and thermal plants is drained into rivers and ponds before cooling.

(a) Thermal (b) Industrial (c) Noise (d) Air

9. India is the largest producer of raw jute and jute goods at second place as an exporter after _____.

(a) Bangladesh (b) Pakistan (c) China (d) Sri Lanka

10. Which one of the following organizations is responsible for the marketing of steel of the public sector undertaking?

(a) TISCO (b) IISCO (c) BHEL (d) SAIL

ANSWER:- 1(B), 2(B), 3 (A), 4(B), 5(D), 6(B), 7(C), 8(A), 9(A), 10(D)

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS(2M)

1. How does manufacturing help in earning foreign exchange?

Ans. Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce and brings in much needed foreign exchange.

2. What are agglomeration economies?

Ans. Many industries tend to come together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centers known as agglomeration economies.

3. What are consumer industries?

Ans. Consumer industries are the industries that produce goods for direct use by consumers. Example , sugar, toothpaste, paper, sewing, machines etc.

4. Give one difference between public and private sectors.

Ans. Public sector is owned and operated by government agencies eg BHEL and the industries of the private sector are owned and operated by individuals or a group of individual TISCO.

5. What are the main problems faced by cotton textile industries?

Ans. Power supply is erratic; machinery needs to be upgraded, low output of labour and stiff competition with the synthetic fibre industry.

6. Suggest any one way to increase the income of Indian industrial workers.

Ans. Better employment benefit- paid leave, PF, Medical etc.

7. Classify industries on the basis of source of raw materials.

Ans. (I) Agro based industries.

(II) Mineral based industries.

8. How is iron ore transported from Kudremukh mines to a port near Mangaluru?

Ans. Iron ore is transported as slurry through pipelines.

9. How did the 'Bailadila' Iron ore field get its name?

Ans. The Bailadila hills look like the hump of an ox, hence the Bailadila name given to the iron ore field.

10. Name the mineral which is used to harden steel during manufacturing.

Ans. Manganese.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (3M)

1. Describe the role of industries in the development of agriculture.

Ans: Role of industries in the development of agriculture:

- (I) Provides agricultural tools and machines.
- (II) Increase agriculture and industrial production
- (III) Mechanization of agriculture
- (IV) Eradication of unemployment

2. "Industrialization and urbanization go hand in hand." Validate the statement.

Ans After an industrial activity starts in a town, urbanization follows. Industry provides employment to the people of the area. Population migrates from rural hinterlands to seek jobs, housing and transport facilities are developed to accommodate these people. Other infrastructural developments take place leading to growth and development of the town into a city.

3. Highlight any three challenges faced by jute industry.

Ans. (I) stiff competition with Bangladesh, Brazil, Philippines, Egypt and Thailand in the international market.

(II) There is competition with synthetic fibre that is cheaper.

(III) There is also a concern about increasing productivity and improving the quality of jute products.

4. What are the challenges faced by the sugar industry?

Ans. (I) The industry is seasonal, so getting labour becomes difficult.

(II) India is still using old and inefficient methods of production, thereby, affecting it's production.

(III) There is a need to maximise the use of baggase to face the problem of power breakup.

5. How can the industrial pollution of fresh water be reduced? Explain various ways.

Ans. I. Minimising the use of water for processing by reusing.

II. Harvesting of rainwater to meet water requirements.

III. Treating hot water and effluent before releasing them in rivers and ponds.

6. "Production and consumption of steel is often regarded as the index of a country's development." Examine the statement.

Ans. (I) Iron and steel Industry is the basic industry. Since all the other industries- heavy, medium and light, depend on it for their machinery.

(II) steel is needed to manufacture a variety of engineering goods.

(III) It is also needed as construction material, defense, medical, telephonic, scientific equipment and a variety of consumer goods.

7. Examine the impact of liberalization on automobile industry in India.

Ans. (I) Automobiles provide vehicles for quick transport of goods, services and passengers.

(II) Foreign direct investment has given a boost to the industry with the efforts of private entrepreneurs.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS(5M)

1."The challenge of sustainable development requires control over industrial pollution." Substantiate the statement with examples.

Ans. (I)On one hand, industries lead to extensive industrial growth and expansion, on the other hand, these are also the cause of environmental degradation which prompt to the different type of air and water pollution.

(II)There is an increasing requirement to use a further sustainable model.

(III) Industries must produce eco- friendly products and dump waste responsibly.

(IV) Use of latest technology can help industries to control pollution and lead towards sustainable mode of operation.

(V) Industries must use reuse- recycle -reduce approach for sustainable development.

2. Describe any three factors affecting location of industry in a region.

Ans. Factors required to set up an industry:

- (I) Availability of raw materials: Raw materials should be easily available from nearby areas only.
- (II) Labour: labour should be skilled and easily available from the neighbouring areas only.
- (III) Power supply: without power supply an industry cannot run, so it should also be available as per the requirements.
- (IV) Market: If it is heavy material and a perishable good, market for the sale of the goods should also be available in a nearby area only.

3. Why are jute mills concentrated along the Hoogly river? Explain giving reasons.

Ans. Reasons for concentration of jute mills along the Hooghly River:

- (I) West Bengal is the storehouse of jute. It produces the highest quantity of jute.
- (II) The industry requires a lot of water which is easily available from the Hooghly river.
- (III) Cheap labour is easily available because of migrating labour from neighboring states of Bihar and Odisha.
- (IV) Inexpensive water transport in the river Hooghly is available.
- (V) A large urban sector in Kolkata provides banking, insurance and loan facilities.

5. Describe the importance of manufacturing industries as a backbone of economic development of the company.

Ans. Importance of manufacturing industries:

- (I) Help in modernising agriculture
- (II) Eradication of unemployment and poverty.
- (III) Expands trade and commerce
- (IV) Brings foreign exchange
- (V) Increase standard of living and per capita income.
- (VI) Self sufficiency.

PASSAGE

Industrial locations are complex in nature .These are influenced by availability of raw material, labour, capital, power and market, etc. It is rarely possible to find all these factors available at one place.

Consequently, manufacturing activities tends to locate at the most appropriate place where all the factor of industrial location are either available or can be arranged at lower cost. After an industrial activities starts, urbanization follows. Sometimes, industries are located in or near the cities. Thus, industrialisation and urbanisation go hand in hand. Cities provide markets and also provide services such as banking, insurance, transport, labour, consultants and financial advice etc. to the industry. Many industries tend to come together to make use of advantage offered by the urban Centre known as agglomeration economies. Gradually, a large industry agglomeration takes place.

Question:-

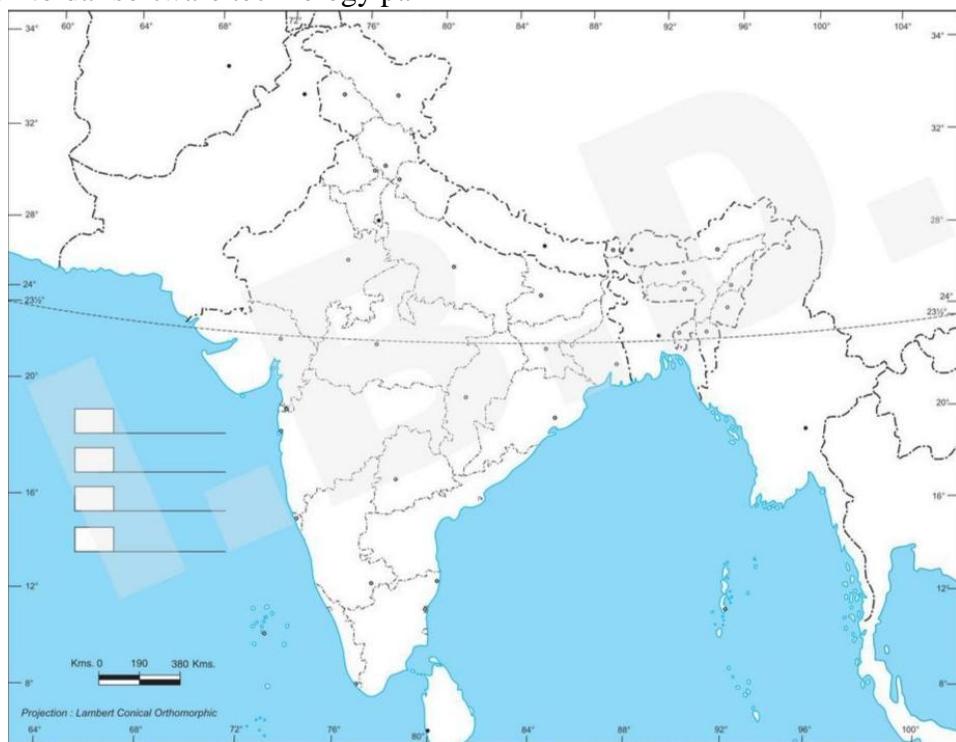
1. On what factors is the location of the industry dependent on?
2. What do you understand by agglomeration economies?
3. How do industrialisation and urbanisation go hand in hand?

Answer:-

1. It is dependent on availability of raw material, labour, capital, power and market, etc.
2. Many industries tend to come together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centres known as agglomeration economies.
3. Cities provide markets and also provide services such as banking, insurance, transport, labour consultants and financial advice, etc. to the industry.

MAP WORK

1. Locate the following in the India map
 - (A) Bhilai-iron and steel plant
 - (B) Gandhinagar software Technology park
 - (C) Software technology park in Maharashtra
 - (D) Iron and steel plant in Jharkhand.
 - (E) Durgapur- Iron and steel plant
 - (F) Jamshedpur- Iron and steel plant
 - (G) Noida- software technology park



LIFELINE OF NATIONAL ECONOMY

Means of transport and communication—lifelines of our national economy:

They help in—

- increasing cooperation and assistance between countries;
- easy movement of goods and material between countries;
- trade and commerce within the country;
- reducing distances thus bringing the world closer;
- both production and distribution of goods; and
- movement of large number of people and over long distances.

Roadways:

Importance of road transport vis-a-vis rail transport—

- Construction cost of roads is much lower than that of railway lines.
- Roads can traverse comparatively more dissected and undulating topography.
- Roads can negotiate higher gradients of slopes and as such can traverse mountains such as the Himalayas.
- Road transport is economical in transportation of few persons and relatively smaller amount of goods over short distances.
- It also provides door-to-door service, thus the cost of loading and unloading is much lower.
- Road transport is also used as a feeder to other modes of transport.
- Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways: It's a major road development project linking Delhi- Kolkata-Chennai-Mumbai and Delhi by six-lane Super Highways.
- The North-South corridors linking Srinagar (Jammu & Kashmir) and Kanyakumari (Tamil Nadu), and East-West Corridor connecting Silchar (Assam) and Porbander (Gujarat) are part of this project. ‘
- They are made to reduce the time and distance between the mega cities of India.

National Highways:

National Highways link all Major cities of extreme parts of the country. These are the primary road systems and are maintained by the Central Public Works Department (CPWD). The National Highway 7 between Varanasi and Kanyakumari is the longest highway of India.

- State Highways: Roads linking a state capital with different district headquarters. These roads are constructed and maintained by State Public Works Department in State and Union Territories.
- District Roads: These roads connect the district headquarters with other places of the district. These roads are maintained by the Zila Parishad.
- Other Roads: Rural roads, which link rural areas and villages with towns, are classified under this category. Under the Pradhan Mantri Grameen Sadak Yojana scheme special provisions are made so that every village in the country is linked to a major town in the country by an all season motorable road.
- Border Roads: Border Roads Organisation constructs and maintains roads in the bordering areas of the country. These roads are of strategic importance in the northern and northeastern border areas.

Importance of Railways in India:

1. They are the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India.
2. Railways also make it possible to conduct different activities like business, sightseeing, and pilgrimage along with transportation of goods over longer distances.
3. Indian Railways plays a role of national integration.

4. Railways in India bind the economic life of the country as well as accelerate the development of the industry and agriculture.

Factors which influence the distribution pattern of Railway network in India:

The distribution pattern of the Railway network in the country has been largely influenced by

1. Physiographic, economic and administrative factors.

2. The density railway network is high in the northern plains because they are vast level land, have high population density and rich agricultural resources.

3. In the hilly terrains of the peninsular region, railway tracts are laid through low hills, gaps or tunnels therefore it difficult to construct railway lines.

4. The Himalayan mountainous regions too are unfavorable for the construction of railway lines due to high relief, sparse population and lack of economic opportunities.

5. It was difficult to lay railway lines on the sandy plain of western Rajasthan, swamps of Gujarat, forested tracks of Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Odisha and Jharkhand.

Importance of Pipelines in India:

In the past, these were used to transport water to cities and industries.

1. These are used for transporting crude oil, petroleum products and natural gas from oil and natural gas fields to refineries, fertilizer factories and big thermal power plants.

2. Solids can also be transported through a pipeline when converted into slurry. Because of pipelines refineries like Barauni, Mathura, Panipat and gas based fertilizer plants could be located in the interiors of India. Initial cost of laying pipelines is high but subsequent running costs are minimal.

3. It rules out trans-shipment (during transportation) losses or delays.

Three important networks of pipeline transportation in the country:

- From oil field in upper Assam to Kanpur (Uttar Pradesh).
- From Salaya in Gujarat to Jalandhar in Punjab.
- Gas pipeline from Hazira in Gujarat connects Jagdishpur in Uttar Pradesh,

Importance of water transport:

1. Waterways are the cheapest means of transport.

2. They are most suitable for carrying heavy and bulky goods.

3. It is a fuel-efficient and environment friendly mode.

The National Waterways by the Government

1. The Ganga river between Allahabad and Haldia (1620 km)-N.W. No.1

2. The Brahmaputra river between Sadiya and Dhubri (891 km)-N.W. No.2

3. The West-Coast Canal in Kerala (Kottapurma-Komman, Udyogamandal and Champakkara canals-205 km)-N.W. No.3

Major Sea Ports:

1. Kandla: It was the first port developed soon after Independence. It was developed to ease the volume of trade on the Mumbai port. Kandla is a tidal port.
2. Mumbai: It is the biggest port with a spacious natural and well-sheltered harbour.
3. The Jawaharlal Nehru port: It was planned with a view to decongest the Mumbai port and serve as a hub port for this region.
4. Martnagao port (Goa): It is the premier iron ore exporting port of the country. This port accounts for about fifty per cent of India's iron ore export.
5. New Mangalore port: It export iron ore from Kudremukh mines.
6. Kochi: It is located at the entrance of a lagoon with a natural harbour.
7. Tuticorin, in Tamil Nadu: This port has a natural harbour. It trades a large variety of cargoes to our neighbouring countries like Sri Lanka, Maldives, etc.
8. Chennai: It is one of the oldest artificial ports of the country. It is ranked next to Mumbai in terms of the volume of trade and cargo.
9. Vishakhapatnam: It is the deepest landlocked and well-protected port. This port was developed as a port for iron ore exports.
10. Paradip port: It is located in Odisha. It specialises in the export of iron ore.
11. Kolkata: It is an inland riverine port. This port serves a very large and rich hinterland of Ganga- Brahmaputra basin. Being a tidal port, it requires constant dredging of Floogly River.
12. Haldia port: It was developed as a subsidiary port, in order to relieve growing pressure on the Kolkata port.

Importance of Airways:

- 1.The air travel, today, is the fastest, most comfortable and prestigious mode of transport.
2. It can cover very difficult terrains like high mountains, dreary deserts, dense forests and also long oceanic stretches with great ease.
3. Air travel has made access easier in the north-eastern part of the country which has big rivers, dissected relief, dense forests and frequent floods and international frontiers.

Communication:

Two major means of communication in India:

- Personal communication including letter, email, telephone, etc.
- Mass communication including television, radio, press, films, etc.

Different types of mail handled by Indian postal department:

- First class mail: Cards and envelopes are airlifted between stations covering both land and air.
- Second class mail: includes book packets, registered newspapers and periodicals. They are carried by surface mail, covering land and water transport.

Importance of mass communication:

- 1.Mass communication provides entertainment.
2. They create awareness among people about various national programmes and policies. They provide variety of programmes in national, regional and local languages for various categories of people, spread over different parts of the country.
3. They strengthen democracy in the country by providing news and information to the masses.
4. It helps in agriculture sector by helping farmers by providing them information about new agricultural practices.

5. Doordarshan is the national television channel of India. It is one of the largest terrestrial networks in the world.

6. The largest numbers of newspapers published in the country are in Hindi, followed by English and Urdu. India is the largest producer of feature films in the world.

International Trade:

- International trade is defined as the exchange of goods and services between two or more countries.
- It is also considered as economic barometer because advancement of international trade of a country leads to economic prosperity. Income earned from international trade constitutes a major part in the net national income. Large international trade leads to revival of domestic economy.

Balance of trade:

- The difference between export and import is known as balance of trade.
- If the value of exports is more than the value of imports, it is called favorable balance of trade. And if the value of imports is greater than the value of exports it is known as unfavorable balance of trade.
- Favorable balance of trade is regarded good for the economic development whereas unfavorable balance of trade is seen harmful for the domestic economy.

Importance of tourism as a trade:

- Tourism in India earns huge Foreign exchange,
- Over 2.6 million foreign tourists visit India every year.
- More than 15 million people are directly engaged in the tourism industry.
- Tourism also promotes national integration,
- It provides support to local handicrafts and cultural pursuits.
- It also helps in the development of international understanding about our culture and heritage.
- Foreign tourists visit India for heritage tourism, eco tourism, adventure tourism, cultural tourism, medical tourism and business tourism.
- Rajasthan, Goa, Jammu and Kashmir and temple towns of south India are important destinations of foreign tourists in India.
- There is vast potential of tourism development in the north-eastern states and the interior parts of Himalayas, but due to strategic reasons these have not been encouraged so far

MCQ

1. Which of the following extreme locations are connected by the North-East corridor?

- A) Mumbai and Nagpur
- B) Silchar and Porbandar
- C) Mumbai and Kolkatta
- D) Nagpur and Siliguri

2. Which mode of transport reduces post shipments losses and delay?

- A) Railways
- B) Roadways
- C) Waterways
- D) Pipelines

3. Which of the following states is not connected to H.V.J Pipelines?

- A) Madhya Pradesh
- B) Maharashtra
- C) Gujarat

- D) Goa
4. Which one of the following ports is the deepest land locked and well protected port along the east coast?
- A) Chennai
 - B) Vishakhapatnam
 - C) Tuticorin
 - D) Paradwip
5. Which of the following port is the oldest port of the eastern coast of india
- A) Kolkatta
 - B) Kandla
 - C) Chennai
 - D) Mumbai
6. Countries like Nepal and Bhutan are called?
- A) Land locked countries
 - B) Coastal countries
 - C) Gulf countries
 - D) None of these
7. Which one of the following port is a tidal port?
- A) Mumbai
 - B) Kandla
 - C) New Manglore
 - D) Vishakhapatnam
8. What location are connected by the North -South corridor?
- A) Delhi and Kanya-Kumari
 - B) Delhi and Mumbai
 - C) Jabalpur and Madhurai
 - D) Srinagar and Kanyakumari
9. Which organisation construct main road in border area?
- A) NHAI.
 - B) BRO
 - C) BFS
 - D) None of these
10. Which one of the following port was developed to relieve the pressure on kolkatta port
- A) Halidia
 - B) Vishkapatnam
 - C) Paradwip
 - D) Kandla

ANSWER:- 1(b), 2(d), 3(b) , 4(b), 5(c), 6(a), 7(b), 8(d), 9(b) , 10(a)

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTION(2M)

1. Name the southern terminal station of the North South corridor?

Ans Kanyakumari

2. Name the river which is related to national water way no. 1?

Ans Ganga

3. Name the river related to national waterway no. 2?

Ans Brahmaputra

4. What is new arrival on the transport map of India?

Ans pipeline transport network

5. Name first sea port developed after independence on the Western coast of India?

Ans Kandla.

6. Name the state related to national waterways no. 3?

Ans Kerala

7. Which is oldest artificial port of India?

Ans. Chennai

8. Name the inland riverine major sea port of India?

Ans kolkatta

9. Write the name of international airport of Mumbai?

Ans Chatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Airport

10. Which is the deepest land locked well protected sea port of India?

Ans Vishakhapatnam

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION(3M)

1. Tourism industry in India has grown substantially over the last three decades. support the statement?

Ans. A) Than 50 million people is directly engaged tourism industry.

B) Tourism also promotes national integration and provide support to local handicraft.

C) it also help in development of international understanding about our cultural and heritage .

2. Rail transport suffers from certain problem in India. Support the statements with example?

Ans. A) Many passenger travel without ticket.

B) Theft and damaging of railway property.

C) Late running of train.

D) Unnecessary chain pulling.

3. What is pipeline transportation? Write its merit and demerit

Ans. Pipeline transport network is the new mode of transport used in these days in the past, pipelines where used to transport water to Cities and Industries now this is used for transporting Crude Oil Petroleum products and natural gas from oil and natural gas field to refinery , fertilizer factory and big thermal power plant. Solid can also be transferred through Pipeline when converted into slurry.

Merits

1. useful in transporting liquid and solid slurry from far away location.

2. Subsequent running cost after laying down the network are minimal.

3. It rules out transshipment loss .

Demerits

1.Initial cost of plane pipeline is high.

2. Pipelines can burst or even have leakage leading to wastage of valuable resource like water Mineral oil etc.

4. Which three highway are included in super highway of India?

Ans. i. Golden Quadrilateral: links Delhi, Kolkata, Mumbai, Chennai by a six lane super highways.

ii. The North South corridor: links Sri-Nagar to Kanyakumari.

iii. The east west corridor: links Silchar to Assam.

5. Why do movements of goods and service from one place to another require fast and efficient means of transport? Explain with example.

Ans. i. We use different material and service in our daily life. Some of these are available in our immediate surroundings, while other requirements are met by bringing things from other places.

ii. The product comes to consumer by transportation.

iii. The pace of development of a country depends upon the production of goods and service as well as their movements over space.

6. Evaluate any three features of golden quadrilateral.

Ans. i. It is six lane superhighway.

ii. It has the objective to reduce time and distance between mega cities.

iii. It is implemented by NHAI for quick and comfortable movements of goods and passenger in India.

7. Define the term ‘tourism’. Why tourism known as a trade? Explain.

Ans. i. Tourism is “the cultural, recreational and commercial visit to place of interest in a country.

ii. Tourism is known as trade because

iii. More than 15 million people are directly engaged in a tourism industry.

iv. Tourism provides supports to local handicraft.

v. It helps in the growth of national income and integrity.

8. Means of transport and communication called the lifeline of a nation and its economy. Why?

Ans. i. Movements of goods and services from their supply location to demand location necessitates the need for transport.

ii. The pace of a country depends upon the production of goods and service as well as their movement over space

9. “Airways is the most preferred mode of transport in North – eastern states of India”. Give reason.

Ans. i. The North eastern part of the country is marked with the presence of big rivers, dissected relief and dense forest hence, it is difficult to construct roads and railways lines there.

ii. Air travel has made access to North-eastern part of country easier and quicker

iii. There are frequent floods and international frontier, which require immediate and quick attention from government authorities, flood also damage road and railways lines.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION (5M)

1. Explain with example the role of means of transport and communication in making our life prosperous and comfortable?

Ans.i. Efficient means of transport are prerequisite for fast development

- ii. Today the world has converted into large village with the help of efficient and fast moving transport.
- iii. We can proudly say that India is well linked with the rest of the world despite of it's large size
- iv. Railways, newspaper, media, waterways, transport, radio etc has been contributing to the socio- economic progress in many ways
- v. The trades from local to international levels have added to the vatality of it's economy
- vi. It has enriched our lives and added substantially to growth and comfort

2. Compare and contrast the merits and demerits of roadways with those of railways

Ans. Construction time and construction cost of roadways are much less than railways

- i. Road can transverse comparatively more dissected and dulating topography which is limitation of railways roads can negotiate higher gradient of slope and as such can transverse mountains like Himalaya, whereas the mountains region is unfavorable for construction of railways
- ii. Road transport are economical in transportation of few person and relatively smaller amount of good over short distance , whereas railways is suitable for long distance transport and carrying large amount people
- iii. Road provide door to door service, thus cost of loading and unloading is much lower but railways have nit reached everywhere, still there are place that places which are yet to be connected with the railways.

3. "International trade is considered the economic barometer of a country". Justify the statements with arguments

Ans.i. Advancement of international trade is the index of prosperity of a country

- ii. As the resource is space bound, no country can survive without international trade
- iii. The balance of trade of country is the difference between the import and export
- iv. The increase of export over import is favourable trade
- v. India has emerged as a software giant at international level
- vi. India has earned large foreign exchange through the export of IT

4. Explain with example the condition responsible for uneven distribution pattern of the railways network in India.

Ans. Physical and economic factor have influence the distribution pattern of the Indian Railways network:

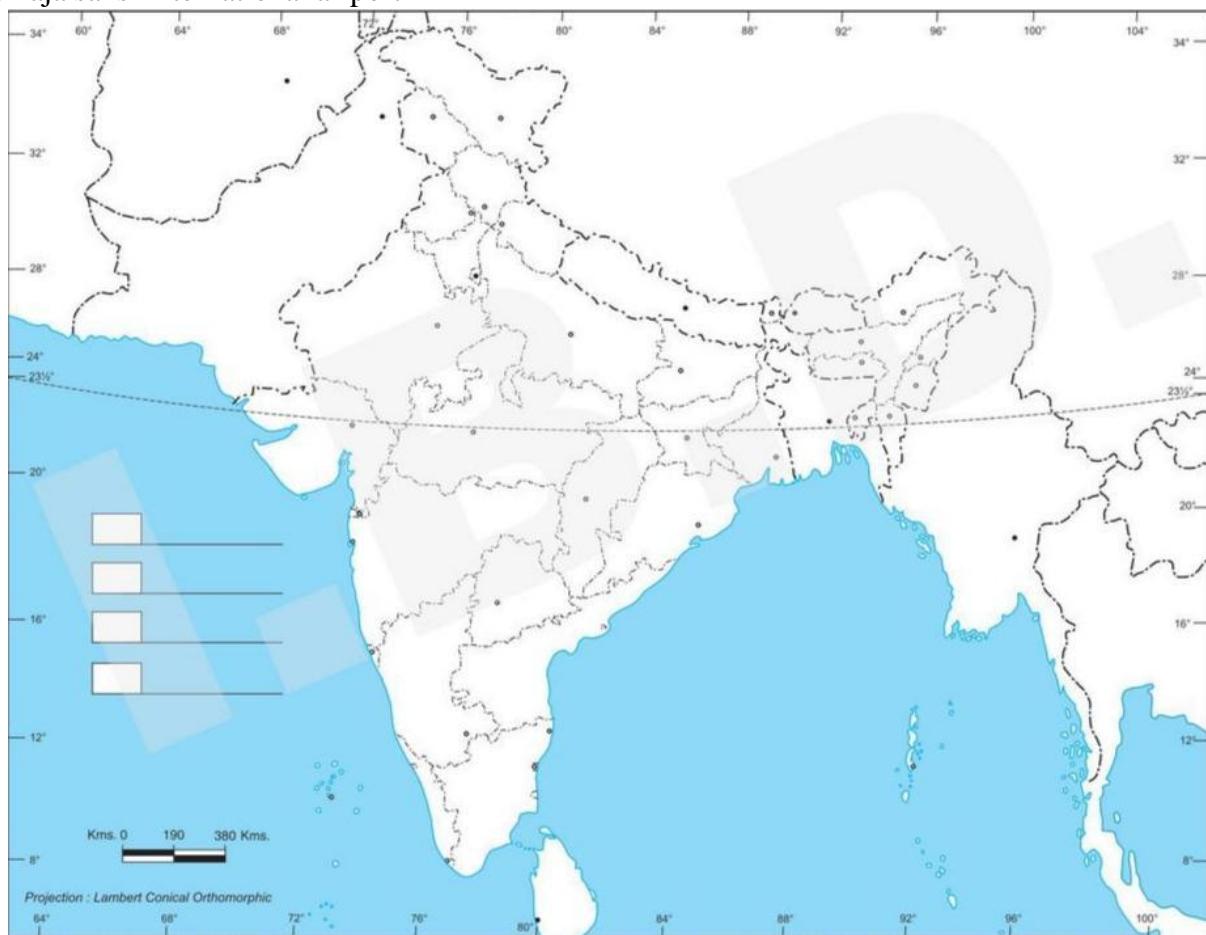
- 1. Northern plains: vast level land, high production density and rich agriculture resource provided the development of railways in these plains. However a large number of river requiring construction of bridge across their wide banks posed some obstacles.
- 2. Peninsular region and the Himalayan region : the railways tracks are laid through low hills, gaps and tunnels. The Himalayan mountains regions are unfavourable for the construction of railways lines due to high relief, sparse population and lack of economic opportunities.
- 3. Swamps of Gujarat, forested tracks of Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Odisha, and Jharkhand, are also not suitable for the development of railways.

4. Peninsular plateau rich in minerals promotes industrial developments, encouraging the railways tracks.

MAP WORK

Locate and label the following features on the outline map of India

- (A) Tuticorin port
- (B) Rajiv Gandhi international airport
- (C) Paradwip port
- (D) Kandla
- (E) Mangalore
- (F) Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose international airport
- (G) Raja sansi international airport



PASSAGE

Mass Communication provides entertainment and create awareness among people about various National programmes and policies. it includes videos ,television, newspaper magazine ,book, and films. All India Radio Akashvani broadcast a variety of program in National, regional and local language for various categories of people spread over different part of our country. Dordarshan the national television channel of India is one of the largest Terrestrial network in the world it and it broadcast a variety of programs from entertainment, educational to sports etc for people of different age group.

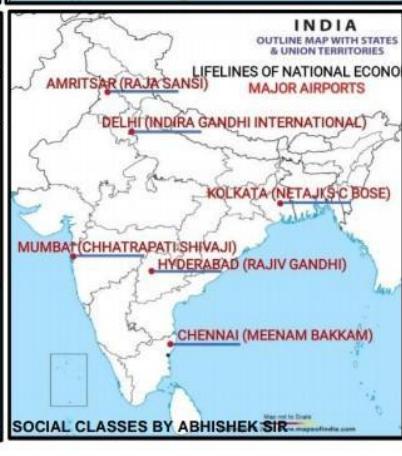
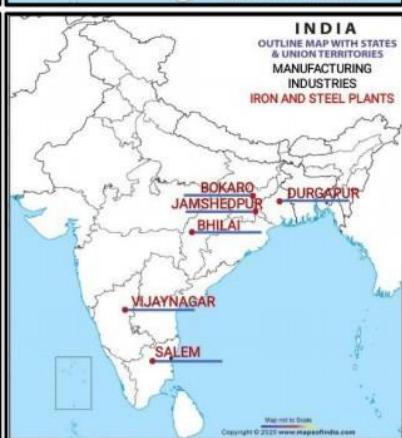
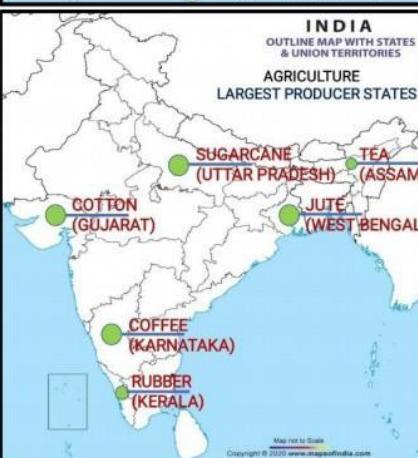
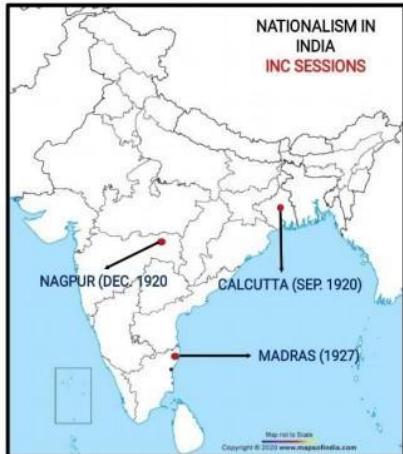
India public a large number of newspapers and periodicals annually they are of different type depending upon their periodicity. Newspaper a public in the hundred language and dialect

Question

1. which radio broadcast a variety of programmes in national, regional, and local, language, for various categories of people, to different and part of India
2. Which television channel of India is one of the largest terrestrial network in the world?
3. What is the purpose of mass communication other than entertainment?

Answer

1. All India radio (aakashwani) .
2. Doordarshan .
3. It also creates awareness among people about various national programme and policies.



Sample Paper 1
Social Science (Code 087)
Class X Session 2022-23

Time: 3 Hours**Max. Marks: 80****General Instructions:**

- i. Question paper comprises five Sections – A, B, C, D and E. There are 37 questions in the question paper. All questions are compulsory.
- ii. Section A – From question 1 to 20 are MCQs of 1 mark each.
- iii. Section B – Question no. 21 to 24 are Very Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 2 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 40 words.
- iv. Section C contains Q.25to Q.29 are Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 60 words
- v. Section D – Question no. 30 to 33 are long answer type questions, carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 120 words.
- vi. Section-E - Questions no from 34 to 36 are case based questions with three sub questions and are of 4 marks each.
- vii. Section F – Question no. 37 is map based, carrying 5 marks with two parts, 37a from History (2 marks) and 37b from Geography (3 marks).
- viii. There is no overall choice in the question paper. However, an internal choice has been provided in few questions. Only one of the choices in such questions have to be attempted.
- ix. In addition to this, separate instructions are given with each section and question, wherever necessary.

SECTION-A**Multiple Choice Questions (Q 1 to 20)****2X4=8**

1. Consider these statements about the Image given below



1. Title of this caricature is “The Club of Thinkers”.
2. The plaque on the left bears the inscription: ‘The most important question of today’s meeting: How long will thinking be allowed to us?’
3. This was a caricature of meeting called by liberals.
4. This caricature was created in 1820.

Which of the above statement(s) is/are correct?

- (a) 1 only
- (b) 2 only
- (c) Both 1 and 2
- (d) 1, 2 and 4

2. Consider the following statements regarding Dandi March organised by Mahatma Gandhi and identify the incorrect one from the following.

- (a) Mahatma Gandhi started the Dandi March from Sabarmati Ashram
- (b) Dandi March is also known as salt march
- (c) Dandi March was started on 11 March 1930
- (d) Mahatma Gandhi accompanied 72 of his trusted members.

3. Which of the following was the reason for calling off ‘the Non-cooperation Movement’ by Gandhiji?

- (a) Pressure from the British Government
- (b) Second Round Table Conference
- (c) Gandhiji’s arrest
- (d) Chauri-Chaura incident

4. Which of the following are perfectly matched :

	List I	List II
(a)	Gomasthas	Official who acted as company’s agent
(b)	Spinning Jenny	Richard Arkwright
(c)	Steam engine	James Hargreaves
(d)	Cotton mill	James Watt

5. Arrange the following books in the ascending order of the dates of their publication-

1. ‘Kesari’ written by Balgangadhar Tilak.
2. ‘Gulamgiri’ written by Jyotiba Phule.
3. 1st printed edition of ‘The Ramcharitmanas of Tulsidas’.
4. ‘The Sambad Kaumudi’ published by Ram Mohan Roy.

Option :

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (c) 4, 3, 1, 2
- (d) 3, 4, 2, 4

6. Match the following and choose correct option.

	List I (Types)		List II (Method)
A.	Terrace farming	1.	Different crops grown parallelly
B.	Strip cropping	2.	Hill slopes are used as cultivable land in the form of flat cut regions of slope
C.	Contour ploughing	3.	Along the slope of mountain
D.	(D) Crop rotation	4.	Different crops grown in systematic succession

Select the correct option :

- (a) A-1, B-4, C-3,
D-2 (b) A-3, B-4,
C-1, D-2 (c) A-4,
B-1, C-3, D-2 (d)
A-2, B-1, C-3, D-4

7. Complete the table with correct information-

National Waterways	Between	Length (in km)
?	Sadiya-Dhubsi	891

Choose correct option :

- (a) Satluz River
- (b) Ganga- Haldia
- (c) The Brahmaputra river
- (d) Kollam- Kozhikode

8. Different arguments are usually put forth in favour of and against power sharing. Identify those which are in favour of power sharing and select the answer using the codes given below.

- A. Power sharing reduces conflict among different communities
 - B. Power sharing decreases the possibility of arbitrariness
 - C. Power sharing delays decision making process
 - D. Power sharing accommodates diversities
 - E. Power sharing increases instability and divisiveness
 - F. Power sharing promotes people's participation in government
 - G. Power sharing undermines the unity of a country
- (a) A, B, D, F
 - (b) A, C, E, F
 - (c) A, B, D, G
 - (d) B, C, D, G

9. The below cartoon clearly state that :



- (a) Perils of running a coalition Govt.
- (b) A coalition govt have more work to do.
- (c) The best way to run a democratic country like India is Coalition govt.
- (d) Coalition govt increases the overall efficiency of the Govt and hence shall be welcomed.

10. Identify the kind of administrative system :

- It is prevailing only in 25 countries and consists of two-level Government.
 - USA is known for the oldest country running this system successfully.
 - One level of govt. under this system is for the entire country and another for states that runs day to day administrative work.
 - Both of this level of govt. enjoys their power independent of each other. Select the appropriate option from the following.
- (a) Unitary
 - (b) Federalism
 - (c) Both
 - (d) None of these

11. Assertion : Forests plays a key role in the ecological system.

Reason : Forest are the primary producers on which all other living beings depend.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

12. **Assertion :** Hindi is identified as the only official language of India.

Reason : It helped in creating supremacy of Hindi speaking people over others.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

13. Which of the following is incorrect regarding a federal government?

- (a) Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country.
- (b) Federation has only one level of government.
- (c) One is the government for the entire country that is usually responsible for a few subjects of common national interest.
- (d) The others are governments at the level of provinces or states that look after much of the day-to-day administering of their state.

14. Democracy is preferred over dictatorship everywhere except

- (a) Nepal
- (b) Pakistan
- (c) India
- (d) Bangladesh

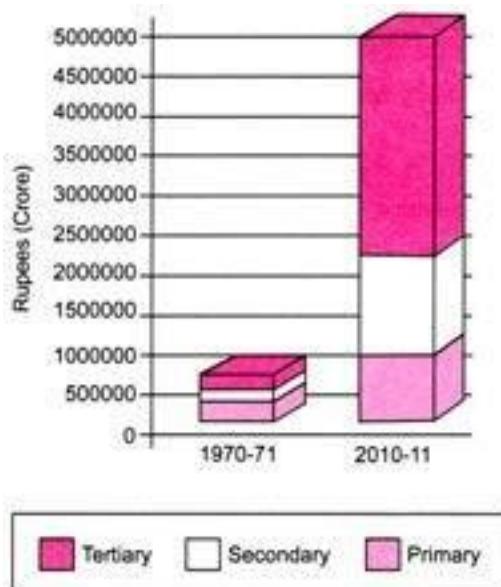
15. “Girls in India in the rural sector are sometimes not able to get secondary level education” which of the following is not the correct reason for this situation.

- (a) Society’s mind set which prefers boys getting better secondary and higher education.
- (b) Due to Poverty people are unable to provide basic education to their children
- (c) In villages women also constitute a major agricultural workforce which again works to their disadvantage.
- (d) Decreasing crime against women

16. Which of the following statements is correct?

- (a) Service sector contributes more than half of the GDP of India.
- (b) The scope of attracting tourists is limited as there is hardly any place of tourist attraction in India.
- (c) As an economy grows, first service sector grows and then agriculture and industrial sector grows.
- (d) None of the above

17. Study the following bar chart



The largest producing sector in 1970-71 is

- (a) Primary sector
- (b) Tertiary sector
- (c) Secondary sector
- (d) Primary and Secondary both

18. Most of the agricultural labourers like Mohan depend upon loans from informal sector. Which of the following statements about this sector is correct –

- (a) There are government bodies to supervise informal sector.
- (b) Money lenders ask for a reasonable rate of interest.
- (c) Cost of informal loans to the borrower is quite high.
- (d) Money lenders use fair means to get their money back.

19. Read the information given below and select the correct option:

A shoe manufacturer, M. Salim has to make a payment to the leather supplier, Prem and writes a cheque for a specific amount. This means that the shoe manufacturer instructs his bank to pay this amount to the leather supplier. The leather supplier takes this cheque, and deposits it in his own account in the bank. The money is transferred from one bank account to another bank account in a couple of days. The transaction is complete without any payment of cash.

Identify what happens after the transaction between Salim and Prem:

- (a) Salim's balance in his bank account increases and Prem's balance increases.
- (b) Salim's balance decreases and Prem's balance increases.
- (c) Salim's balance increases and Prem's balance decreases.
- (d) Salim's balance decreases and Prem's balance also decreases.

- 20.** The following table shows source of rural households in India in the year 2003.

Source	Share
Money lender	30%
Co-operative societies	27%
Commercial Bank	25%
Other (Merchant, Relative etc.)	18%

Analyzing the table above, what is the share of formal sector in total credit?

- (a) 25%
- (b) 27%
- (c) 52%
- (d) 18%

SECTION-B

Very Short Answer Question (Q 21 to 24)

2X4=8

- 21.** Why did Europeans flee to America in nineteenth century ? Explain.

- 22.** How is cement industry responsible for land degradation?

oo

Define the term 'Carding.'

- 23.** What two policies of the Sri Lankan government had increased the feeling of alienation among Sri Lankan Tamils ?

- 24.** Underemployment continues to be rampant in the rural areas. Suggest any three ways through which employment for rural people can be generated.

SECTION-C

Short Answer Based Question (Q 25 to 29)

3X5=15

- 25.** Explain any three effects of population growth in England in the eighteenth century.

- 26.** "Print culture created the conditions within which French Revolution occurred." Support the statement with suitable arguments.

oo

"Colonial administrators found 'vernacular' novels a valuable source of information on native life and customs." Prove the statement by giving three evidences.

- 27.** Why are we not able to perform to our full potential in the production of iron and steel in India? Explain any three reasons.
- 28.** How is democracy accountable and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens ? Analyse.
- 29.** “Money in your pocket cannot buy all the goods and services that you need to live well.” Explain giving suitable examples.

SECTION-D

Long Answer Based Question (Q 30 to 33)

5X4=20

- 30.** Describe the explosive conditions prevailed in Balkans after 1871 in Europe.

00

Illustrate with examples that food offers many opportunities of long-distance cultural exchange.

- 31.** Analyse the importance of ‘rainwater harvesting.’

00

Why is there a need to develop rainwater harvesting system in India? Explain.

- 32.** ‘Communalism can take various forms in politics.’ Explain.

00

“In India, women still lag behind men despite some improvement since Independence.” Support the statement with examples.

- 33.** “Credit pushes the borrower into situations from which recovery is very painful.” Support the statement.

00

Describe the significance of the Reserve Bank of India.

SECTION-E

Case Based Question (Q 34 to 36)

4X3=12

- 34.** Study the given sources and answer the questions that follow:

This type of farming is still practised in few pockets of India. Primitive subsistence agriculture is practised on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools like hoe, dao and digging sticks, and family/community labour. This type of farming depends upon monsoon, natural fertility of the soil and suitability of other environmental conditions to the crops grown.

The main characteristic of this type of farming is the use of higher doses of modern inputs, e.g., high yielding variety (HYV) seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides, in order to obtain higher productivity. The degree of commercialisation of agriculture varies from one region to another. For

example, rice is a commercial crop in Haryana and Punjab, but in Orissa, it is a subsistence crop. India's food security policy has a primary objective to ensure availability of food grains to the common people at an affordable price. It has enabled the poor to have access to food. The focus of the policy is on growth in agriculture production and on fixing the support price for procurement of wheat and rice, to maintain their stocks. Food Corporation of India (FCI) is responsible for procuring and stocking food grains, whereas distribution is ensured by public distribution system (PDS).

Question:

1. Which type of agriculture is practised on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools?
2. What does commercial farming use in order to obtain higher productivity?
3. What is the primary objective of India's food security policy?

35. Study the sources and answer the questions:**SOURCE A – Functions**

Parties shape public opinion. They raise and highlight issues. Parties have lakhs of members and activists spread all over the country. Many of the pressure groups are the extensions of political parties among different sections of society. Parties sometimes also launch movements for the resolution of problems faced by people. Often opinions in the society crystallise on the lines parties take.

SOURCE B – How many parties should we have?

Party system is not something any country can choose. It evolves over a long time, depending on the nature of society, its social and regional divisions, its history of politics and its system of elections. These cannot be changed very quickly. Each country develops a party system that is conditioned by its special circumstances. For example, if India has evolved a multi-party system, it is because the social and geographical diversity in such a large country is not easily absorbed by two or even three parties. No system is ideal for all countries and all situations.

SOURCE C – National political parties

Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission. While the Commission treats all parties equally, it offers some special facilities to large and established parties. These parties are given a unique symbol – only the official candidates of that party can use that election symbol. Parties that get this privilege and some other special facilities are 'recognised' by the Election Commission for this purpose. That is why these parties are called, 'recognised political parties'. The Election Commission has laid down detailed criteria of the proportion of votes and seats that a party must get in order to be a recognised party. A party that secures at least 6 per cent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a state and wins at least two seats is recognised as a State party. A party that secures at least six per cent of total votes in Lok Sabha elections or Assembly elections in four states and wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognised as a national party.

Question:

1. Which function of political parties is highlighted here?
2. Which type of political party system is the best one? Why?
3. Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission. Why?

36. Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

In general, MNCs set up production where it is close to the markets, where there is skilled and unskilled labour available at low costs and where the availability of other factors of production is assured. In addition,

MNCs might look for government policies that look after their interests. Having assured themselves of these conditions, MNCs set up factories and offices for production. The money that is spent to buy assets such as land, building, machines and other equipment is called investment. Investment made by MNCs is called foreign investment. Any investment is made with the hope that these assets will earn profits.

At times, MNCs set up production jointly with some of the local companies of these countries. The benefit to the local company of such joint production is two-fold. First, MNCs can provide money for additional investments, like buying new machines for faster production. Second, MNCs might bring with them the latest technology for production.

But the most common route for MNC investments is to buy up local companies and then to expand production. MNCs with huge wealth can quite easily do so. To take an example, Cargill Foods, a very large American MNC, has bought over smaller Indian companies such as Parakh Foods. Parakh Foods had built a large marketing network in various parts of India, where its brand was well-reputed. Also, Parakh Foods had four oil refineries, whose control has now shifted to Cargill. Cargill is now the largest producer of edible oil in India, with a capacity to make 5 million pouches daily. In fact, many of the top MNCs have wealth exceeding the entire budgets of the developing country governments. With such enormous wealth, imagine the power and influence of these MNCs.

Question:

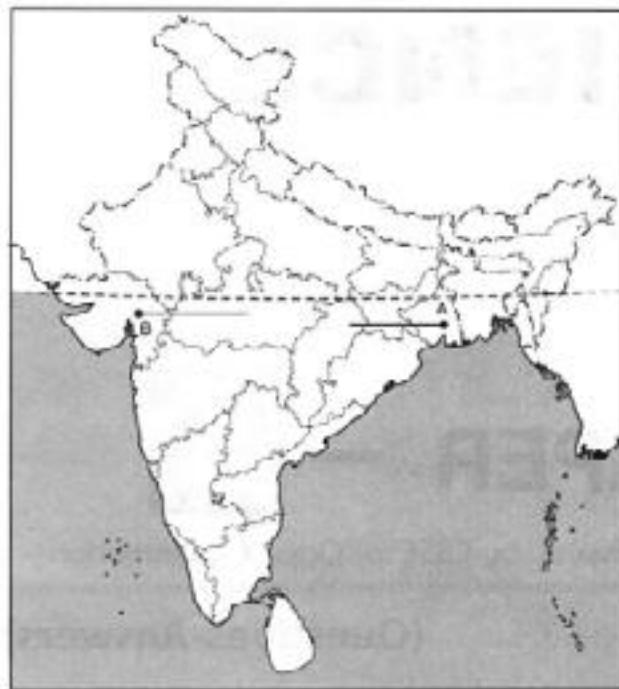
1. Write any two conveniences for which MNCs set production.
2. What is the difference between investment and foreign investment?
3. What is the common route for MNC investments? Give an example.

SECTION-F

Map Skill Based Question (Q 37a and 37b)

2+3=5

37. (1) Two features A and B are marked on the given outline map of India. Identify these features with the help of the information provided and write their correct names on the lines marked on the map.
- (A) Place where the Indian National Congress Session was held in September 1920.
(B) The place where the cotton mill workers satyagraha organised in 1918.
- (2) On the same outline map of India, locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbols.
- (i) The Khetri mines.
(ii) A Software-Technology Park in Karnataka.
(iii) The Southernmost city of the North-south Corridor.
(iv) Kandla Seaport.



--X--

Sample Paper 2

Social Science (Code 087)

Class X Session 2022-23

Time: 3 Hours

Max. Marks: 80

General Instructions:

- i. Question paper comprises five Sections – A, B, C, D and E. There are 37 questions in the question paper. All questions are compulsory.
- ii. Section A – From question 1 to 20 are MCQs of 1 mark each.
- iii. Section B – Question no. 21 to 24 are Very Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 2 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 40 words.
- iv. Section C contains Q.25to Q.29 are Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 60 words
- v. Section D – Question no. 30 to 33 are long answer type questions, carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 120 words.
- vi. Section-E - Questions no from 34 to 36 are case based questions with three sub questions and are of 4 marks each.
- vii. Section F – Question no. 37 is map based, carrying 5 marks with two parts, 37a from History (2 marks) and 37b from Geography (3 marks).
- viii. There is no overall choice in the question paper. However, an internal choice has been provided in few questions. Only one of the choices in such questions have to be attempted.
- ix. In addition to this, separate instructions are given with each section and question, wherever necessary.

SECTION-A

Multiple Choice Questions (Q 1 to 20)

2X4=8

1. Study the picture and answer the following question-



Who designed the cover of German almanac?

- (a) Otto von Bismarck
- (b) Andreas Rebmann
- (c) Giuseppe Mazzini
- (d) Napoleon

2. When was the first clear expression of nationalism noticed in Europe? (a)

- 1787
- (b) 1759
- (c) 1789
- (d) 1769

3. Match the following items given in column I with those in column II.

	Column I		Column II
A.	Silk routes	1.	Institution set-up to finance postwar reconstruction.
B.	G-77	2.	Carnival in Trinidad
C.	Canal colonies	3.	Pre-modern trade links
D.	World Bank	4.	Countries demanding a new international economic order
E.	Hosay	5.	Semi-desert wastes in the Punjab transformed by irrigation

Select the correct option :

- (a) A " 1, B " 5, C " 3, D " 4, E " 2
- (b) A " 4, B " 1, C " 2, D " 3, E " 5
- (c) A " 2, B " 5, C " 4, D " 1, E " 3
- (d) A " 3, B " 4, C " 5, D " 1, E " 2

4. Arrange the following cities according to the size (small large) of large- scale industries in these regions-

- 1. United provinces
- 2. Bombay
- 3. Madras
- 4. Bengal

Option :

- (a) 1, 3, 2, 4
- (b) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (c) 3, 4, 1, 2
- (d) 2, 3, 1, 4

5. The total geographical area of India is ____.

- (a) 328 million square kilometer
- (b) 3.28 million square kilometer
- (c) 32.8 million square kilometer
- (d) 0.328 million square kilometer

6. Processing of jute and rubber falls under which of the following industries?

- (a) Agro based
- (b) Mineral based
- (c) Business based
- (d) None of these

7. Complete the table with correct information :

Zone	State	Port	Features
Western Coast	Gujarat	A - ?	Known as tidal fort. Acknowledged as trade free zone.
Eastern Coast	B - ?	Tuticorin	It has a natural harbour and rich hinterland.

Choose correct option :

- (a) A - Kandla, B - Tamil Nadu
- (b) A - Kandla, B - Maharashtra
- (c) A - Mormugao, B - Maharashtra
- (d) A - Mormugao, B - Tamil Nadu

8. What does the cartoon represent?



- (a) Concentration of powers which are controlling the democratic regimes of their respective country.
- (b) The main leaders of two countries are going somewhere.
- (c) More powers were given to the democracy.
- (d) Putin is advising Bush to control the horse tightly.

9. Identify the Country-

- Emerged as an independent country in 1948.
 - Neighbouring country of India.
 - 74% of population speaks Sinhala while 18% of population are Tamil speakers.
 - In 1956, an Act was passed to recognize Sinhala as the only official language of this country. Select the appropriate option from the following.
- (a) Germany

- (b) Belgium
- (c) Srilanka
- (d) India

10. Which of the following are perfectly matched :

	List I	List II
(a)	Communalist	A person who says that religion is the principal basis of community.
(b)	Feminist	A person who does not discriminate others on the basis of religious beliefs.
(c)	Secularist	A person who thinks that caste is the principal basis of community.
(d)	Casteist	A person who believes in equal rights and opportunities for women and men.

11. Consider the following statements about the ethnic composition of Sri Lanka:

- A. Major social groups are the Sinhala- speaking (74%) and Tamil-speaking (18%)?
- B. Among the Tamils, there are two sub-groups, Sri Lankan Tamils and Indian Tamils.
- C. There are about 7% Christians, who are both Tamil and Sinhala.
- D. Most of the Sinhala-speaking are Hindus or Muslims and most of the Tamil speaking are Buddhists.

Which of the above statements are correct?

- (a) A, B, C
- (b) A, B, D
- (c) B, C, D
- (d) A, B, C, D

12. **Assertion :** The new reading culture was accompanied by a new technology.

Reason : From hand printing there was a gradual shift to mechanical printing.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

13. **Assertion :** The Indian Union is not based on the principles of federalism.

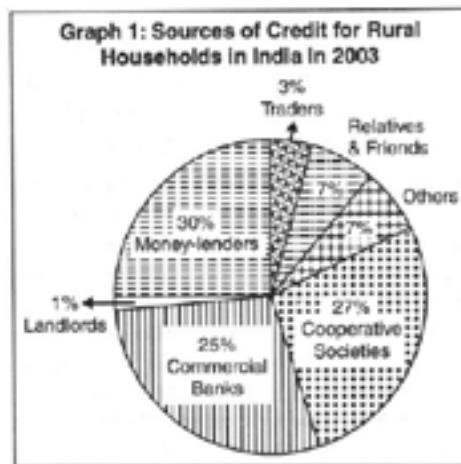
Reason : The Constitution of India declared India as a Union of States.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) A is false but R is true.

14. What are the kinds of routes through which federations have been formed?

- (a) One route involves independent states coming together on their own to form a bigger unit.
- (b) The second route is where a large country decides to divide its powers between the states and

- the national government.
- (c) Both a and b
 (d) None of these
15. Which among the following is a developmental goal for the landless rural labourers?
- (a) To get electricity and water
 (b) To educate their children
 (c) More days of work and better wages
 (d) To shift to the cities
16. Calculate the average income of all members according to the stats in table:
- | | Member 1 | Member 2 | Member 3 | Member 4 |
|--------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Income | 7000 | 8000 | 10000 | 15000 |
- What is the average income of all members according to the stats in table :
- (a) Rs 7,000.
 (b) Rs 10,000.
 (c) Rs 15,000.
 (d) Rs 12,000.
17. Read the information given below and select the correct option :
 Assume there are four families in a country. The average per capita income of these families is `5000. If the income of three families is `4000, `7000 and `3000 respectively, what is the income of the fourth family?
- (a) `7500
 (b) `3000
 (c) `2000
 (d) `6000
18. Study the given pie-chart carefully and answer the questions that follow:



- Which is the main source of credit for rural household in India?
- (a) Commercial Banks
 - (b) Landlords
 - (c) Relatives and Friends
 - (d) Money-lenders
19. Consider the following statements regarding collateral and identify the incorrect one from the following:
- (a) Collateral is what pushes the borrower into a painful situation
 - (b) Collateral is the amount that RBI gets from other banks
 - (c) Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns and uses as a guarantee to a lender
 - (d) Collateral is deposit facility like cheque
20. The total production of a year in the three sectors is calculated from _____.
(a) the value of goods calculated separately at all stages of production in that sector
(b) the value of final goods produced in that sector
(c) the value of final goods and services produced in all the sector
(d) the value of final goods and services produced in the three sectors

SECTION-B

Very Short Answer Question (Q 21 to 24)

2X4=8

21. How had novels been easily available to the masses in Europe during nineteenth century? Explain with examples.
- oo**
- Interpret any one fear in the minds of religious authorities and monarchs about the printed texts during 16th century in Europe.
22. Natural gas is considered an environmental friendly fuel. Suggest and explain an three ways to make it popular.
23. What factors sustain democracy in India ?
24. ‘The issue of sustainability is important for development.’ Examine the statement.

SECTION-C

Short Answer Based Question (Q 25 to 29)

3X5=15

25. Describe the role of different religious groups in the development of anti-colonial feelings in Vietnam.

26. How had Indian trade been beneficial for the British during seventeenth century? Explain.

oo

Why did the export of Indian textile decline at the beginning of the nineteenth century? Explain any three reasons.

27. Describe any five features of primitive subsistence farming.

28. Explain any three functions of opposition political parties.

29. How has globalization affected the life of Indians? Explain with examples.

SECTION-D

Long Answer Based Question (Q 30 to 33)

5X4=20

30. Highlight the reasons for the growth of nationalist tensions in the Balkan region before the First World War.

oo

The Civil Disobedience Movement saw the participation of different social classes and groups. Give reasons for the participation of the following:

- (1) rich peasants
- (2) poor peasants
- (3) business classes
- (4) industrial working classes
- (5) women.

31. What has been the contribution of the Indian Wildlife Protection Act in protecting habitats in India ? Explain.

oo

Explain any three measures taken by the Indian Government to protect wild life.

oo

Highlight any three differences between endangered species and extinct species.

32. Describe the rationale behind the implementation of Decentralisation in India.

oo

Describe any three steps taken by the Indian Government towards decentralisation of power in 1992.

33. ‘Tertiary sector is playing a significant role in the development of Indian Economy’. Justify the statement.

oo

Why is the tertiary sector becoming more important in India ? Explain.

oo

‘Public sector contributes to the economic development of India.’ Justify the statement.

SECTION-E

Case Based Question (Q 34 to 36)

4X3=12

34. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

In the first century B.C., Sringaverapura near Allahabad had sophisticated water harvesting system channelling the flood water of the river Ganga. During the time of Chandragupta Maurya, dams, lakes and irrigation systems were extensively built. Evidences of sophisticated irrigation works have also been found in Kalinga (Odisha), Nagarjunakonda (Andhra Pradesh), Bennur (Karnataka), Kolhapur (Maharashtra), etc. In the 11th Century, Bhopal Lake, one of the largest artificial lakes of its time was built. In the 14th Century, the tank in Hauz Khas, Delhi was constructed by Iltutmish for supplying water to Siri Fort area.

Sardar Sarovar Dam has been built over the Narmada River in Gujarat. This is one of the largest water resource projects of India covering four states—Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat and Rajasthan. The Sardar Sarovar project would meet the requirement of water in drought-prone and desert areas of Gujarat (9,490 villages and 173 towns) and Rajasthan (124 villages).

Multi-purpose projects and large dams have also been the cause of many new environmental movements like the ‘Narmada Bachao Andolan’ and the ‘Tehri Dam Andolan’ etc. Resistance to these projects has primarily been due to the large-scale displacement of local communities. Local people often had to give up their land, livelihood and their meagre access and control over resources for the greater good of the nation.

Question:

1. During earlier time how did the irrigation done?
2. Why did J L Nehru proclaim the dams as the temples of modern India?
3. How do multi-purpose projects face resistance?

35. Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

The Census of India records the religion of each and every Indian after every ten years. The person who fills the Census form visits every household and records the religion of each member of that household exactly the way each person describes it. If someone says she has ‘no religion’ or that he is an ‘atheist’, this is exactly how it is recorded. Thus we have reliable information on the proportion

of different religious communities in the country and how it has changed over the years. The pie chart below presents the population proportion of six major religious communities in the country. Since Independence, the total population of each community has increased substantially but their proportion in the country's population has not changed much. In percentage terms, the population of the Hindus, Jains and Christians has declined marginally since 1961. The proportion of Muslim, Sikh and Buddhist population has increased slightly. There is a common but mistaken impression that the proportion of the Muslims in the country's population is going to overtake other religious communities. Expert estimates done for the Prime Minister's High Level Committee (popularly known as Sachar Committee) show that the proportion of the Muslims is expected to go up a little, by about 3 to 4 per cent, in the next 50 years. It proves that in overall terms, the population balance of different religious communities is not likely to change in a big way.

Question:

1. What do you mean by atheist?
 2. How much growth rate of Muslim population fall in compare to last decadal census?
 3. What did happen in population proportion of six major religious communities in India since Independence?
36. Study the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:

Source A – Formal Sector Credit in India

The various types of loans can be conveniently grouped as formal sector loans and informal sector loans. Among the former are loans from banks and cooperatives. The informal lenders include moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends, etc.

Source B – Formal and Informal Credit: Who gets what?

The people are divided into four groups, from poor to rich. 85 per cent of the loans taken by poor households in the urban areas are from informal sources. Compare this with the rich urban households. Only 10 per cent of their loans are from informal sources, while 90 per cent are from formal sources. A similar pattern is also found in rural areas. The rich households are availing cheap credit from formal lenders whereas the poor households have to pay a heavy price for borrowing! What does all this suggest? First, the formal sector still meets only about half of the total credit needs of the rural people. The remaining credit needs are met from informal sources.

Source C – Formal and Informal Credit: Who gets what?

Most loans from informal lenders carry a very high interest rate and do little to increase the income of the borrowers. Thus, it is necessary that banks and cooperatives increase their lending particularly in the rural areas, so that the dependence on informal sources of credit reduces.

Question:

1. Give any one example of formal sector source and of informal sector source of credit in India.
2. Which sector is dominant source of rural credit in India?
3. Why is it necessary to reduce dependence on informal sources of credit?

SECTION-F

Map Skill Based Question (Q 37a and 37b)

2+3=5

37. (1) Two places (a) and (b) are marked on the given political outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.
- (a) The place where Indian National Congress Session (Dec. 1920) was held.
 - (b) Movement of Indigo Planters.
- (2) On the same outline map of India, locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbols.
- (a) Kolkata - An International airport
 - (b) Bokaro - An iron and steel plant
 - (c) Thiruvananthapuram - A software technology park
 - (d) Ramagundam - A thermal power plant



--X--

Sample Paper 3
Social Science (Code 087)
Class X Session 2022-23

Time: 3 Hours

Max. Marks: 80

General Instructions:

- i. Question paper comprises five Sections – A, B, C, D and E. There are 37 questions in the question paper. All questions are compulsory.
- ii. Section A – From question 1 to 20 are MCQs of 1 mark each.
- iii. Section B – Question no. 21 to 24 are Very Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 2 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 40 words.
- iv. Section C contains Q.25to Q.29 are Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 60 words
- v. Section D – Question no. 30 to 33 are long answer type questions, carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 120 words.
- vi. Section-E - Questions no from 34 to 36 are case based questions with three sub questions and are of 4 marks each.
- vii. Section F – Question no. 37 is map based, carrying 5 marks with two parts, 37a from History (2 marks) and 37b from Geography (3 marks).
- viii. There is no overall choice in the question paper. However, an internal choice has been provided in few questions. Only one of the choices in such questions have to be attempted.
- ix. In addition to this, separate instructions are given with each section and question, wherever necessary.

SECTION-A

Multiple Choice Questions (Q 1 to 20)

2X4=8

1. Which one of the following option best signifies this picture?

- (a) Indian workers march in south Africa 1913.
- (b) The Boycott of foreign cloths 1922.
- (c) Chauri Chaura Movement.
- (d) Dandi March lead by Mahatma Gandhi.



2. How much span of time can be referred for globalisation?

- (a) Since the last 25 years
- (b) Since the last 50 years
- (c) Since the last 75 years
- (d) Since the last 100 years

3. Which of the following are perfectly matched :

	List I	List II
(a)	Gomasthas	Official who acted as company's agent
(b)	Spinning Jenny	Richard Arkwright
(c)	Steam engine	James Hargreaves
(d)	Cotton mill	James Watt

4. Match the following items given in column I with those in column II.

	Column I		Column II
A.	Rashsundari Debi	1.	Chhote Aur Bade Ka Sawal
B.	Sudarshan Chakra	2.	Kesari
C.	Kashibaba	3.	Amar Jiban
D.	Bal Gangadhar Tilak	4.	Sacchi Kavita

Select the correct option :

- (a) A " 1, B " 2, C " 3, D " 4
- (b) A " 4, B " 1, C " 2, D " 3
- (c) A " 2, B " 3, C " 4, D " 1
- (d) A " 3, B " 4, C " 1, D " 2

5. Arrange the following options in the correct sequence-

1. Press came to be made out of metal.
2. Offset press was developed.
3. Gutenberg perfected the system by olive press.
4. China first introduced hand-printing technology into Japan.

Option :

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 4, 3, 1, 2
- (c) 3, 4, 1, 2
- (d) 2, 3, 1, 4

6. Study the given pie-chart and answer the following questions :

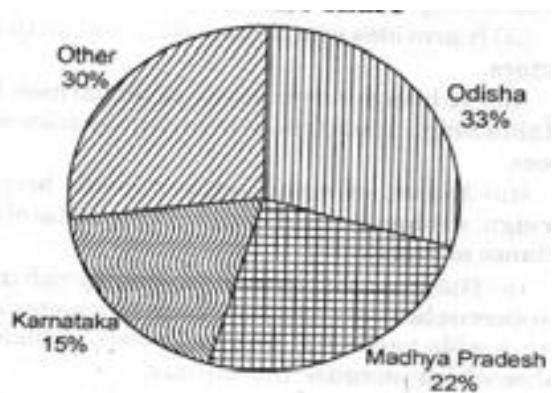


Figure : Production of Manganese showing state-wise share

Which state is the largest producer of manganese in India ?

- (a) Odisha.
- (b) Karnataka
- (c) Madhyapradesh
- (d) Andrapradesh

7. Complete the table with correct information-

National Waterways	Between	Length (in km)
The Ganga river	?	1620

Choose correct option :

- (a) Kanpur - Patna,
- (b) Allahabad - Haldia,
- (c) Patna - Haldia,
- (d) Allahabad - Haldwani

8. Prudential reasons of power sharing stress on the facts that:

- A. It ensures the stability of political order.
- B. It reduces the possibility of conflict between social groups.
- C. It gives a fair share to minority.
- D. It is the very spirit of democracy.

Which of the above statements are correct?

- (a) A, B
- (b) A, C and D
- (c) All are correct
- (d) A, B and C

9. The picture portrays about the :



- (a) Uneven Dispersal of power between the Centre and State.
- (b) Lack of harmonization between Centre and State.
- (c) The states plead for more power.
- (d) Demand for power by the states can never be met.

10. Identify the person who said that:

- Religion can never be separated from Politics.
- Politics can be guided by ethics drawn from religion
- Those who believe religion and politics aren't connected don't understand either.
- Nations are born out of travail and suffering

Select the appropriate option from the following.

- (a) Indira Gandhi
- (b) Mahatma Gandhi
- (c) Jawahar Lal Nehru
- (d) Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel

11. Assertion : The economic strength of the country is measured by the development of manufacturing industries.

Reason : India's prosperity lies in diversifying its manufacturing industries.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

12. Assertion : Belgium and Spain has 'holding together' federation.

Reason : A big country divides power between constituent states and national government.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

- 13.** What are the kinds of routes through which federations have been formed?
- (a) One route involves independent states coming together on their own to form a bigger unit.
 - (b) The second route is where a large country decides to divide its powers between the states and the national government.
 - (c) Both a and b
 - (d) None of these
- 14.** Rule of law is the feature of which form of government?
- (a) Dictatorship
 - (b) Democracy
 - (c) Monarchy
 - (d) All of these
- 15.** What would be the most appropriate aspiration of a prosperous farmer from Punjab?
- (a) local school is able to provide quality education for their children
 - (b) there is no social discrimination
 - (c) able to pursue her job in abroad.
 - (d) proper supply for irrigation
- 16.** Identify the feature of the unorganised sector.
- (a) Rules and regulations are followed.
 - (b) Workers enjoy security of employment.
 - (c) Employment is not secure.
 - (d) It follows some formal processes and procedures.
- 17.** Read the information given below and select the correct option:
- A shoe manufacturer, M. Salim has to make a payment to the leather supplier, Prem and writes a cheque for a specific amount. This means that the shoe manufacturer instructs his bank to pay this amount to the leather supplier. The leather supplier takes this cheque, and deposits it in his own account in the bank. The money is transferred from one bank account to another bank account in a couple of days. The transaction is complete without any payment of cash.
- How are cheques beneficial against demand deposits?
- (a) DDs share the essential features of money.
 - (b) Cheques are linked to the working of modern banking system.
 - (c) There is direct settlement of payments without the use of cash.
 - (d) Cheques are the best means of payment against deposits.

- 18.** The following table shows source of rural households in India in the year 2003.

Source	Share
Money lender	30%
Co-operative societies	27%
Commercial Bank	25%
Other (Merchant, Relative etc.)	18%

Analyzing the table above, what is the share of formal sector in total credit?

- (a) 25%
 - (b) 27%
 - (c) 52%
 - (d) 18%
- 19.** Consider the following statements regarding unorganized sector and identify the incorrect one from the following.
- (a) Small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government.
 - (b) There are rules and regulations but these are not followed.
 - (c) Jobs here are high-paid and often not regular.
 - (d) No provision for overtime, paid leave, holidays, leaves due to sickness
- 20.** From the given option select the functioning activity of the Tertiary sector.
- (a) goods that are produced would need to be transported by trucks or trains and then sold in wholesale and retail shops
 - (b) this sector gradually became associated with the different kinds of industries
 - (c) activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing
 - (d) produce a good by exploiting natural resources

SECTION-B

Very Short Answer Question (Q 21 to 24)

2X4=8

- 21.** Why did the elite of Britain prefer hand made goods in the mid-nineteenth century? Explain.

00

How has the ever increasing number of industries in India made worse position by exerting pressure on existing fresh water resources? Explain.

22. Describe any three main features of 'Rabi crop season.'
23. Explain the three components of political party.
24. What do you understand by globalisation ? Explain in your own words.

SECTION-C

Short Answer Based Question (Q 25 to 29)

3X5=15

25. Describe the implications of First World War on the economic and political situation of India.
26. Describe the economic conditions of Britain after the 'First World War'.
27. What is the meaning of rain-water harvesting ? State any four points that should be kept in mind for efficient management of water.

00

Scarcity of which resource is shown in the picture and how is it shown ? Suggest methods to reduce the scarcity of this resource.



28. How did people belonging to different communities, regions or language groups develop a sense of collective belonging in the nineteenth century India? Explain.
29. Imagine yourself to be XYZ, a member of a women Self- Help Group. Analyse the ways through which your group provides loan to the members.

SECTION-D

Long Answer Based Question (Q 30 to 33)

5X4=20

- 30.** Why was the period of 1848 considered as phase of the revolution of the Liberals in Europe ?

oo

“The first clear expression of nationalism came with the ‘French Revolution’ in 1789.” Examine the statement.

- 31.** What is Human Development ? Explain its indicators.

oo

Imagine yourself as one of the heads of the states attending the International Earth Summit at Rio-de Janeiro, Brazil and suggest some methods for environment protection.

- 32.** ‘Power sharing is the essence of a democratic government.’ Examine the statement.

oo

What do you mean by Majoritarianism ? How did it cause ‘Civil War’ in Sri Lanka ?

- 33.** Is it correct to say that environmental degradation is not just a national issue ? Illustrate with examples.

oo

“Advancement of international trade of a country is an index of economic development”. Justify the statement.

SECTION-E

Case Based Question (Q 34 to 36)

4X3=12

- 34.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

Reserved and protected forests are also referred to as permanent forest estates maintained for the purpose of producing timber and other forest produce, and for protective reasons. Madhya Pradesh has the largest area under permanent forests, constituting 75 percent of its total forest area. Jammu and Kashmir, Andhra Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, West Bengal, and Maharashtra have large percentages of reserved forests of its total forest area whereas Bihar, Haryana, Punjab, Himachal Pradesh, Odisha and Rajasthan have a bulk of it under protected forests.

Some estimates suggest that at least 10 percent of India’s recorded wild flora and 20 percent of its mammals are on the threatened list. Many of these would now be categorised as ‘critical’, that is on the verge of extinction like the cheetah, pink-headed duck, mountain quail, forest spotted owl, and plants like madhuca insignis (a wild variety of mahua) and hubbardia heptaneuron, (a species of grass). In fact, no one can say how many species may have already been lost.

*The world’s fastest land mammal, the cheetah (*Acinonyx jubatus*), is a unique and specialised member of the cat family and can move at the speed of 112 km./hr. The cheetah is often mistaken for a leopard. Its distinguishing marks are the long teardrop shaped lines on each side of the nose from the corner*

of its eyes to its mouth. Prior to the 20th century, cheetahs were widely distributed throughout Africa and Asia. Today, the Asian cheetah is nearly extinct due to a decline of available habitat and prey. The species was declared extinct in India long back in 1952.

Questions:

1. Which Indian state cover 75% total forest area in India?
2. How many percent of mammals are on the threatened list in India?
3. How can we distinguish Cheetah from leopard?

35. Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

A second test for Indian federation is the language policy. Our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language. Hindi was identified as the official language. But Hindi is the mother tongue of only about 40 per cent of Indians. Therefore, there were many safeguards to protect other languages. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution. A candidate in an examination conducted for the Central Government positions may opt to take the examination in any of these languages.

States too have their own official languages. Much of the government work takes place in the official language of the concerned State.

Unlike Sri Lanka, the leaders of our country adopted a very cautious attitude in spreading the use of Hindi. According to the constitution, the use of English for official purposes was to stop in 1965. However, many non-Hindi speaking states demanded that the use of English continue. In Tamil Nadu, this movement took a violent form. The central Government responded by agreeing to continue the use of English along with Hindi for official purposes. Many critics think that this solution favoured the English-speaking elite. Promotion of Hindi continues to be the official policy of the Government of India. Promotion does not mean that the Central Government can impose Hindi on States where people speak a different language. The flexibility shown by Indian political leaders helped our country avoid the kind of situation that Sri Lanka finds itself in.

Questions:

1. How many official languages recognised as scheduled Languages by the constitution?
2. How does Constitution of India safeguard the other languages?
3. How does India avoid the kind of situation that Sri Lanka finds itself in?

36. Study the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

Over a long time (more than hundred years), and especially because new methods of manufacturing were introduced, factories came up and started expanding. Those people who had earlier worked on farms, now began to work in factories in large numbers. People began to use many more goods that were produced in factories at cheap rates. Secondary sector gradually became the most important in total production and employment. Hence, over time, a shift had taken place. This means that the importance of the sectors had changed.

The unorganised sector is characterised by small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government. There are rules and regulations, but these are not followed. Jobs here are low-paid and often not regular. There is no provision for overtime, paid leave, holidays, leave due to sickness etc. Employment is not secure. People can be asked to leave without any reason. When there is less work, such as during some seasons, some people may be asked to leave. A lot also depends on the whims of the employer. This sector includes a large number of people who are employed on their own

doing small jobs such as selling on the street or doing repair work. Similarly, farmers work on their own and hire labourers as and when they require.

More than half of the workers in the country are working in the primary sector, mainly in agriculture, producing only a quarter of the GDP. In contrast to this, the secondary and tertiary sectors produce three fourth of the products whereas they employ less than half of the people. Does this mean that the workers in agriculture are not producing as much as they could? What it means is that there are more people in agriculture than is necessary. So, even if you move a few people out, production will not be affected. In other words, workers in agricultural sector are underemployed.

Questions:

1. This means that the importance of the sectors had changed. Which sector has lost its prior importance?
2. Why do most people engage in unorganized sector in spite of its bad working conditions?
3. “What it means is that there are more people in agriculture than is necessary. So, even if you move a few people out, production will not be affected”. What type of employment or unemployment situation is referred by this statement?

SECTION-F

Map Skill Based Question (Q 37a and 37b)

2+3=5

37. (1) Two places (a) and (b) are marked on the given political outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.
- (a) A place where cotton mill workers organised Satyagraha.
 - (b) An incident took place here due to which the Non-cooperation movement was called off.
- (2) On the same outline map of India, locate and label any three of the following:
- (a) Coimbatore - Cotton textile centre in Tamil Nadu
 - (b) Bhilai - Iron and steel plant in Chhattisgarh
 - (c) Marmagao - A major port in Goa
 - (d) Naura - A thermal power plant



Sample Paper 4
Social Science (Code 087)
Class X Session 2022-23

Time: 3 Hours

Max. Marks: 80

General Instructions:

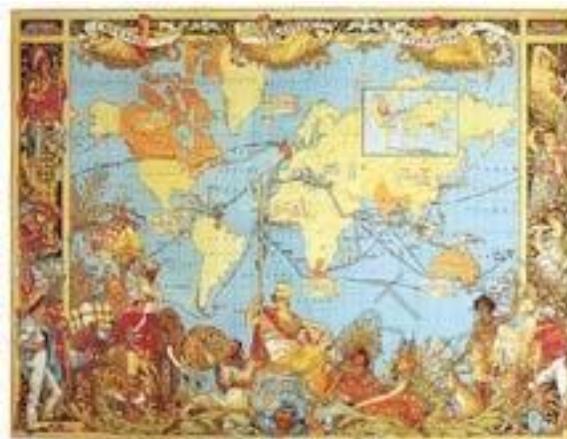
- i. Question paper comprises five Sections – A, B, C, D and E. There are 37 questions in the question paper. All questions are compulsory.
- ii. Section A – From question 1 to 20 are MCQs of 1 mark each.
- iii. Section B – Question no. 21 to 24 are Very Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 2 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 40 words.
- iv. Section C contains Q.25 to Q.29 are Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 60 words
- v. Section D – Question no. 30 to 33 are long answer type questions, carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 120 words.
- vi. Section-E - Questions no from 34 to 36 are case based questions with three sub questions and are of 4 marks each.
- vii. Section F – Question no. 37 is map based, carrying 5 marks with two parts, 37a from History (2 marks) and 37b from Geography (3 marks).
- viii. There is no overall choice in the question paper. However, an internal choice has been provided in few questions. Only one of the choices in such questions have to be attempted.
- ix. In addition to this, separate instructions are given with each section and question, wherever necessary.

SECTION-A

Multiple Choice Questions (Q 1 to 20)

2X4=8

1. Which of the following aspect best signifies this image?



- (a) A map explaining the sea routes used in 18th century by Europeans
- (b) A map celebrating the British Empire.
- (c) A map showcasing the importance of British Empire.
- (d) A map expressing the British ambitions of contouring the world.

2. Identify the appropriate reason for the formation of the Swaraj Party from the options given below:

- (a) Swarai Party wanted members of Congress to return to Council Politics.
- (b) It wanted members of Congress to ask for Poorna Swaraj for Indians.
- (c) It wanted members of Congress to ask Dominion State for India.
- (d) It wanted members of Congress to oppose Simon Commission.

3. Which of the following are perfectly matched :

	List 1	List II
(a)	Sepoy	A person employed by the company to recruit workers
(b)	Gomastha	An official appointed by the company to work as its agent to supervise wearers and collect supplies.
(c)	Guild	Indian soldier of the British army.
(d)	Jobber	Association of craftsmen or merchants for supervision and control of quality of crafts.

4. Arrange the following in the correct sequence of old tradition of handwritten manuscripts:

1. Vernacular languages

2. Persian

3. Arabic

4. Sanskrit

Option :

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (c) 3, 4, 1, 2
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

5. Fill the table with correct information-

Name of soil	Crop can be sown	Peculiar quality
Black soil	A - ?	High water holding capacity
B - ?	Sugarcane, Paddy, wheat	Very fertile, contain potash, phosphoric acid and lime

Choose correct option :

- (a) A - Tea, Coffee. B - Alluvial soil
- (b) A - Cotton, B - Black soil
- (c) A - Tea, Coffee, B - Red soil
- (d) A - Cotton. B - Alluvial soil

6. Match the following and choose correct option.

List-I (Crops)		List-II (Geographical conditions)	
A.	Barley	1.	Hot and dry climate with poor soil
B.	Rice	2.	Cool climate with poorer soil
C.	Millets	3.	Warm and moist climate with high altitude
D.	Tea	4.	Hot and moist climate with rich soil

Select the correct option :

- (a) A-2, B-4, C-1, D-3
- (b) A-3, B-4, C-1, D-2
- (c) A-2, B-1, C-4, D-3
- (d) A-3, B-2, C-4, D-1

7. Prudential reasons of power sharing stress on the facts that:

- A. It ensures the stability of political order.
- B. It reduces the possibility of conflict between social groups.
- C. It gives a fair share to minority.
- D. It is the very spirit of democracy.

Which of the above statements are correct?

- (a) A, B
- (b) A, C and D
- (c) All are correct
- (d) A, B and C

8. Who among the following is the founder of the Bahujan Samaj Party ?

- (a) Kanshi Ram
- (b) Sahu Maharaj
- (c) B.R. Ambedker
- (d) Jyotiba Phule

9. Identify the kind of legislative power distribution list by the Constitution of India :

- It includes the subject of national interest.
- Provides uniformity throughout the country.
- The Union govt alone has the power to make laws related to the subjects of this list.
- Banking, Defence and Communication are some of the subjects under this list.

Select the appropriate option from the following.

- (a) State List
- (b) Union List
- (c) Residuary List
- (d) All of these

10. Assertion : Neglect of our environment has led to the destruction and extinction of many species of animals and plant life.
Reason : Decreasing Forest cover area is a major reason of destruction of species.
- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
 - (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
 - (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
 - (d) Both assertion and reason are false.
11. Assertion : India is a federation.
Reason : Power resides with the central authority.
- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true but R is false.
 - (d) Both A and R are false.
12. What is true regarding sources of revenue in a federal system?
- (a) States have no financial powers or independent sources of revenue.
 - (b) States are dependent on revenue or funds on the central government.
 - (c) Sources of revenue for each level of government are clearly specified to ensure its financial autonomy.
 - (d) States have no financial autonomy.
13. What is true regarding sources of revenue in a federal system?
- (a) States have no financial powers or independent sources of revenue.
 - (b) States are dependent on revenue or funds on the central government.
 - (c) Sources of revenue for each level of government are clearly specified to ensure its financial autonomy.
 - (d) States have no financial autonomy.
14. Following caricature on democracy illustrates that:



- (a) Democracy has to accommodate all the diverse demand from different section of society.
- (b) Various pressure and Interest groups have vested interests in all democracies.
- (c) Democracy can't be run or successful without diverse demand and pressure groups.
- (d) Democracy is meant to fulfil all the demands of people for the people.

19. The following table shows the sources of credit for rural households in India in 2010:

	Sources	Share
1.	Moneylenders	30%
2.	Commercial banks	27%
3.	Co-operative societies and Commercial banks	25%
4.	Others (Traders, relatives, etc.)	18%

On the basis of the above table answer the following question:

- (a) The share of formal sector is 27%
 (b) The share of formal sector is 48%
 (c) The share of formal sector is 52%
 (d) The share of formal sector is 38%
20. Read the information given below and select the correct option:

The developed countries have gone through historic changes in the economic sector as the economic activities had gradually shifted from Primary to Secondary to Tertiary sector. Now service sector has become the most important sector. The shifting of economic activities does not mean complete elimination of previous sectors, but the importance and dominance of next sector is increased.

The shifting of economic activities mean that:

- (a) previous sectors have been completely eliminated.
 (b) importance of next sector is increased.
 (c) production in three sectors has increased substantially.
 (d) primary sector has increased quantitatively.

SECTION-B

Very Short Answer Question (Q 21 to 24)

2X4=8

21. "Industrialization had changed the form of urbanization in the modern period." Analyze the statement with special reference of London.

00

Describe three inventions along with the names of inventors which helped in the growth of textile industry.

22. "Multi-purpose projects and large dams have come under great scrutiny." Identify the problems caused by the setting up of these projects and dams.
23. Explain the three factors that are crucial in deciding the outcome of politics of social divisions.
24. Suggest any three ways to improve public facilities in India.

SECTION-C

Short Answer Based Question (Q 25 to 29)

3X5=15

25. Discuss in brief the development of printing culture in China.
26. Why is it necessary to conserve mineral resources? Explain any four ways to conserve mineral resources.
oo
How could iron make a revolutionary change in the life of man ? Explain it with three examples.
27. Explain two achievements and two difficulties of local self governments in India.
28. Why is a democratic government called a legitimate government ?
29. Show how tertiary sector has emerged as the largest producing sector in India.

SECTION-D

Long Answer Based Question (Q 30 to 33)

5X4=20

30. “Even before factories began to dot the landscape in England and Europe, there was large-scale industrial production for an international market in the country side.” Elucidate.
oo
“The function and the shape of the family were completely transformed by life in the industrial city.” Clarify the statement with regard to urbanization that happened in England in the 18th century.
31. “Sexual division of labour is not based on biology but on social expectations and stereotypes.” Support the statement.
oo
Describe the significance of Textile Industry in India with specific reference to Cotton industry.
32. Describe the necessity of political parties in democratic countries.
oo
“All over the world, people express their dissatisfaction with the failure of political parties to perform their functions well.” Analyse the statement with arguments.
33. Explain any five facilities available in the special economic zones developed by the Central and State governments to attract foreign investment.
oo
How have our markets been transformed in recent years? Explain with examples.

SECTION-E

Case Based Question (Q 34 to 36)

4X3=12

34. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

Mahatma Gandhi returned to India in January 1915. As you know, he had come from South Africa where he had successfully fought the racist-regime with a novel method of mass agitation, which he called satyagraha. It suggested that if the cause was true, if the struggle was against injustice, then physical force was not necessary to fight the oppressor. Without seeking vengeance or being aggressive, a satyagrahi could win the battle through non-violence.

On 13 April a large crowd gathered in the enclosed ground of Jallianwala Bagh. Some came to protest against the government's new repressive measures. Other had come to attend the annual Baisakhi fair. Being from outside the city, many villagers were unaware of the martial law that had been imposed. Dyer entered the area, blocked the exit points, and opened fire on the crowd killing hundreds.

The movement started with middle-class participation in the cities. Thousands of students left government-controlled schools and colleges, headmasters and teachers resigned and lawyers gave up their legal practices. The council elections were boycotted in most provinces except Madras.

Questions :

1. What do you mean by the idea of Satyagraha?
2. By which episode most of the people gathered in the Jallianwala Bagh?
3. Which movement was talking about in the paragraph? What does it mean to the people?

35. Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

The exchange of goods among people, states and countries is referred to as trade. The market is the place where such exchanges take place. Trade between two countries is called international trade. It may take place through sea, air or land routes. While local trade is carried in cities, towns and villages, state level trade is carried between two or more states. Advancement of international trade of a country is an index to its economic prosperity. It is, therefore, considered the economic barometer for a country.

As the resources are space bound, no country can survive without international trade. Export and import are the components of trade. The balance of trade of a country is the difference between its export and import. When the value of export exceeds the value of imports, it is called a favourable balance of trade. On the contrary, if the value of imports exceeds the value of exports, it is termed as unfavourable balance of trade.

India has trade relations with all the major trading blocks and all geographical regions of the world. The commodities exported from India to other countries include gems and jewellery, chemicals and related products, agriculture and allied products, etc.

The commodities imported to India include petroleum crude and products, gems and jewellery, chemicals and related products, base metals, electronic items, machinery, agriculture and allied products. India has emerged as a software giant at the international level and it is earning large foreign exchange through the export of information technology.

Questions :

1. What do you mean by international trade?
2. What is meant by favourable and unfavourable balance of trade?
3. What are the commodities export and imported by India in international trade?

36. Study the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:

A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or service that he or she might want. Thus, everyone prefers to receive payments in money and then exchange the money for things that they want. Take the case of a shoe manufacturer. He wants to sell shoes in the market and buy wheat. The shoe manufacturer will first exchange shoes that he has produced for money, and then exchange the money for wheat. Imagine how much more difficult it would be if the shoe manufacturer had to directly exchange shoes for wheat without the use of money. He would have to look for a wheat growing farmer who not only wants to sell wheat but also wants to buy the shoes in exchange. That is, both parties have to agree to sell and buy each other's commodities. This is known as double coincidence of wants. What a person desires to sell is exactly what the other wishes to buy. In a barter system where goods are directly exchanged without the use of money, double coincidence of wants is an essential feature.

Modern forms of money include currency – paper notes and coins. Unlike the things that were used as money earlier, modern currency is not made of precious metal such as gold, silver and copper. And unlike grain and cattle, they are neither of everyday use. The modern currency is without any use of its own. Then, why is it accepted as a medium of exchange? It is accepted as a medium of exchange because the currency is authorised by the government of the country.

The other form in which people hold money is as deposits with banks. At a point of time, people need only some currency for their day-to-day needs. For instance, workers who receive their salaries at the end of each month have extra cash at the beginning of the month. What do people do with this extra cash? They deposit it with the banks by opening a bank account in their name. Banks accept the deposits and also pay an interest rate on the deposits. In this way people's money is safe with the banks and it earns an interest. People also have the provision to withdraw the money as and when they require. Since the deposits in the bank accounts can be withdrawn on demand, these deposits are called demand deposits. Questions :

1. In which system, double coincidence of wants is an essential feature?
2. Why are paper notes and coins accepted as a medium of exchange?
3. Why do people prefer demand deposits?

SECTION-F

Map Skill Based Question (Q 37a and 37b)

2+3=5

37. (a) Two places (A) and (B) have been marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct Name on the line drawn near them.
- (A) A place marked by A where Indian congress session was held in December 1920.
- (B) The place where 22 policemen were burnt by violent mob and due to this Gandi ji withdrew the now cooperation movement.
- (b) On the same outline map of India locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbol
- (i) Singrauli-Thermal power plant
 - (ii) Kakrapara-Atomic power plant
 - (iii) Kanpur-Cotton textile Industry center
 - (iv) Bokaro-Iron and steel plant



Sample Paper 5

Social Science (Code 087)

Class X Session 2022-23

Time: 3 Hours**Max. Marks: 80****General Instructions:**

- i. Question paper comprises five Sections – A, B, C, D and E. There are 37 questions in the question paper. All questions are compulsory.
- ii. Section A – From question 1 to 20 are MCQs of 1 mark each.
- iii. Section B – Question no. 21 to 24 are Very Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 2 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 40 words.
- iv. Section C contains Q.25to Q.29 are Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 60 words
- v. Section D – Question no. 30 to 33 are long answer type questions, carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 120 words.
- vi. Section-E - Questions no from 34 to 36 are case based questions with three sub questions and are of 4 marks each.
- vii. Section F – Question no. 37 is map based, carrying 5 marks with two parts, 37a from History (2 marks) and 37b from Geography (3 marks).
- viii. There is no overall choice in the question paper. However, an internal choice has been provided in few questions. Only one of the choices in such questions have to be attempted.
- ix. In addition to this, separate instructions are given with each section and question, wherever necessary.

SECTION-A

Multiple Choice Questions (Q 1 to 20)**2X4=8**

1. Choose the correct statement about the image given bellow.



- (a) This image was painted by artist Lorenz Clasen.
- (b) This image was painted by artist Julius Hübner
- (c) Germania guarding the Rhine was the title of this painting.
- (d) Philip Veit, was the artist who have made this painting.

- 2.** Identify the correct reason for how Industrialisation changed the form of urbanization in the modern period in England from the options given below:
- All the rural areas changed into urban areas
 - Population migrated from urban areas to rural areas
 - London and other cities with industries acted as a magnet as they provided work opportunities.
 - All of the above.
- 3.** Match the following items given in column I with those in column II.

	Column I		Column II
A.	Goods-Bought and Sold	1.	Spain
B.	Countries to the east of Mediterranean	2.	Hierarchy of society
C.	First European Country to conquer America	3.	Money as a medium
D.	Basis of Gender division	4.	Greece

Select the correct option :

- A " 1, B " 2, C " 3, D " 4
 - A " 4, B " 1, C " 2, D " 3
 - A " 2, B " 3, C " 4, D " 1
 - A " 3, B " 4, C " 1, D " 2
- 4.** Arrange the following countries on the basis of “Print technology” started in these countries-
- Japan
 - China
 - Korea
 - India
- Option :
- 2, 4, 3, 1
 - 3, 4, 2, 1
 - 3, 4, 1, 2
 - 2, 3, 1, 4
- 5.** Complete the following table with correct information-

Act	A-?
Year	B-?
Aim	To protect the remaining endangered species and their habitat.
Passed by	Indian Parliament

Choose correct option :

- A - Wildlife Protection Act, B - 1972
- A - Wildlife Security Act, B - 1952
- A - Wildlife Save Act, B - 1962
- A - Wildlife Security Act, B - 1982

6. Which of the following are perfectly matched :

	List I	List II
(a)	Barley	Cool climate with poorer soil
(b)	Rice	Hot and dry climate with poor soil
(c)	Millets	Warm and moist climate with high altitude
(d)	Tea	Hot and moist climate with rich soil

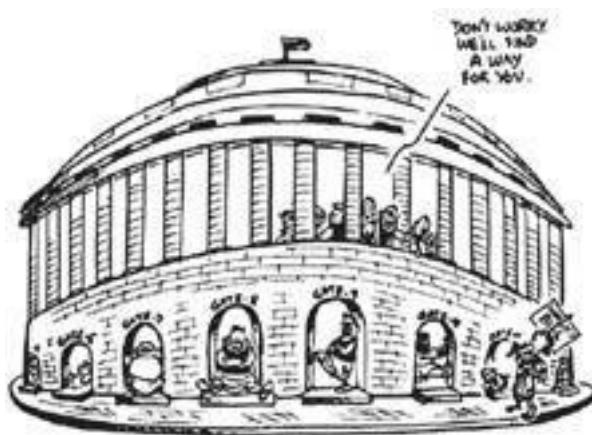
7. What is the guiding philosophy of the Bharatiya Janta Party ?

- (a) Bahujan Samaj
- (b) Revolutionary democracy
- (c) Integral humanism
- (d) Rast rawad (Nationalism)

8. Consider the following statements and select the correct code.

- (i) Power-sharing is good for democracy.
 - (ii) Power-sharing helps to reduce the possibility of conflicts among social groups.
- (a) Statement (i) is true and statement (ii) is false
 - (b) Statement (i) is false but statement (ii) is true
 - (c) Both statement are true
 - (d) Both statement are false

9. The following picture talks about the reality of Indian Political System intended for:



- (a) Political Biasness against women for more representation in Parliament.
- (b) Lesser participation of women in Parliament.
- (c) Lack of women movements for more participation in Elected bodies.
- (d) Reluctant Ness in women for their political right.

10. Identify the political party which have:

- Presence in Arunachal Pradesh, Manipur, West Bengal and Tripura.
- In General Election 2019 got 4.09% vote share.
- Was 4th largest party in Lok Sabha 2019.
- Recognised as a national party in 2016.

Select the appropriate option from the following.

- (a) All India Trinamool Congress.
- (b) Bhartiya Janta Party
- (c) Assam Gan Parishad
- (d) West Bengal Jan Party

11. **Assertion :** Water is a renewable resource.

Reason : Freshwater is mainly obtained from surface run off and ground water that is continually being renewed.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

12. **Assertion :** It is very simple to make the changes in the basic structure of the constitution.

Reason : Both the houses have power to amend the constitution independently.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

13. Which of the following is not a key features of federalism?

- (a) Different tiers of government have their own jurisdiction.
- (b) Changes in constitution require consent of both levels.
- (c) Courts have power to interpret constitution and powers of the different levels.
- (d) Sources of revenue for only central level are specified.

14. Which one of the following options describe ‘Collateral’?

- (a) Double coincidence of wants
- (b) Certain products for barter
- (c) Trade in barter
- (d) Asset as guarantee for loan

15. Where is groundwater overuse particularly found?

- (a) Punjab
- (b) Western U.P.
- (c) plateau areas of central and south India
- (d) All of these

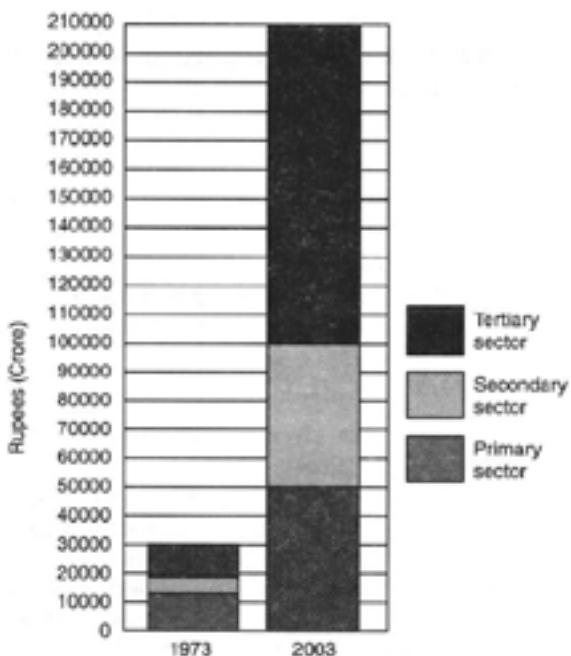
16. The following table gives the GDP in rupees (crores) by the three sectors

Year	Primary	Secondary	Tertiary
1950	80,000	19,000	39,000
2011	9,65,00	13,70,000	30,10,000

The share of primary sector in above GDP table for

- (a) 57.97 %
- (b) 59.97 %
- (c) 28.26 %
- (d) 13.17 %

17. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows:



Which was the largest producing sector in 1973?

- (a) Secondary sector
- (b) Tertiary sector
- (c) Agriculture or Primary sector
- (d) None of these

18. Which one of the following mediums of exchange is convenient ?

- (a) Money
- (b) Commodity
- (c) Gold
- (d) Silver

19. In India, the share of agriculture in GDP has declined at a very fast rate in the recent years. This is due to
- (a) lack of diversification of rural economy
 - (b) slow growth in the prices of agriculture commodities
 - (c) saturation of employment opportunities in the agriculture sector
 - (d) very slow growth rate of agriculture and a fast rate of growth of other sectors
20. Read the information given below and select the correct option:
A vessel dumped 500 tonnes of liquid toxic wastes into open-air dumps in a city and in the surrounding sea. This happened in a city called Abidjan in Ivory Coast, a country in Africa. The fumes from the highly toxic waste caused nausea, skin rashes, fainting, diarrhoea, etc. After a month seven persons were dead, twenty in hospital and twenty-six thousand treated for symptoms of poisoning.
A multinational company dealing in petroleum and metals had contracted a local company of the Ivory Coast to dispose the toxic waste from its ship.
- (a) MNC dealing in petroleum and metals
 - (b) Local company of the Ivory Coast
 - (c) A vessel dumped 500 tonnes of liquid toxic wastes into open air
 - (d) None of these

SECTION-B

Very Short Answer Question (Q 21 to 24)

2X4=8

21. Why can the First World War be termed as first modern industrial war ? Give three reason.
oo
Define liberalisation. Mention two components of liberalisation.
22. How is the issue of sustainability important for development? Explain with examples.
23. "Social divisions affect politics." Examine the statement.
24. Write any two steps taken by the government to ensure that the benefits of globalisation are shared better ?

SECTION-C

Short Answer Based Question (Q 25 to 29)

3X5=15

25. Describe the role of poor peasantry in the 'Civil Disobedience Movement.'

26. "Dense and efficient network of transport is a prerequisite for local and national development." Analyse the statement.

00

Examine with example the role of means of transport and communication in making our life prosperous and comfortable.

27. What is the difference between the Federal and the Unitary form of Government ?
28. Explain any three aspects of comparison of economic development of different nations/states.
29. "Primary sector" was the most important sector of economic activity at initial stages of development." Evaluate the statement.

SECTION-D

Long Answer Based Question (Q 30 to 33)

5X4=20

30. "Pariksha Guru is considered landmark in the history of Hindi novel." Justify the statement with suitable arguments.

00

Distinguish between the themes of 'Pride and Prejudice' and 'Jane Eyre' novels written by Jane Austen and Charlotte Bronte respectively.

31. "Nuclear energy is the hope of future." Discuss this statement by giving five points.

00

Why is conservation of mineral resources essential ? Explain any three methods to conserve them.

32. Describe any five outcomes of democracy.

00

Discuss three merits of dictatorship or Authoritarianism.

33. Why do we need to expand formal sources of credit in India ? Explain.

00

Why do the rural borrowers depend on the informal sector of credit ? What steps can be taken to encourage them to take loans from the formal sources ? Explain any two.

SECTION-E

Case Based Question (Q 34 to 36)

4X3=12

34. Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

Ernst Renan, 'What is a Nation?': In a lecture delivered at the University of Sorbonne in 1882, the French philosopher Ernst Renan (1823-92) outlined his understanding of what makes a nation. The lecture was subsequently published as a famous essay entitled 'Qu'est-ce qu'une nation?' ('What is a Nation?'). In this essay Renan criticises the notion suggested by others that a nation is formed by a common language, race, religion, or territory: 'A nation is the culmination of a long past of endeavours, sacrifice and devotion. A heroic past, great men, glory, that is the social capital upon which one bases a national idea. To have common glories in the past, to have a common will in the present, to have performed great deeds together, to wish to perform still more, these are the essential conditions of being a people. A nation is therefore a large-scale solidarity... Its existence is a daily plebiscite... A province is its inhabitants; if anyone has the right to be consulted, it is the inhabitant. A nation never has any real interest in annexing or holding on to a country against its will. The existence of nations is a good thing, a necessity even. Their existence is a guarantee of liberty, which would be lost if the world had only one law and only one master.

Question :

1. What do you mean by the term Nation?
2. Write any two requirements for the formation of a nation.
3. How does a heroic past helps in the formation of a nation?

35. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

Source A – Where did the workers come from ?

In most industrial regions workers came from the districts around. Peasants and artisans who found no work in the village went to the industrial centres in search of work. Over 50 per cent workers in the Bombay cotton industries in 1911 came from the neighbouring district of Ratnagiri, while the mills of Kanpur got most of their textile hands from the villages within the district of Kanpur. Most often mill workers moved between the village and the city, returning to their village homes during harvests and festivals.

Source B – Dominated industrial production in India

European Managing Agencies, which dominated industrial production in India, were interested in certain kinds of products. They established tea and coffee plantations, acquiring land at cheap rates from the colonial government; and they invested in mining, indigo and jute. Most of these were products required primarily for export trade and not for sale in India.

Source C – Industries shifted from yarn to cloth production

From 1906, moreover, the export of Indian yarn to China declined since produce from Chinese and Japanese mills flooded the Chinese market. So industrialists in India began shifting from yarn to cloth production. Cotton piece-goods production in India doubled between 1900 and 1912.

Questions :

1. Where did the workers come in cotton mills in India during 1900s?
2. What helped the European Managing Agencies to dominate the Indian markets?
3. Why did industrialists shift from yarn to cloth production ?

36. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

Sri Lanka emerged as an independent country in 1948. The leaders of the Sinhala community sought to secure dominance over government by virtue of their majority. As a result, the democratically elected government adopted a series of MAJORITARIAN measures to establish Sinhala supremacy. In 1956, an Act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language, thus disregarding Tamil.

The Sri Lankan Tamils launched parties and struggles for the recognition of Tamil as an official language, for regional autonomy and equality of opportunity in securing education and jobs. But their demand for more autonomy to provinces populated by the Tamils was repeatedly denied. By 1980's several political organisations were formed demanding an independent Tamil Eelam (state) in northern and eastern parts of Sri Lanka.

The Belgian leaders took a different path. They recognised the existence of regional differences and cultural diversities. Between 1970 and 1993, they amended their constitution four times so as to work out an arrangement that would enable everyone to live together within the same country. The arrangement they worked out is different from any other country and is very innovative.

Questions:

1. Which act recognises the Sinhala as the only official language?
2. Who launched parties and struggles for the recognition of Tamil as an official language?
3. How many time Belgium amended their constitution?

SECTION-F

Map Skill Based Question (Q 37a and 37b)

2+3=5

37. (a) Two places (A) and (B) have been marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct Name on the line drawn near them.
- (A) A place marked by a where the satyagraha movement of former took place.
(B) The place where Indian congress session was held in 1927.
- (b) On the same outline map of India locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbol.
- (i) Ramagundan-Thermal power plant
(ii) Tarapur-Atomic power plant
(iii) Indore-Cotton textile Industry center
(iv) Bhilai-Iron and steel plant

